The Golden Hands Encyclopedia of CRAFTS

The complete guide to
traditional and modern home crafts

Volume 1

This book was taken from the Library of Extension Services Department on the date last stamped. It is returnable within 7 days.

3650

Golden Hands Encyclopedia of

CRAFTS

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FOR WOMEN.
3650
Deptt. of Extension
Services.
14.11.80
CALCUTTA-27

Marshall Cavendish

This edition published 1978

© Marshall Cavendish Ltd,
MCMLXXV 58, Old Compton
Street, London, W1V 5PA

Printed and bound in Singapore
by Tien Wah Press (Pte) Ltd.

3650
dt. 14/11/79

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FOR WOMEN.
Deptt of Extension Services.
CALCUTTA-27

Introduction

Everyone is creative, and the Encyclopedia of Crafts is designed to help each reader find out just where his or her particular talents lie. Some people may be thrilled to find that they can make handsome pots, while others may discover that their natural love of colour comes into its own with batik, or tie-and dye. Neatness and patience are talents too, when applied to crafts like weaving and basketry.

The rewards of craftsmanship. Crafts are as vital, as relevant, today as they have ever been. The more mass-production overwhelms us in every walk of life, the more we all need the deep satisfaction of continuing to create things ourselves. The Encyclopedia of Crafts takes a wide range of traditional crafts – such as patchwork and appliqué – and brings them up-to-date with fresh colourings, new uses and simpler techniques. In other areas, we revive centuries-old methods, such as burnishing unfired pots in the traditional Sudanese way. Other chapters explore the latest methods and materials, such as handling translucent plastics.

Clear, detailed instructions. The Encyclopedia of Crafts builds up to one of the most complete, authoritative reference works available on the subject, with 2744 pages packed with easy-to-follow information and inspiration for all kinds of craftwork.

No-one who wants to begin a craft should be without this essential guide to original ideas and available materials. Nowhere else could you find so much concentrated knowledge, so much expert advice in one superbly collated work.

The publication is designed as a series of progressive courses, with carefully-planned sequences of chapters ensuring that you learn-as-you-make. Early chapters familiarize you with basic materials and tools and start you off making simple, successful projects. All techniques are carefully and clearly explained, with diagrams and photographs. As the chapters progress, so projects and techniques become more exciting, more challenging.

This way the beginner can start a new craft from scratch and follow it through step-by-step, while the more experienced craftsman can take a well-loved skill and develop it in new, unusual ways.

Projects designed by artists. Fine craftwork is founded on good design and the sensitive use of colour and patterns so the best craft teachers, designers and artists have been brought together to contribute to this encyclopedia. Techniques are illustrated by over 750 superbly-designed projects and patterns. Readers can gain confidence by following the complete instructions for these projects, or they can use the methods to carry out their own creative ideas. Special chapters on design explain the principles of colour, pattern and shape to give readers added confidence when making up their own designs or re-interpreting the hundreds of patterns given.

For adults and children. The Encyclopedia of Crafts will help you make your home more beautiful and opens up a whole new, and individual, fashion world. It provides dozens of money-spinning ideas, brings creativity to DIY, and offers you hundreds of gift suggestions. Most importantly, the encyclopedia provides a wonderful stimulus for children's imagination and they will find plenty to learn and enjoy. (But remember, this publication is also designed for adults and children should not work unsupervised with sharp tools or toxic materials).

Team of designers and experts. This team of experts, designers and artists were brought together by Beverley Hilton, the guiding spirit behind the famous Creative Hands and Golden Hands series. "When I edit a publication I always try to put myself in the shoes of the enthusiastic learner – and if I cannot understand what the experts' advice means, then I make sure the readers will not have to struggle too! In the Encyclopedia of Crafts, as in Creative Hands, we have combined the very best in craft teaching and design with clear, easy-to-understand explanations. The Encyclopedia of Crafts is *not* just a series of patterns – it is designed to help readers gain a thorough grasp of each craft so that they can develop their own creative potential."

ELIZABETH GLAZE Marshall Cavendish editorial director

The Golden Hands Encyclopedia of CRAFTS

PAPER

Paper is an exciting, flexible material which can be cut, folded and shaped for hundreds of creative and decorative uses. You can turn it into animated greeting cards, bind books, make pictures or silhouettes, Christmas decorations (expensive to buy!), mobiles, lamp shades, flowers, puppets. Paper is relatively cheap and working with it appeals to all age groups. Art shops stock paper in colours and qualities to inspire the craftsman.

Pop-up cards are easy once you've mastered a few basic techniques. Find the heart card on page 58.

Paper flowers—start with tissue paper on page 86. For the more ambitious volume 2 shows how with crêpe paper.

A beautifully wrapped and decorated gift says so much more. Learn the art yourself in volume 3.

YARN

Yarn becomes cloth by the process of knitting, crochet, weaving, macramé. It can be thin as gossamer or thick as rope, smooth as silk or gnarled and textured like knop-woven wool. It can be plaited, braided, twisted into tassels or ropes; used to decorate a surface as in collage, embroidery and needlepoint. It can be combined with cloth to make rya rugs and there's great scope for combining different methods—weaving a shawl and trimming it with a macramé fringe.

Weaving—begin with finger weaving before going on to simple loom techniques using a picture frame.

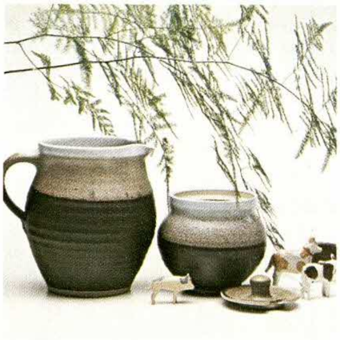
Pictorial tapestry (above) is weaving 'proper'. This is not so daunting a step as you'll discover in volume 4.

Embroidery starts in volume 3 and covers all the main traditional stitches plus many fashion ideas for you to try.

CLAY

The word clay is used here to cover a variety of modelling materials including real clay, clays with self-hardening additives and plaster of paris. The main consideration with real clay is that you need a kiln which is expensive to buy, so we suggest some ways to get around the problem. Meanwhile you can learn in the first half dozen chapters how the basic ways of handling clay can be used with self-hardening clays.

The block—one of the simplest shapes– that can be made of clay. These clay dice are both decorative and useful. See page 60.



Later volumes show how with real clay. Plus a valuable section on how to repair china, pottery and porcelain.

PLASTIC

Plastic, the material of the future, is still little used by many craftsmen. It can be worked into a wide range of beautiful objects and comes in hard or soft sheets or resin form. Learn to make unusual and elegant items such as paper weights, chess pieces and panels. The interesting challenge is to develop truly 'plastic' objects, rather than copying materials like ivory, because plastic has its own definite character.

The Encyclopedia of Crafts is all about . . .
Relaxation—working on a craft is the best way to forget day-to-day stresses . . . **Pleasure**—the sheer delight of handling beautiful materials and textures . . . **Satisfaction**—making well-made decorative objects much more cheaply than mass manufactured articles . . . **Creativity**—watch your creative skills develop in the months ahead . . . **Fun**—hours spent making things with friends or family are even more fun . . . **Saving money**—many crafts cost you no more than your time and enrich your life and home . . . **Reward**—at the end of the day you have something to show for your effort.

Now you can turn your hand to anything:
This is the first fully illustrated, comprehensive encyclopedia of traditional and modern home crafts. Your permanent reference library of techniques . . . a golden treasury of exciting ideas. Learn step by step all the better-known and some of the lesser known crafts, with easy to follow instructions and photographs. The next few pages give you only a glimpse of some of the many things that you will learn to do, and want to make, in the months ahead. ENCYCLOPEDIA OF CRAFTS introduces you to **hundreds** of things to do and **thousands** of exciting things to make.

METAL

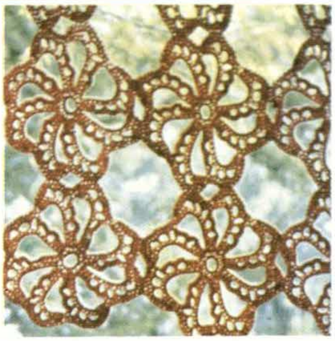
Metal chapters show how to turn wire—brass, copper or silver—into intricate jewelry with nothing more complicated than a pair of pliers. Tin cans become candle covers and Christmas tree decorations, horse shoe nails are changed to pendants and sculptures. Lightweight modern tools make it also possible to solder, weld, beat, cut, cast, and etch at home . . . to make jewelry, dishes, buckles, bowls, plaques and sculptures. They'll be difficult to resist trying.

Horseshoe nail necklaces—chunky jewelry so easy to make for personal pleasure. Page 736 gives step-by-step instructions.

These rings can be made with one or two coils of wire around the finger. So simple—so attractive (see page 127).

Nails are usually taken for granted but this panel shows that a good selection can make a brilliant design (see page 688).

Knitting and crochet—we take beginners through the first steps then introduce fresh ideas to the old familiar techniques.



Catherine wheel motifs—just keep on working until they're the required size. Versatile round motifs page 152.

Knotting makes use of anything from silk to string. The series starts in volume 2 with Macramé Made Easy.

Yarn has boundless possibilities and ingenious craftsmen continually interpret and update old techniques. **Needlepoint** starts with straight stitches; then shows a variety of stitches and patterns specially designed for you by Tapestry Bazaar and the Pearson Gorman Needlepoint School. In **tatting** and **bobbin lace** there are the traditional methods and patterns plus very exciting modern works. Going through a popular revival at the moment is **rug-making**—including hooked rugs, Rya rugs and oriental methods. Also valuable information on mending and restoring of rugs.

These are examples of clear cast embedding which is described on page 32. The first of many ideas with plastic.

Bring back memories of the seashore with a resin and embedded shell tile. See volume 6.

ENAMEL

Enamelling is the craft of applying glass powder to metal surfaces and heating in a small kiln until the glass melts and fuses. You can make enamelled jewelry either pop or elegant, brilliant buttons, shiny buckles, dishes, tiles, front door numbers, box lids. We show how to handle glass millefiore, foiling cloisonné and pliqué-au-jour. Small kilns now make home enamelling practical—so it's in for a big revival.

The brilliant colours created by enamelling even the simplest pieces make this a fascinating craft for you to try.

CLOTH

The cloth section is concerned with all aspects of combining and joining pieces of cloth—from satins and velvets to cheesecloth, denim and tweeds. It divides into nine main areas—sewing clothes and home furnishings, fabric collage, soft sculpture, patchwork, applique, soft toys, quilting, upholstery and millinery. We show you how to use the right cloth, achieve the right 'cut' and put the work together correctly in a fast, simple and creative way.

Sewing to wear—styles are simply constructed so that sewing is foolproof. Beautiful clothes to make, fashionable to wear.

Sewing for the home—new curtains or quilts don't break the budget if you make them yourself. Start now—page 70.

Soft sculpture is a term loosely applied to all sorts of sewn and stuffed objects—more fun than a serious art form.

COLOUR

The main thing about colour is that you don't have to be 'artistic' to use it successfully. Using colour is the most effective way to change or revive a surface. There are colour sections on **painting, dyeing** and **printing**—and wherever there is a surface, you can colour it brighter and more beautifully. Learn dozens of craft techniques that give stunning results once you see how the experts do it—and the methods are easy once you get the knack.

Printing starts on page 76 with simple fruit shapes. Later chapters cover a host of techniques including Letraset and type.

Stencils provide you with a method of putting colour exactly where you want it, even if you can't draw a straight line!

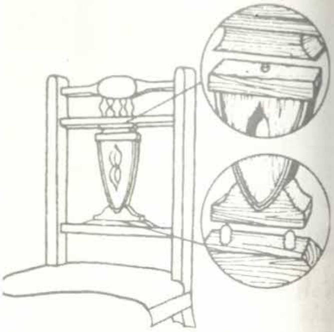
Dyeing—fabric dyes, layer dyeing, bleach line work, free hand dye painting and tie-dyeing. Begins in volume 2.

WOOD

Presenting the four main subjects from a woman's point of view—carpentry, finishes, renovation and sculpting. Working with wood does not depend on biceps any longer since everyone can use power tools to make anything from shelves to sculpture. Or you can begin with furniture finishes and learn all about polyurethane coating, varnishes, waxes and stains. It's all money-saving and well worth a few leisure hours.

Basic carpentry—not just facts but also how to apply them to make a wide range of useful projects. Starts at page 18.

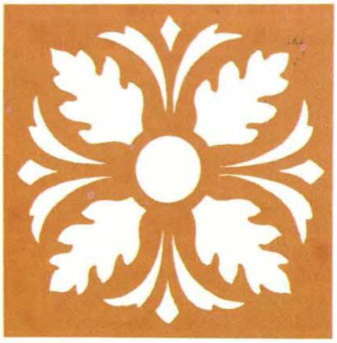
Decorative carpentry. An acquired skill but start with a coping saw and discover how easy it is to cut curves. . . .



Sculpting deals with a wide range of creative ideas. Start your carving and whittling with volume 3.

DESIGN

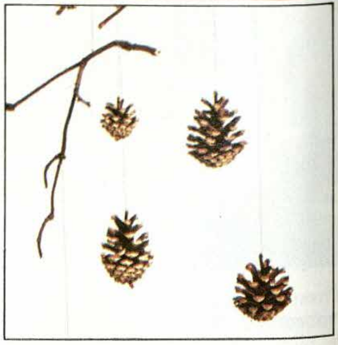
Design know-how provides a refresher course in simple geometry and discusses and explains colour effects, schemes, texture, pattern and symmetry. You can refer to the chapters on proportion when making a clay pot and the collection of trace patterns helps you with your paper pictures, needlepoint and embroidery designs.



Example from **Motif Collection**

PLUS

Other sections included are **Beadwork,** with instructions on mending and restyling old necklaces, **Lapidary**—how to find, identify, tumble, polish and cut stones. **Basketry** takes a beautiful old craft and adapts it to today's needs. There's also **mobiles, mosaics, kite-making, fur, leather, kitchencrafts, egg decorating** and **home herbalist.** There are several sections on using materials from nature-feather flowers, corn dollies, seeds for jewelry and more.



Mobiles to make (page 110)

Toys—the delight of a child with your pleasure in making them yourself. Start with a big bad bean bag mouse.

Upholstery teaches you how to remake old furniture for a fraction of the new cost. From volume 4.

Applique, patchwork and collage are three crafts that began in thrift and flourish as art. Add to your family heirlooms.

This child's sun hat is just one of the many ideas in **millinery.** Make one for yourself as well (page 624).

Gilding—for picture frames, jewelry boxes and restoring gilt on period furniture. Learn to use delicate gold leaf.

GLASS

We all use glass objects every day—but how many people have tried to work with glass? Certainly, skilled craftsmen devote years to study; but nowadays you don't need elaborate training to create pretty effects on ordinary glassware. And, with practice, you can use sophisticated techniques of cutting and staining with your own designs. Glass is a beautiful, rewarding material and you will discover dozens of ways to use it.

By using stencils and a mild safe etching fluid you can even etch labels on jars. Simple and effective—see page 142.

An attractive lampshade—made quite simply from a glass carboy or demi-john bottle. Details in volume 5.

WAX

Wax deals with all kinds of decorative and perfumed candle-making and wax modelling. Make evening garden parties glow with flares, stabbed firmly into the grass or earth. They are made by building up a candle on a wick by pouring molten wax down the wick—the same process used for making long church candles. For the more ambitious try sand candles with their attractive biscuit-like crusts (see page 82).

Make your own beautiful candles using the instructive guide to dipping, carving, twisting and plaiting candles. (Page 52.)

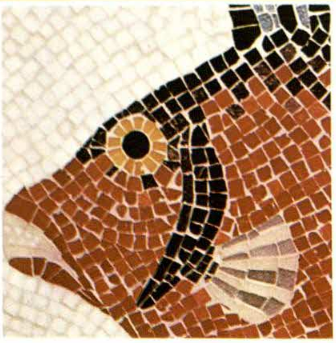
CREATIVE IDEAS

Creative ideas are small, quick things to make—crafty ideas for gifts or bazaar items such as mobiles, decorating denim with studs, pompoms, toys, Scandinavian wall stars, buckles from brass hinges, and sequin necklaces.
In volume 2 we re-vamp everyday objects with mirror mosaic tiles to create the most unusual place mats, cigarette tin, vase and bracelet you've ever seen.

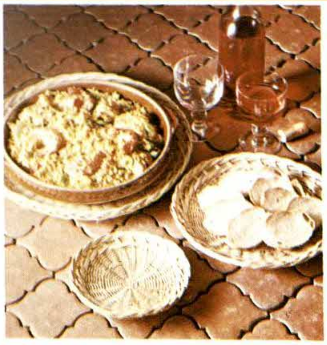
Ideas for soak-on transfers brighten up your desk with colourful pencils, pots and mugs (turn to page 57).

Leather (in volume 2)

Flowers and plants (volume 5)



Mosaics (starts volume 4)



Basketry (starts volume 2)

Summary of

VOLUME 1

Paper	1	First fold your paper . . .	2
	2	Pop-up cards — fan folds	30
	3	Pop-up cards using cut out	58
	4	Making tissue paper flowers	86
Clay	1	Getting the feel of clay	4
	2	Surface designs on clay blocks	60
	3	Slab pottery picture tiles	90
Yarn/ Needlepoint	1	Designing with straight stitch	8
	2	Florentine stitched cases	62
Yarn/ Weaving	1	Plaiting with scrap materials	10
	2	Star weaving God's Eyes	40
	3	Finger weaving peasant braids	66
Cloth/Sewing	1	Sew a simple seating system	14
	2	Make a warm padded quilt	70
	3	Shirred top and skirt	96
Wood/ Carpentry	1	Starting with softwood	18
	2	Versatile shelf units	102
Colour/ Painting	1	How to make a mural with arcs	22
	2	Hard edge designing	48
Metal	1	Begin with wire jewelry	24
	2	Door Curtain from jump rings	80
Design Know-how	1	Circles, arcs and right angles	28
	2	Rectangles and triangles	56
	3	Drawing a heart accurately	84
	4	Enlarging and reducing designs	112
Creative Ideas	1	Dough sculpture	29
	2	Soak-on transfers	57
	3	Working with resin film	85
Finishes	1	Applying a finish to wood	72
Printing	1	Vegetable and fruit blocking	76
	2	Improvised printing blocks	98
Wax	1	Dipped and rolled candles	52
	2	Sand candles and garden flares	82
Plastics	1	Clear cast embedding	32
Crochet	1	Begin with granny squares	36
	2	Starting with simple stitches	94
Beadwork	1	The art of bead threading	44
Enamel	1	The art of enamelling	106
Mobiles	1	Mobiles to make yourself	110

VOLUME 2

Paper	5	Making crépe paper flowers	114
	6	Realistic paper roses	170
	7	Small ribbon and tissue flowers	198
Clay	4	First steps in modelling	146
	5	Making simple pinch pots	200
Yarn/ Needlepoint	3	Picture making in satin stitch	120
Wood/ Carpentry	3	Perfect picture frames	158
Wood/ Renovation	1	Restoring wood finishes	184
Metal	3	Beautiful brass wire jewelry	126
	4	Silver-plated wire jewelry	216
Design Know-how	5	Motifs from ancient Mexico	140
	6	Straight line techniques	168
	7	All about ovals	196
	8	How to draw polygons	224
Creative Ideas	4	Star-spangled jeans	113
	5	Painted bead necklaces	141
	6	Flexible mirror tiles	169
	7	Sequin necklaces	197
Colour/ Printing	3	Pictures printed from nature	128
Plastics	2	Casting with bought molds	118
	3	Making your own moulds	172
Yarn/Crochet	3	Versatile round motifs	152
Beadwork	2	Threading bead fringes	136
	3	Rocaille bead designs	162
	4	Beautiful bead mosaics	192
Cloth/Toys	1	Sew a big bad bean bag mouse	124
Leather	1	Starting with chamois	132
Glass	1	Glass etching made simple	142
Colour/ Dyeing	1	Introduction to dyeing	150
	2	Creative dyeing techniques	188
Cloth/ Patchwork	1	Machined squares and rectangles	154
	2	Hand sewn squares and rectangles	180
	3	Working with hexagons	208
Yarn/Pin Art	1	Geometric picture patterns	164
Yarn/Macramé	1	Macramé made easy	176
	2	Macramé belts to make yourself	204
Enamel	2	Couter-enamelling and millifiore	190
Stencils	1	Designing with bought stencils	212
Egg Decorating	1	Ways to make eggs colourful	218
Basketry	1	Beginning with basketry	220

VOLUME 3

Creative Ideas	8	Making pompons	225
	9	Ribbon cornflowers	253
	10	Wool wrapping	281
	11	Chipwood decorations	309
Paper	8	Cutting simple stencils	226
	9	Wrapping square gift parcels	282
	10	Round boxes and bows	310
Plastics	4	Enamel effects with resin	230
	5	How to develop cold enamelling	314
Yarn Macramé	3	How to make a lover's knot	232
Cloth/Sewing	4	Making circular tablecloths	234
	5	Rectangular tablecloths	264
Wood/ Carpentry	4	Boxes for storage units	236
	5	Dowels for joints and racks	324
Stencils	2	Decorating with handcut stencils	240
	3	Stencilling on woven materials	270
Basketry	2	Weaving round mats and bases	244
Lapidary	1	Introduction to lapidary	248
	2	Polishing stones for jewelery	276
Design Know-how	9	Working with repeat patterns	252
	10	How to draw stars	280
	11	Basic design principles	308
	12	Introduction to colour planning	336
Glass	2	Creative bottle chopping	254
Clay	6	Modelling simple animals	256
	7	Starting with real clay	284
Modelling	1	Using files to shape and carve	266
Yarn/ embroidery	1	Introduction to straight stitches	260
	2	Continuous chain stitch	288
	3	Detached chain stitch	316
Enamel	3	Transparent enamels	274
Yarn/Pin Art	2	Designing with curved lines	292
	3	Picture making with pins	318
Cloth/Toys	2	Finger puppets in felt	296
Metal	5	Wire-wrapped jewelry	300
Colour/ Printing	4	Printing with potatoes	302
	5	Making rubbings with heelball	328
Beadwork	5	Bead embroidery on buttons	306
	6	Embroidering cloth with beads	332
Cloth/ Appliqué	1	Making a start with appliqué	320

contents

VOLUME 4

Creative Ideas	12	Pasta frames for pictures and mirrors	337
	13	Making collages	365
	14	Wood covered pots	393
	15	Washer and nut necklaces	421
Paper	11	3-D decorations for parcels	338
	12	Making your own boxes	422
Clay	8	Firing pots in a bonfire	340
	9	Burnishing and sgraffito decoration	366
	10	Casting with plaster of Paris	426
Yarn/ Embroidery	4	Chain stitch as filling stitch	344
Yarn/ Weaving	4	Starting to weave with a loom	346
	5	Yarns and fabrics for weaving	374
Cloth/ Appliqué	2	More hand stitched methods	350
	3	Machine worked appliqué	378
Wood/ Carpentry	6	Making and installing shelves	354
Colour/ Printing	6	Wet rubbing stone reliefs	358
Home Herbalist	1	Herbal oils from nature	360
	2	Drying and preserving herbs	390
Design Know-how	13	Monochromatic schemes	364
	14	Using related colour schemes	392
	15	Complementary colour schemes	420
	16	Multi-coloured schemes	448
Glass	3	Creating stained glass effects	370
Colour/ Dyeing	3	Making dyes from plants	382
	4	Designing with bleach	408
Metal	6	Silver wire jewelry	386
	7	Tin can punching	442
Plastics	6	Colourful granule cooking	394
Yarn/ Collage	1	Mexican-style collage	398
Cloth/ Sewing	6	Simple cushion making	400
	7	Cushions and bolsters	430
Finishes	2	Paints, brushes and painting	404
Mosaic	1	Beginning mosaic work	412
	2	Beginning to lay mosaic	444
Cloth/ Upholstery	1	Re-upholstering drop-in seats	416
	2	New seats for old	434
Marbling	1	The secrets of marbling	438

VOLUME 5

Creative Ideas	16	Fold and dye paper	449
	17	Glittering line designs	477
	18	Bold brass belts	505
	19	Tin can daffodils	533
Glass	4	Cutting and gluing	450
Clay	11	Carving and casting in plaster	454
	12	Casting from incised surfaces	508
	13	All sorts of simple moulds	438
Yarn/ Crochet	4	Lace and wheel motifs	456
	5	Edgings and insertions	482
	6	Developing working in rounds	516
Wood/ Carpentry	7	Using wood off-cuts	460
	8	How to use a coping saw	548
Marbling	2	Marbling with seaweed	464
Cloth/ Upholstery	3	Dining chairs—spring and stuff	468
	4	Dining chairs—spring and stuff continued	486
Flowers and Plants	1	Arranging flowers at home	472
	2	Japanese flower arrangements	500
	3	Flowers for weddings	524
	4	Formal flower arrangements	556
Design Know-how	17	Accent colour	476
	18	Neutral colour schemes	504
	19	Introduction to pattern	532
	20	Geometric pattern	560
Paper	13	Taped boxes with separate lids	478
	14	Making round and oval boxes	506
	15	How to make 'sculptured' boxes	534
Plastics	7	Coloured resin panels	480
Colour/ Dyeing	5	Beginning tye-dyeing	488
	6	Resist dyeing and trittik	520
Wood/ Renovation	2	Stripping, filling and bleaching	492
Enamel	4	Sgraffito and stencils	496
	5	Coping with curved surfaces	514
Cloth/Soft Sculpture	1	Candy cushion selection	510
Metal	8	Decorative tin can cutting	528
Cloth/Toys	3	Friendly felt ponies	542
Yarn/ Needlepoint	4	Painting designs on canvas	544
Colour/ Printing	7	The magic of transfer printing	552

VOLUME 6

Creative Ideas	20	Felt flowers	561
	21	Match-box houses	589
	22	French knitting	617
	23	Plant trainers	645
Paper	16	Being creative with doilies	562
	17	Creating simple cut-outs	618
	18	Paper bag masks	646
Plastics	8	Bas-relief embedding	566
	9	Coating glass with resin	650
Yarn/ Needlepoint	5	Working from a chart	568
Yarn/ Weaving	6	Constructing a frame loom	572
	7	Starting the tapestry sampler	600
	8	Tapestry sampler continued	632
	9	Completing the sampler	652
Cloth/ Millinery	1	Basic hat making techniques	576
	2	Covering a net shape	598
	3	Making hats in sections	624
	4	Sectional cap and beret	664
Modelling	2	Veneering and shaping plywood	580
Flowers and Plants	5	Preserving flowers	584
	6	Arranging dried flowers	610
Design Know-how	21	More about geometric pattern	588
	22	How to create an Islamic design	614
	23	Making a mandala	644
	24	Mechanical curves	672
Glass	5	Working with cullet	590
Yarn/ Macramé	4	Beaded and knotted designs	594
	5	Knotted braids and ropes	628
Metal	9	Bracelets from forks and spoons	604
Colour/ Dyeing	7	Introduction to batik	606
	8	More about batik	640
	9	Exploring batik techniques	656
Clay	14	Introduction to kilns	620
Wood/ Carpentry	9	Cutting shapes with curves	636
	10	Working with veneers	660
Basketry	3	Shaped and tiered platters	668

VOLUME 7

Creative Ideas	24	Clay badges	673
	25	Beaded baubles	701
	26	Wooden box	729
	27	Rainbow jewelry	757
Paper	19	Creating cut-out murals	674
	20	Decorative cut-outs	730
	21	Repeat folds and cuts	758
Clay	15	Biscuit firing	678
	16	Decorating with slip	704
	17	Moulding around cylinders	762
Yarn/ Knitting	1	Basic stitches and patterns	680
	2	Shaping with tension	708
	3	Swiss darning and jacquard	740
Cloth/ Sewing	8	Making a cutting layout	684
	9	Make a simple apron dress	716
Metal	10	Pictures from nails	688
	11	Horseshoe nail necklaces	736
Basketry	4	Shopping Baskets	692
	5	Oval tray and baskets	724
Colour/ Painting	3	Instant abstract painting	696
	4	Painting designs on stones	712
	5	Painting silhouettes	744
	6	Painting by projection	780
Home Herbalist	3	Fragrant pomanders	698
Design Know-how	25	All about spirals	700
	26	Finding pattern in details	728
	27	Patterns in natural groups	756
	28	Representational pattern concluded	784
Glass	6	Coloured glass and leading	702
Wood/ Finishes	3	Decorative wood stains	720
Yarn/ Collage	2	Creating a string collage	734
Cloth/ Upholstery	5	Making a padded headboard	748
Beadwork	7	Applying sequins to cloth	752
Cloth/ Appliqué	4	Ribbon appliqué techniques	766
Yarn/ Embroidery	5	Designing with satin stitch	768
Featherwork	1	Introduction to feathercraft	772
Wood/ Renovation	3	Starting with simple repairs	776

VOLUME 8

Creative Ideas	28	Ladybird draughts	785
	29	Ribbon violets	813
	30	Glittering jewelry	841
	31	Potholders	869
Clay	18	Stick pots and decorative oxides	786
	19	Beginning with glaze	842
	20	Simple slab pot techniques	874
Cloth/ Collage	1	Pictures from fabric and glue	790
Colour/ Printing	8	Making a monoprint	794
	9	Making a linocut	828
	10	Lino printing on cloth	860
	11	Several colours using one lino block	886
Glass	7	Coloured glass window hangings	798
	8	Making a leaded terrarium	846
Yarn/ Embroidery	6	French knots and other stitches	802
Cloth/ Upholstery	6	Padded panels and shallow buttoning	804
Featherwork	2	Decorative feather objects	808
	3	Creating feathered fabric	834
Design Know-how	29	Abstract pattern	812
	30	Pattern next to pattern	840
	31	Repeating patterns	868
	32	Patterns within a pattern	896
Paper	22	'Honeycomb' paper garlands	814
	23	Intricate paper cuts	870
Plastics	10	Low-temperature enamelling	816
	11	Making pendant jewelry with resin	890
Cloth/Sewing	10	A smock from head scarves	820
Yarn/ Weaving	10	Create your own tapestry designs	824
	11	Texture, stripes and leashes	856
	12	Fringes, tassels and wrapping	892
Wood/ Carpentry	11	All about power tools	832
	12	Wall for work and storage	864
Metal	12	Cutting sheet metal decoratively	836
Yarn/ Needlepoint	6	Tent stitch projects	850
	7	Texture effects with stitches	878
Cloth/Toys	4	Cats and dogs from one pattern	854
Cloth/ Quilting	1	Machine stitched wadded quilting	882

VOLUME 9

Creative Ideas	32	Frog decorated tie/sequin tie	897
	33	Cross-stitch box	925
	34	Sewing cupboard	953
	35	Chain stitch motif	981
Paper	24	Portraits from silhouettes	898
	25	Making scenic silhouettes	926
Yarn/ Collage	3	Free designs with string	902
Cloth/ Quilting	2	Outline designs on quilting	906
	3	Techniques for hand stitching	938
	4	Hand stitched cushions	966
Enamel	6	Threads, lumps and embedding	910
	7	Scrolling for decoration	996
Colour/ Printing	12	A block for each colour	912
	13	Beginning screen printing	962
	14	Screen printing on fabric	1000
Basketry	6	Packing, plaiting and chain pairing	916
Metal	13	How to model sheet copper	920
Design Know-how	33	Proportion, size and shape	924
	34	The golden section	952
	35	Balance in a design	980
	36	Symmetry in design	1008
Clay	21	Slab boxes and marbled clay	930
	22	Building pots with coils	954
	23	Modelled forms with coils	984
Lapidary	3	Findings for tumbled stones	934
Colour/ Painting	7	Painting on wooden chests	942
Yarn/ Knitting	4	Knitting in rounds	946
	5	Border patterns for ganseys	958
	6	Patchwork effects	988
Wood/ Carpentry	13	Hardwood — uses and varieties	950
	14	Planing and simple joints	970
Plastics	12	Plasticizing materials	
Seedwork	1	Mosaics from grocery seeds	976
	2	Mosaic pictures using seeds	1004
Glass	9	Mirror and leaded glass	982
Cloth/Sewing	11	Baby wardrobe	992

VOLUME 10

Creative Ideas	36	Button Pictures	1009
	37	Pretty Patches	1037
	38	Pompon cushions	1065
	39	Ways of display	1093
Paper	26	Creating stained glass effects	1010
	27	Making simple paper collages	1038
	28	More materials for collage	1066
Plastics	13	Working with glass fibre	1014
	14	Glass fibre lampshade	1070
Yarn/ Ropework	1	A decorative knot	1018
Cloth Patchwork	4	Designing with hexagons	1020
	5	Triangles and diamonds	1048
	6	Combination for unusual effects	1072
Seedwork	3	Practical ways with seeds	1024
Colour/ Printing	15	Screen printing: repeated patterns	1028
	16	Screen stencils and surfaces	1052
	17	Photographic screen printing	1088
	18	Mixed media printing	1114
Wood/ Finishes	4	Distressing and colour wood surfaces	1032
Design Know-how	37	Asymmetric design	1036
	38	Arranging and grouping displays	1064
	39	Various ways to hang pictures	1092
	40	Picture framing	1120
Clay	24	Unusual effects with glazes	1042
Metal	14	Modelling and tooling pewter	1056
Yarn/ Macramé	6	Figurative designing	1046
	7	Forming a firm fabric	1076
Cloth/Toys	5	Attractive rag doll to make	1094
Edible Arts	1	Gilding the gingerbread	1080
Leather	2	Beginning to work with suede	1060
	3	Techniques for sewing suede	1084
Wood/ Carpentry	15	Building up frames	1098
Glass	10	Tiffany-style lampshades	1102
Basketry	7	Making oval wine cradles	1106
Yarn/Latch-Hooking	1	Introduction to rug making	1110
Lapidary	4	Gluing tumbled baroque stones	1116

VOLUME 11

Creative Ideas	40	Paper Towel Holders	1121
	41	Cottage handbag	1149
	42	Padded letter shapes	1177
	43	Crochet rag slippers	1205
Paper	29	Introduction to paper quilling	1122
	30	The decorative art of quilling	1156
	31	Intriguing animated cards	1178
Clay	25	Simple repairs for broken china	1126
	26	Filling and retouching broken china	1150
	27	Sculpting on an armature	1206
Metal	15	Soft soldering techniques	1130
	16	Soft soldering using tin cans	1166
Yarn/Latch-Hooking	2	Making a pile rug	1132
	3	Rya rugs in colourful wool	1160
Cloth/Toys	6	Rag doll wardrobe	1136
Colour/ Painting	8	Painting designs on glass	1140
	9	Fairest mirrors of them all	1154
	10	Decorating glazed china	1196
Wood/ Carpentry	16	Planning your work area	1200
Yarn/ Weaving	13	Beginning tablet weaving	1144
	14	Designing for tablet weaving	1172
Design Know-how	41	How to mask a picture	1148
	42	Basic shapes with cones	1176
	43	Two types of pyramid	1204
	44	Take a tube	1232
Cloth/ Lampshades	1	Introduction to lampshade making	1164
	2	Preparation of frames. Tiffany shades	1184
	3	Neat, elegant panelled shades	1214
Flowers and plants	7	Dyeing, painting and bleaching	1170
	8	Flower balls, fantasy trees	1188
Plastics	15	Glass fibre screen to make	1182
Yarn/ Embroidery	7	The charm of cross stitch	1192
	8	Cross stitch alphabet, with charts	1226
Glass	11	Mending leaded glass windows	1210
Edible Arts	2	Icing cookies is child's play	1218
Basketry	8	Square work and screwblocks	1222
Wood/ Modelling	3	First steps in sculpting wood	1228

VOLUME 12

Creative Ideas	44	'Bertie Basset'	1233
	45	Colourful wrapping	1261
	46	Treasure boxes	1289
	47	Brightly belted	1317
Paper	32	Cracker making and decorating	1234
	33	Adding frills to festive crackers	1262
	34	Making paper lampshades	1292
	35	Pleated paper lampshades	1318
Clay	28	Modelling the features	1238
	29	Choosing a potter's wheel	1290
	30	Beginning to throw pots	1322
Cloth/ Lampshades	4	Making classic, lined shades	1240
Colour/ Painting	11	Spatter painting; stencils on china	1244
	12	Spatter painting techniques	1282
	13	Spattering with aerosol paints	1314
	14	Magical wash-out pictures with ink	1326
Wood/ Modelling	4	Laminated plywood	
	5	3-dimensional sculpture	1302
Basketry	9	Patterns in square work	1250
	10	Upsett square work with lid	1284
	11	Template bases for lampshades	1340
Yarn/ Embroidery	9	Beautiful blackwork	1252
Edible Arts	3	Ornamental painted biscuits	1256
	4	Mouthwatering sweets to make	1336
Design Know-how	45	Hinged cubes	1260
	46	Completing hinged cube	1288
	47	Twenty faces of the icosahedron	1316
	48	Using rub-off lettering	1344
Plastics	16	Glass fibre beetle to make	1266
Cloth/Toys	7	Fur fabric for soft toys	1270
Wax	3	Improvised candle moulds	1274
	4	Unconventional candle moulds	1300
Yarn/ Crochet	7	Correct tension	1278
	8	Crochet stripes and insertions	1296
Enamel	8	Facts, findings and transfers	1306
Cloth/ Decorating	1	Mounting cloth on panels	1310
Metal	17	Tin plate modelling	1328
Cloth/Sewing	12	Skirts from a circle	1332

VOLUME 13

Creative Ideas	48	French knitting a hat	1345
	49	Perpetual calendar	1373
	50	Teddy mirror	1401
	51	Tube necklaces	1429
Clay	31	Ways to adapt a cylinder	1346
	32	Jugs made from a cylinder	1374
	33	A cylindrical coffee pot	1406
Yarn/ Ropework	2	Re-cycling cans with ropework	1350
	3	'String mâché' techniques	1396
Glass	12	Glass and copper foil	1354
	13	Painting on glass	1402
Yarn/ Weaving	15	Inkle weaving on a loom	1356
	16	Designing inkle braids	1384
Cloth/Sewing	13	Finishing a circular skirt	1360
	14	Cosy capes from blankets	1410
	15	Quick and easy roller blinds	1434
Plastics	17	Decorating polystyrene beads	1364
	18	Cutting and sticking polystyrene	1442
Edible Arts	5	More delicious sweets to make	1368
Design Know-how	49	Aids for visual effects	1372
	50	Artists' and designers' aids	1400
	51	Hand lettering in craft work	1428
	52	Hand-drawn Roman capitals	1454
Cloth/Soft Sculpture	2	Paint box, jug and brushes	1376
Paper	36	Twisted tissue jewel effects	1380
Metal	18	Wire, washers and nails	1388
Beadwork	8	Bead jewelry with wire	1392
Basketry	12	Beginning rush work	1414
	13	Twist handle and borders	1450
Colour/ Painting	15	Instant drawing with glue	1418
	16	Making an 'antique' icon	1438
Lapidary	5	More uses for tumbled stones	1420
Wood/ Renovation	4	Salvaging old furniture	1424
Yarn/Pin Art	4	Designing string pictures	1430
Wood/ Carpentry	17	Tools and their maintenance	1446

VOLUME 14

Creative Ideas	52	Ways with denim	1457
	53	Painted crochet	1485
	54	Foiled paper treasure chest	1513
	55	Patchwork bolero	1541
Paper	37	Modelling with silver foil	1458
	38	'Antique' effects with foil	1486
	39	Colourful wall lamp	1530
Clay	34	Bottles, dishes and spheres	1462
	35	Bowls, plates and dishes	1542
Wood/ Carpentry	18	Sharpening cutting tools	1466
	19	Coffee table with simple joints	1502
	20	Frame tops for coffee table	1532
Featherwork	4	Flowers from feathers	1468
	5	Pictures with feathers	1506
Cloth/Sewing	16	Unlined and sheer curtains to make	1472
	17	Two ways to line curtains	1494
	18	Cutting out loose covers	1552
Yarn/Pin Art	5	Adding pin art to pictures	1476
Basketry	14	Upsetting rush work	1480
Design Know-how	53	The spacing of Roman capitals	1484
	54	Decorated Roman capitals	1512
	55	Calligraphy: practice strokes	1540
	56	Writing in a foundation hand	1566
Yarn/ Weaving	17	Jacket on a frame loom	1490
	18	Free form tapestry	1526
Colour/ Dyeing	10	Dyeing yarn many colours	1498
Plastics	19	Texturing polystyrene	1508
Cloth/Toys	8	Making pretty poupard dolls	1514
Yarn/ Tatting	1	The basic double stitch	1518
	2	Forming and joining rings	1546
Colour/ Painting	17	Painting on floors	1562
	18	Fabric crayon pictures	1562
Edible Arts	6	Shaping and baking bread	1536
	7	More beautiful breads to bake	1558
Metal	19	Hard soldering-brazing	1550

VOLUME 15

Creative Ideas	56	Daisy grow hanging	1569
	57	Puzzle panel	1597
	58	Patchwork oven gloves	1625
	59	'Antique' boxes	1653
Clay	36	How to turn finished pots	1570
	37	Making a flat casserole	1658
Plastics	20	Polystyrene lamp base	1574
	21	Cutting and gluing acrylic	1640
	22	Two acrylic candle holders	1674
Yarn/ Tatting	3	Combing chain and rings	1578
Colour/ Painting	19	Painting scenic murals	1580
	20	Gilding simplified	1602
	21	Gilding the traditional way	1648
Cloth/Sewing	19	Completing loose covers	1584
	20	Bedspread plain and flounced	1644
Metal	20	Silver soldering sheet metal	1588
	21	Soldered jewelry from templates	1618
Flowers and Plants	9	Bottle gardens	1592
	10	Growing bonsai-miniature trees	1610
Design Know-how	57	The italic hand	1596
	58	The proportions of the face	1624
	59	Drawing the human figure	1652
	60	Ergonomics: proportions for chairs	1680
Cloth/ Millinery	5	Hat with stitched brim	1598
Yarn/ Embroidery	10	Lacy fabric with pulled work	1606
	11	Drawn thread embroidery	1630
	12	Lacy effects with cut work	1662
Yarn/ Weaving	19	Creations with unusual objects	1614
	20	Baubles, beads and feathers	1670
Glass	14	Animals from glass rods	1620
Paper	40	Decorations with Japanese papers	1626
	41	Decorating with découpage	1654
Basketry	15	Making hats from rushes	1634
Wood/ Modelling	6	Sculptured racing car	1636
Edible Arts	8	Modelling with marzipan	1666
Cloth/ Upholstery	7	Padded footstool from a box	1678

VOLUME 16

Creative Ideas	60	Hot Pot Stand	1681
	61	Hen-shaped egg-cup and matching napkin	1709
	62	Hair-net flower holder	1737
	63	Wooden candelabrum	1765
Yarn/ Embroidery	13	Reticella with lacy fillings	1682
Plastics	23	How to bend acrylic sheet	1684
Colour/ Painting	22	Paint and needle pictures	1688
	23	The fun of face and body paint	1728
Edible Arts	9	Croissants to shape and bake	1692

Paper	42	More surfaces for découpage	1694
	43	Bookbinding: making the case	1714
	44	Bookbinding: section sewing	1738
	45	How to make paper by hand	1766
Cloth/Sewing	21	Waistcoats in three lengths	1698
	22	Re-covering umbrellas	1718
Wood/ Modelling	7	Sculpture from natural wood	1702
	8	Laminated wood sculpture	1750
Cloth/ Upholstery	8	Fireside chairs: stripping	1706
	9	Fireside chairs: upholstering	1732
Design Know-how	61	Ergonomics: proportions for tables	1708
	62	Drawing in perspective	1736
	63	More about perspective	1764
	64	The circle in perspective	1792
Leather	4	Starting to work with thick leather	1710
	5	Thonging thick leather	1770
Wax	5	Candles from bought moulds	1722
Wood/ Finishes	5	French polishing wood surfaces	1726
Clay	38	Making a stewpot	1742
Cloth/ Appliqué	5	San Blas appliqué	1746
Colour/ Printing	19	Screen printing without stencils	1754
Metal	22	Etching on copper	1758
	23	Tin casting using bought moulds	1774
Yarn/ Needlepoint	8	Smooth-faced needlepoint rugs	1760
	9	Rugs with a pile surface	1776
Egg Decorating	2	Cutting and ornamenting eggs	1780
Yarn/ Weaving	21	Fabric weaving on a roller loom	1784
Home Herbalist	4	Sweet smells of incense	1790

VOLUME 17

Creative Ideas	64	Side-table setting	1793
	65	Hoop-la game	1821
	66	Painted coat-hooks	1849
	67	Printing ideas	1877
Colour/ Painting	24	Faces for footlights	1794
	25	Water gilding	1834
	26	Hand-coloured photographs	1854
	27	Tinting prints by hand	1898
Clay	39	A cottage candle holder	1798
	40	Decorative tile making	1826
	41	Teapot with clay or cane handle	1850
	42	Musical instruments: ocarinas	1878
Cloth/ Sewing	23	Four-piece duvet set	1802
Metal	24	Introducing lost wax casting	1806
	25	Lost wax casting for jewelry	1838
	26	Silver wire jewelry	1874
Yarn/ Weaving	22	An introduction to table looms	1810
	23	Dressing the table loom	1842
Cloth/ Millinery	6	Making a wide-brimmed hat	1814
Paper	46	How to make a kaleidoscope	1816
	47	Mounting prints and pictures	1822
	48	Simple ideas for lampshades	1856
	49	Making a zoetrope	1882
Yarn/ Embroidery	14	Pile trimmings and fabrics	1818
Design Know-how	65	Spacing in perspective	1820
	66	Perspective — colour, detail, light and shade	1848
	67	Adhesives for paper and card	1876
	68	How to draw shadows	1904
Cloth/ Upholstery	10	Re-covering a modern armchair	1830
	11	Deep buttoning on foam	1870
	12	Traditional deep buttoning	1894
Cloth/Toys	9	Animal glove puppets	1860
Wood/ Finishes	6	How to repair veneer surfaces	1864
Cloth/ Appliqué	6	Egyptian wall hanging	1868
Fur	1	Tanning and dressing fur	1886
Wood/ Carpentry	21	Tongue and groove wall panelling	1890
Yarn/Latch-Hooking	4	Latch-hooking on crochet	1902

VOLUME 18

Creative Ideas	68	Decorated sandals	1905
	69	Paper rose tree	1933
	70	Lavender cushions	1961
	71	Play mattress	1989
Paper	50	Toy shop made from boxes	1906
	51	Building a model theatre	1944
	52	Simple theatre puppets	1974
	53	Making paper picture frames	1990
Clay	43	Musical instruments: flutes	1908
	44	More ideas for decorative tiles	1942
	45	Spherical floor lamp	1962
Wood/ Carpentry	22	T & G panel dining table	1910
Fur	2	Making up fur pelts	1914
	3	Remodelling an old fur coat	1956
Colour/ Painting	28	Introducing air brush painting	1918
	29	'Painting' with sand	1948
	30	Wood grain imitation	1980
	31	Imitation bamboo finishes	2006
Basketry	16	Cane-chair seating	1922
	17	Rush plaiting and seating	1952
	18	Seagrass seating	1970
Yarn/ Weaving	24	Patterns in plain weave	1926
Yarn/ Ropework	4	Coiled mats and bowls	1930
Design Know-how	69	More about shadows	1932
	70	Interior design: colour schemes	1960
	71	Interior design: adding texture and pattern	1988
	72	Interior design: lighting systems	2016
Yarn/ Needlepoint	10	Four-way Florentine	1934
Metal	27	Soldering silver rings	1938
	28	Silver ring with box setting	1978
Leather	6	Hand stitching thick leather	1966
	7	Working with soft leather	2010
Yarn/ Embroidery	15	Starting machine embroidery	1984
	16	Straight stitch machine work	1994
Wood/ Modelling	9	3-D abstract wood sculpture	1998
Lapidary	6	Polishing slabs by hand	2002
Colour/ Dyeing	11	Batik combined with painting	2014

VOLUME 19

Creative Ideas	72	Apple tree 'wardrobe'	2017
	73	Picture bread-boards	2045
	74	Paper beads	2073
	75	Puzzle box	2101
Clay	46	A chapter of accidents	2018
	47	More accidents on the wheel	2046
	48	Beads: elegant or primitive	2102
Yarn/ Embroidery	17	Free machine embroidery	2022

Lapidary	7	Slabbing with a diamond saw	2026
Paper	54	More card puppets to make	2030
	55	Tissue paper collage	2054
Colour/ Painting	32	Introducing 'faux marbre'	2034
	33	More about 'faux marbre'	2062
	34	More about beautiful fake finishes	2114
Leather	8	Making clothes in soft leather	2038
	9	Cold tooling and dyeing	2118
Design Know-how	73	Fluorescent lighting	2044
	74	Interior design: using spotlights	2100
Cloth/Toys	10	How to make a tepee	2050
Flowers and Plants	11	Pressing flowers	2058
	12	Pictures with pressed flowers	2076
Yarn/ Netting	1	The traditional diamond mesh	2066
	2	Making a hammock	2096
Metal	29	Silver and bead necklace	2070
	30	Twisted silver jewelry	2092
Plastics	24	Sealing with plastic film	2074
Enamel	9	Painting with enamels	2080
Cloth/Sewing	24	'Two-in-one' skirt	2084
	25	Hand-stitched pinch pleats	2126
Colour/ Dyeing	12	Using an indigo vat	2088
Mosaic	3	Cutting and designing	2106
Cloth/ Patchwork	7	American block construction	2110
Wood/ Carpentry	23	Making a doll's house	2122

VOLUME 20

Creative Ideas	76	Foam houses	2129
	77	Wind-chimes	2157
	78	Patchwork wall	2185
	79	Jigsaw puzzle	2213
Paper	56	A tissue paper hot air balloon	2130
	57	Decorating with marquetry	2158
	58	Introduction to papier maché	2186
Leather	10	Hot tooling on leather	2134
	11	Carving and modelling	2208
	12	Handbags from soft leather	2230
Colour/ Painting	35	Cleaning oil paintings	2138
	36	Restoring and painting tinware	2218
Wood/ Modelling	10	Carving a wooden bowl	2142
Cloth/Sewing	26	How to make a 'papoose carrier'	2146
Enamel	10	Cutting shapes for enamelling	2148
	11	The art of 'cloisonné'	2174
	12	The art of 'champlevé'	2200
Lapidary	8	More ideas for using slabs	2152
Design Know-how	75	Interior design: window treatment	2156
	76	Protractors and set squares	2184
	77	Straight and parallel lines	2122
	78	Water-based paints	2240
Clay	49	A ceramic doll's head	2162
Yarn/ Weaving	25	Spinning with a spindle	2166
Wood/ Finishes	7	Liming, pickling, fuming, scorching	2170
Cloth/Toys	11	How to make a Victorian doll	2178
	12	Wardrobe for a Victorian doll	2196
Yarn/ Macramé	8	Making patterns with Cavandoli	2181
	9	Picture making with macramé	2194
Flowers and Plants	13	Introducing topiary art	2190
Home Herbalist	5	How to make beeswax polish	2204
Cloth/ Patchwork	8	Log Cabin patchwork	2214
Yarn/ Embroidery	18	Colourful modern smocking	2222
Shellcraft	1	Introduction to shellcraft	2226
Basketry	19	Introducing corn dollies	2234
Metal	31	Ceramic and silver jewelry	2236

VOLUME 21

Creative Ideas	80	Sponge printed wallpaper	2241
	81	Paper wall mural	2269
	82	Garden stakes	2297
	83	Candle sconce	2325
Clay	50	More decorative techniques	2242
	51	Slip-casting simple shapes	2270
Cloth/Toys	13	How to make patchwork toys	2246
Wood/ Carpentry	24	Modular unit furniture system	2250
	25	Modular unit—desk and shelves	2280
	26	Making and fitting drawers	2318
	27	Versatile cabinet units	2350
Yarn/ Weaving	26	Spinning on a spinning wheel	2254
	27	How to read weaving drafts	2302
Shellcraft	2	Simple ways of displaying shells	2258
	3	More decorative ways with shells	2292
Home Herbalist	6	Herbal tonics and fresheners	2262
Basketry	20	Paper straw corn dollies	2264
	21	Traditional corn dollies	2342
Design Know-how	79	Introduction to oil paint	2268
	80	Painting with oils	2296
Leather	13	Techniques for moulding	2274
	14	Restoring leather	2346
Yarn/ Ropework	5	Re-cycled rope 'flowers'	2278
Yarn/ Embroidery	19	A traditional decorated smock	2284
	20	Experiments with texture	2314
	21	Jacobean crewel work	2336
Colour/ Printing	20	Printing photos on fabric	2288
	21	Intaglio printing and engraving	2306
	22	Intaglio prints: etching	2330
Enamel	13	Enamelling on silver	2298
Paper	59	Papier mâché glove puppets	2310
Cloth/ Patchwork	9	Appliqué blocks for patchwork	2320
Cloth/ Millinery	7	How to make fabric flowers	2326
Beadwork	9	Combining beads and crochet	2334

VOLUME 22

Creative Ideas	84	Hanging pockets	2353
	85	Safety-pin belt	2381
	86	Denim lampshade	2409
	87	Summer bag with motif	2437
Paper	60	Japanese paper folding: origami	2354
	61	More origami designs to make	2382
	62	Picture mosaics with stamps	2410
	63	First steps in kite making	2438
Basketry	22	American corn shuck dolls	2358
Wood/ Carpentry	28	How to make and fit cupboards	2362
Cloth/Sewing	27	Child's 'monster' dressing-gown	2364
Rag Rugs	1	Colourful hardwearing hooked rugs from rags	2368
	2	Pegged rag rugs	2406
Colour/ Printing	23	More intaglio techniques	2372
Yarn/ Weaving	28	Designs with twill weaves	2376
	29	Doublecloth fabric weaving	2390

Design Know-how	81	Paper for craft work	2380
	82	More paper for craft work	2436
Mosaic	4	Interior wall mosaics	2386
	5	Outdoor mosaic decoration	2460
Cloth/Toys	14	How to make a charming family of miniature dolls	2394
Folk Art	1	American folk decoration	2398
	2	European folk decoration	2420
Leather	15	Gold tooling techniques	2402
Cloth/Soft Sculpture	3	Giant-sized vegetables	2412
Enamel	14	'Plique-à-jour' jewelry	2416
Lapidary	9	Carving with soapstone	2426
Beadwork	10	Bead weaving by hand	2430
	11	How to make bead dolls	2458
Home Herbalist	7	Herbal face and body creams	2434
	8	Soap making at home	2452
Cloth/Upholstery	13	Padded surfaces with show-wood	2442
Clay	52	Miniature picture frames	2446
Wood/Modelling	11	Whittling and chip carving	2448
Cloth/Quilting	5	Trapunto and Italian quilting	2454

VOLUME 23

Creative Ideas	88	Opening pictures	2465
	89	Pumpkin jack-o'-lantern	2493
	90	Sock elephant	2521
	91	Tapestry plant pot holder	2549
	92	Cactus pincushion	2577
Clay	53	Working with porcelain	2466
	54	Casting in concrete	2522
Cloth/Patchwork	10	Clamshell patchwork	2468
	11	Colourful crazy patchwork	2578
Flowers and Plants	14	Skeleton or shadow leaves	2472
Cloth/Upholstery	14	Forming a roll edge	2474
Paper	64	Traditional Eastern kites	2478
	65	Modelling papier mâché over chicken wire	2494
	66	Cardboard furniture	2534
	67	Making scraper board pictures	2570
Yarn/Weaving	30	Satins, sateens and damasks	2484
	31	Three-dimensional honeycomb weave	2566
Colour/Painting	37	Different ideas for fun finishes	2488
	38	Painted ironware	2504
Wax	6	Scented and floating candles	2602
Design Know-how	83	Brushes for craft work	2492
	84	Cutting tools for craft work	2576
Plastics	25	Jewelry from acrylic sheet	2498
Wood/Modelling	12	Carving balsa wood	2502
Yarn/Bobbin lace	1	Introduction to bobbin lace	2506
	2	How to work the basic stitches	2526
Colour/Printing	24	Introducing typewriter art	2510
	25	More ideas for typewriter art	2542
Leather	16	How to make leather sandals	2514
Yarn/Embroidery	22	Open-work by machine	2518
	23	Machine appliqué with embroidery	2546
Wood/Carpentry	29	Sofa with storage boxes	2530
	30	Introduction to marquetry	2562
	31	Pictorial marquetry	2582
Featherwork	6	Introduction to fly tying	2538
Cloth/Sewing	28	Decorative machine finishes	2550
	29	Grecian-style evening dress	2558
Shellcraft	4	Making pictures with shells	2554
Basketry	23	Willow-slewing and randing	2572
	24	Cleaning, care and repairs	2598
Yarn/Macramé	10	Beautiful lacy garments	2586
Beadwork	12	Bead weaving on a loom	2590
Colour/Painting	39	How to make stage scenery	2594

VOLUME 24

Creative Ideas	93	Patchwork table	2605
	94	Cookie cutter holder	2633
	95	Renewed deck-chairs	2661
	96	Ornamental ducks	2689
Clay	55	Miniature dolls and puppets	2606
	56	Decorative plaster work	2662
	57	Raku pottery fast fired	2690
Yarn/Bobbin lace	3	Ladder and little Torchon Fan patterns	2610
	4	Spider and Fan; Little Fir Tree lace patterns	2666
Cloth/Upholstery	15	Traditional armchairs	2614
	16	Renovating a chaise longue	2658
	17	A deep-buttoned chesterfield	2672
Basketry	25	Thatching a dovecote	2618
	26	Colourful hedgerow work	2654
	27	Introducing raffia coil work	2674
	28	Designing with raffia	2702
Colour/Painting	40	Stage scenery — Back cloths	2622
Yarn/Weaving	32	Texture, inlay and brocade	2626
	33	Rugs with a flat weave	2684
	34	Weaving with rags	2706
Shellcraft	5	Stripping and polishing	2630
	6	Piercing and threading shells	2646
Flowers and Plants	15	Making dried fantasy flowers	2634
Wood/Carpentry	32	Introduction to wood turning	2638
Leather	17	Stitched gloves	2642
Beadwork	13	Fringing and design techniques	2650
Wood/Finishes	8	Pyrography and poker work	2670
Colour/Printing	26	Printing with paper shapes	2678
Design Know-how	85	Inks for craft work	2681
	86	Pencils, chalks and crayons	2701
Wax	7	Water and ice candles	2682
	8	How to make landscape candles	2698
Home Herbalist	9	Herbal beer and wine	2694
Metal	32	Inlaid metal jewelry	2710
Cloth/Sewing	30	Poncho for all seasons	2712
Table of Contents			2717
Index			2721

The summary of contents gives the main subjects covered in the *Encyclopedia of Crafts,* listing every chapter devoted to each subject with its page number.

Contents

Paper

1 /First fold your paper.
Making animated greetings cards by the simple slit and fold method.
For how to draw circles and right angles, see Design Know-how 1, page 28. 2

2 /Pop-up cards – fan folds.
More bold, colourful greetings cards.
For how to draw rectangles, triangles, diamonds, see Design Know-how 2, page 56. 30

3 /Pop-up greetings cards using cut-outs.
Heart or jack-in-the-box design.
For how to draw a heart, see instructions in Design Know-how 3, page 84. 58

4 /Making tissue paper flowers. First steps in making artificial flowers; working with tissue; how to make paper peonies.
Author: Priscilla Lobley. 86

Clay

1 /Getting the feel of clay.
Self-hardening clay for beginners working at home. Step-by-step necklaces and pendants.
Author: Emmanuel Cooper. 4

2 /Surface designs on clay blocks.
Impressed patterns and relief decoration. Models, brooches, pendants, ornaments. 60

3 /Slab pottery picture tiles. Relief modelling on tiles; making a landscape tile; using coloured stains; creating a face panel.
For how to enlarge the design, see Design Know-how 4, page 112.
Author: Val Barry. 90

Front Cover Photograph: Ken Kirkwood

Back Cover Photograph: Peter Dorp

Yarn/Needlepoint

1 /Designing with straight stitch.
Yarns, needles and canvas. Straight stitch, including satin stitch. Handbag design. 8

2 /Florentine stitched cases.
Zigzag and flame patterns; lighter, spectacles and compact cases. 62

Yarn/Weaving

1 /Plaiting with scrap materials.
Making table mats and floor rugs.
Author: Eileen Bird. 10

2 /Star weaving – God's Eyes.
Primitive way of weaving on sticks to make mobiles, wall hangings, Christmas decorations.
Author: Carol Packard. 40

3 /Finger weaving peasant braids.
Using yarn, a pencil and fingers only; stripes and chevron; choker necklace. 66

Cloth/Sewing

1 /Sew a simple seating system.
Patterns for large cushion seats and bolsters. Sewing techniques – flat fell seams, working with bias binding, attaching popper tape.
For how to draw circular bolster ends, see Design Know-how 1, page 28. 14

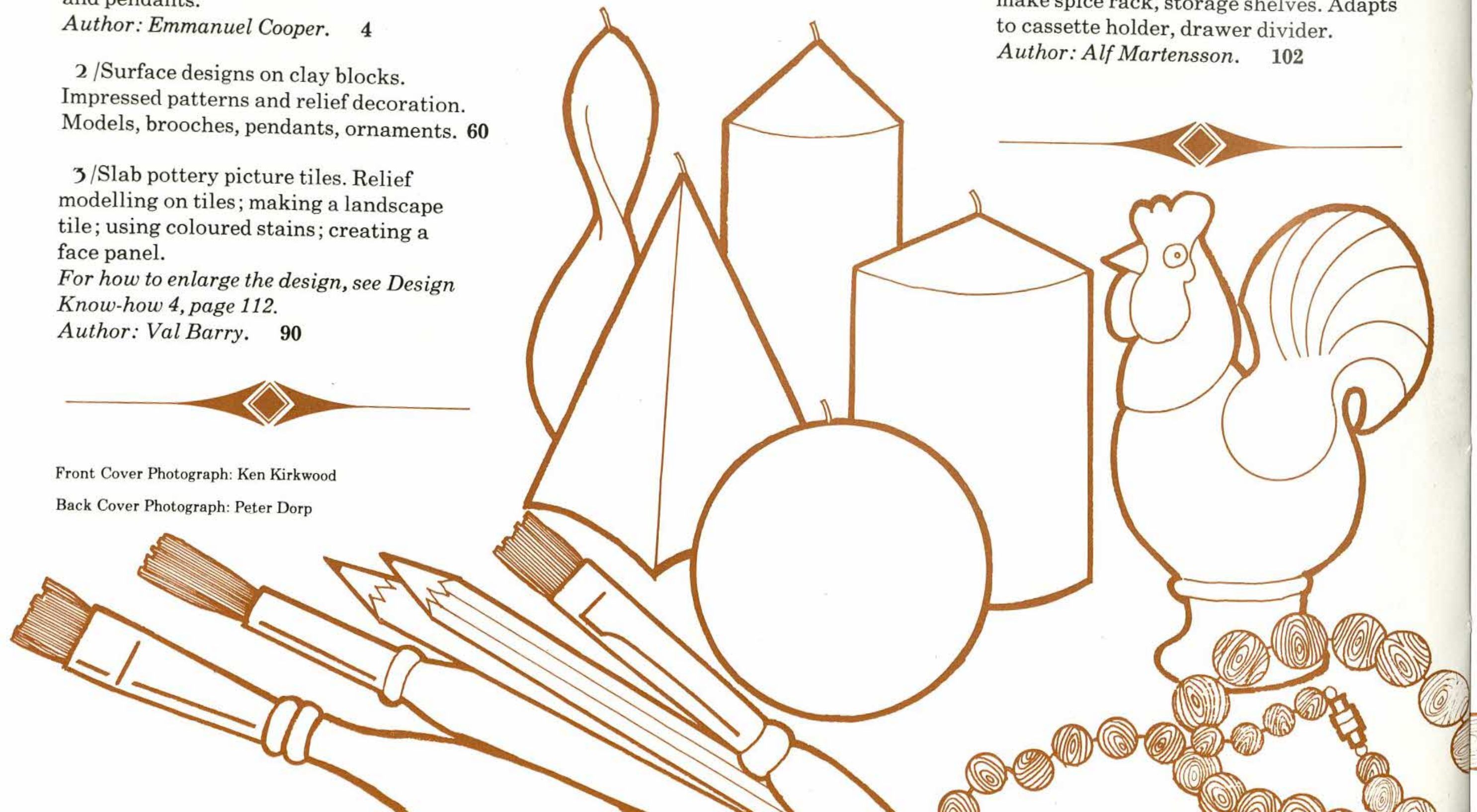
2 /Make a warm, padded quilt.
Novel way to make a thick quilt from weaving together padded tubes of fabric. 70

3 /Shirred top and skirt. Shirring on fabrics; making perfect hems; working from measurements. 96

Wood/Carpentry

1 /Starting with softwood.
The main softwoods, basic tools and measuring. Instructions for making a bench hook and a pot stand.
Author: Alf Martensson. 18

*2 /Versatile shelf units. Expanding the joining principle used in Carpentry 1; using interlocking pieces of wood to make spice rack, storage shelves. Adapts to cassette holder, drawer divider.
Author: Alf Martensson. 102



Colour/Painting

1/How to make a mural with arcs. The Springtime mural. *For how to draw circles and arcs, see Design Know-how 1, page 28.* 22

2/Hard edge designing. Using strips of masking tape to achieve perfectly straight stripes and abstract patterns on walls, floors and furniture. 48

Metal

1/Begin with wire jewelry. Types of wire, basic tools and jump rings. Instructions for bracelet with large bead; matching earrings, pendant and necklace; sunray collar and curvilinear bracelet. 24

2/Door curtain from jump rings. Airy door curtain made by linking small rectangles of linoleum with jump rings. 80

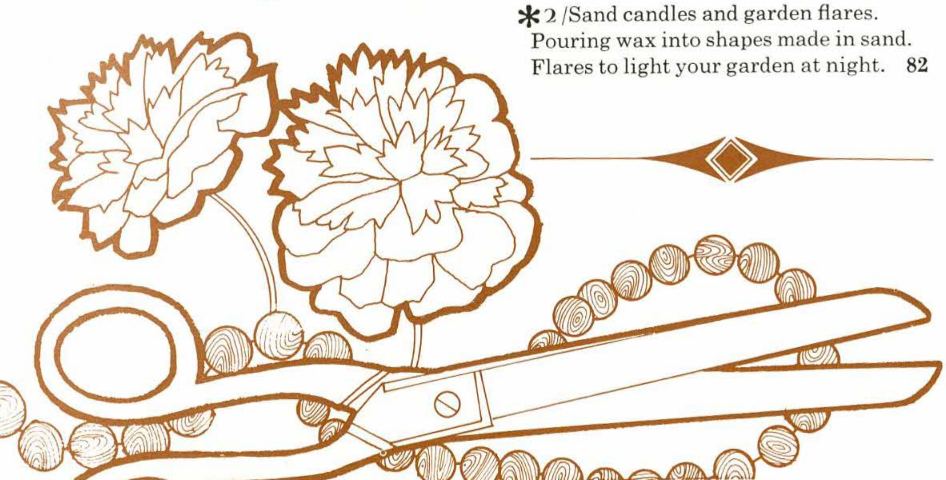
Design Know-how

1/Circles, arcs and right angles. 28

2/Rectangles, triangles, diamonds and squares. 56

3/Drawing a heart accurately. 84

4/Enlarging and reducing designs. 112



Creative Ideas

1/Bread baskets in bakers' clay. 29

2/Decorating with transfers. 57

3/Designing with wire dipped in resin film. 85

Finishes

1/Applying a finish to wood. Making beeswax polish; applying different oils; polyurethane and coloured finishes. 72

Colour/Printing

1/Vegetable and fruit blocking. Relief printing with fruit and vegetables; bag, glass mats. *Author: Janet Allen.* 76

2/Improvised printing blocks. Using natural and found objects; creating effects with different paints; decorative paper printing; making a gift box. *Author: Janet Allen.* 98

Wax

*1/Dipped and rolled candles. Using different waxes, dyeing, wick-making, shaping, carving, twisting and plaiting. 52

*2/Sand candles and garden flares. Pouring wax into shapes made in sand. Flares to light your garden at night. 82

Plastics

*1/Clear cast embedding. Setting objects in polyester resins. 32

Crochet

1/Begin with granny squares. Using chains, trebles and granny squares to make a shoulder bag, cushion and bandeau. *Author: Pam Dawson.* 36

2/Starting with simple stitches. Double crochet and half treble; cushions in unusual yarns; how to crochet a rag rug. *Author: Pam Dawson.* 94

Beadwork

1/The art of bead threading. Everything for beginners on making lovely necklaces. How to mend and re-style old ones. 44

Enamel

*1/The art of enamelling. Simple enamelling; types of enamels – opaque, transparent, self-cracking; using a kiln; basic tools. 106

Mobiles

1/Mobiles to make yourself. Basic method of construction; using cut-out paper birds, liquid resin, twigs and pine cones. *For liquid resin see Creative Ideas 3, page 85.* 110

*** Not suitable for children without adult supervision.**

Suppliers addresses International

NEW ZEALAND

General craft supplies: Golding Industries Handicraft Centre, 158, Cuba Street, Wellington, for mail order catalogue.
Batik wax and dyeing supplies: see *Candle Makers Supplies, U.K. Suppliers.
Candles: as for Batik.
Clay: glazes and materials at Smith and Smith P.O. Box 22, 496, 213 Tuam Street, Christchurch and Amalgamated Brick & Pipe Ltd., 1, Totara Avenue, New Lynn 7; see also under U.K. suppliers.
Dried flowers: Floral Boutique Cubacade, Cuba Mall, Wellington.
Découpage: see *Leisure Crafts Centre, U.K. suppliers.
Enamelling: Smith and Smith (see _Clay_).
Glass rods: Auckland Glass Co. Ltd., 79, St. Georges Bay Road, Oarnell 1.
Jewelry: equipment and stones: The Rock Shop, P.O. Box 7098, 48 Manners Street, Wellington.
Lapidary: as for Jewelry.
Leather: Best Leatherware Ltd., 400 Queen Street, Auckland 1.
Millinery: Maree De Maru Ltd., 201, Queen Street, Auckland City.
Plastics and dyeing materials: see *Alec Tiranti Ltd., U.K. suppliers.
Ropework yarns: Handicrafts Supplies Ltd., 13, Rosebank Rd, Avondale, Auckland 7, Timbercraft Retail Ltd., 42, Filleul Street, Dunedin.
Screens: A.H. Candy & Co. Ltd., 20 Marjoribanks Street, Wellington, 3 Rendall Place, Eden Terrace, Auckland 3.
Screen printing inks and materials: Morrison Printing Inks and Machinery Ltd., 13 Garrett Street, Wellington; Wall Road/Burret Avenue, Penrose, Auckland 6; 351, Selwyn Street, Addington, Christchurch 2; 192, Castle Street, Dunedin.
Tinned copper wire: Metal Import Co, Box 9240, Wellington.
Treasure Gold Paste, Liquid Leaf and Treasure Sealer: Moana Arts Ltd., P.O. Box 38171, 173, Moore Street, Howick, Auckland.
Wax: see *Candle Makers Supplies under U.K. suppliers.

CANADA

General crafts supplies: Lewiscraft, 284 King Street West, Toronto, M5V 1J3, for mail order catalogue and address of your nearest stockist. Also at 40, Commander Blvd, Agincourt, Ontario, M1S 3S2.
Batik wax and dyeing supplies: for overseas mail order see "Candle" Makers Supplies, U.K. Suppliers.
Candles: see U.K. suppliers under Egg decorating.
Clays: Presscott & Co., 2209, Hingston Avenue, Montreal 28, Quebec. See also under U.K. suppliers.
Découpage products: see *Leisure Crafts Centre, U.K. suppliers.
Gemsai tree kits: see *Baines Orr Ltd., under Lapidary, U.K. suppliers.
Plaster of Paris: see under U.K. suppliers.
Plastic materials: see *Alec Tiranti Ltd., U.K. suppliers.
Resin Materials: see U.K. suppliers.
Ryagarn: see Handcraft & Co., U.K. suppliers.
Wax: see _Batik_ above.

AUSTRALIA

General craft supplies: Handicraft Supply Pty Ltd., P.O. Box 3, 33, Brighton Avenue, Croydon Park, NSW 2133, for mail order catalogue and address of your nearest stockist. Also Semco Pty Ltd., Black Rock, Victoria, 3193. Batik materials, beads, canvas, cotton, dried flowers, dyes, embroidery, fabric and threads, enamelling materials, lampshade frames, leather, macramé yarns, needlepoint materials, patchwork templates, printing materials, ropecrafts, rug-making materials, screen printing, toy stuffing, wax, weaving looms and materials: Crafts, Wools and Gifts, 200 Nicholson Road, Subiaco, Perth.
Batik wax and dyeing candles: see also *U.K. suppliers.
Clay: see U.K. suppliers, *Ferro Ltd.
Découpage products: see *Leisure Crafts Centre, U.K. suppliers.
Fly tying equipment: J.M. Gillies (Pty) Ltd., 70-78, Clarke Street, South Melbourne, Victoria.
Gemsai tree kits: see *Baines Orr Ltd., under Lapidary, U.K. suppliers.
Plaster of Paris: see U.K. suppliers under Clay.
Plastic materials: (except _resin pigments_): W.R. Andison, 22, Wongola Avenue, Elenora Heights, NSW. (For _resin materials_ see U.K. suppliers, under Clay).
Processed polyester wadding—Filliwell—available at all major department stores.
Treasure Gold Paste, Liquid Leaf and _Treasure Sealer:_ Fads Trading Co., Box 477, GPO, Sydney, N.S.W.

SOUTH AFRICA

General craft supplies: Reeves S.A. (Pty) Ltd., P.O. Box 58121, Newville, Transvaal; mail order and personal shoppers (also in Pine Town).

Batik wax and dyeing products: see *Candle Makers Supplies, U.K. suppliers.

Basketry: S.A. Arts and Crafts Depot, P.O. Box 314, Johannesburg 2000.

Beadwork: Danziger Bros, 129, President Street, Johannesburg 2001.

Candles: see Basketry.

Clay: (and *Tapestry*): Handicrafts Centre, P.O. Box 173, Upper Church Street, opper. Maynardville Gates 7800, Wynberg 7824.

Clear-cast resin: Jackson's Fibre Glass, 59, Wolmarans Street, Braamfontein, Johannesburg 2001.

Découpage: see *Leisure Crafts Centre, U.K. suppliers.

Enamelling: Yardley's Gem Rock Shop, P.O. Box 3144, 40, Harrison Street, Johannesburg 2001.

Fabric dyes: Art Book Centre, 45c Bok Street, Joubert Park, Johannesburg 2001.

Fly tying equipment: Atkinson and Joscelyne (Pty) Ltd., P.O. Box 3152, Johannesburg (distributors for the House of Hardy). See also *Featherwork, U.K. suppliers.

Foam for upholstery: Foam Specialists, 204, West Street, Durban; Spunny Foam Products, 7, MacIntyre Street, Seppe, Johannesburg.

Gemsai tree kits: see *Baines Orr Ltd., under Lapidary, U.K. suppliers.

Kapok: (and foam plastic) OK Bazaars, P.O. Box 3171, Johannesburg 2000.

Needlepoint canvas: Louis Sherman, Rosebank (Pty) Ltd., 1, Baker Square, Rosebank, Johannesburg 2001.

Nylon rope and rugmaking: Bambi, P.O. Box 31252, Bicard & Smit Street, Braamfontein, Johannesburg.

Paints, papers: E. Schweickerdt (Pty) Ltd., 89, Queen Street, Pretoria.

Pewter (and silk screen inks and materials): see E. Schweikerdt under paints.

Plastics: see clear-cast resin.

Treasure Gold Paste, Liquid Leaf and Treasure Sealer: F.W. Nyman & Co., P.O. Box 292, Broad Street, Durban.

Tumbling machines: Yarkley's Hobby Shop (Pty) Ltd., York Arcade, Rissik Street, Johannesburg 2001.

Wax: Country Craft, Flora Centre, Ontdekkers Road, Florida, Transvaal.

Wire: R. Jackson & Co., (Pty) Ltd., Metal Division, 63, Harrison Street, Johannesburg 2001.

Yarns (and canvas): Dana Cane, 185, President Street, Johannesburg.

UNITED STATES

General craft materials: LeeWards Creative Craft Center, 1200, St. Charles Street, Elgin, Illinois 60120 (for mail order) or branches for personal shoppers; Triarco Arts and Crafts, 3201, Glenview Road, Wilmette Illinois 60091 (catalogue available).

Batik: see *Candle Makers Supplies, U.K. suppliers.

Basketry: Otto Gerdau Co., 82, Wall Street, New York, N.Y. 10005.

Beads (and *felt* and *wire*): Allcraft Tool and Supply Co., 150, Frank Road, Hicksville, New York, N.Y. 11801.

Brass and silver wire: as for Beads.

Candles: see General craft materials, above.

Cold-enamelling resin: American Handicraft Co., 5655, Main Street, Buffalo, N.Y.

Clay: see self hardening clays.

DMC Yarns: DMC, 107, Trumbull Street, Elizabeth, New York, N.Y. 07206, for nearest stockist.

Découpage: Connoisseur Studio, P.O. Box 7189, Louisville, Kentucky.

Dyes: Pylam Products Co. Inc., 5-10, 218th Street, Queens Village, New York, N.Y. 11439.

Egg decorating: Bead Boutique, 2320, Monroe Avenue, Rochester, New York, N.Y. 14618, and Hollis Gift Shop, 1338, Goshen Avenue, Fort Wayne, Indiana 46808.

Enamelling: see Cold-enamelling resin.

Feathers: Gettinger Feather Co., 38, West 38th Street, New York, N.Y. 10018 (mail service for fee); Schwartz Feathers and Flowers, 34, West 38th Street, New York, N.Y. 10018.

Floor paints: on clean wax-free floors use porch and deck enamel, at paint stores.

Gemsai tree kits: see * Baines Orr Ltd., U.K. suppliers.

Glass: Glass Masters' Guild, 52, Carmine Street, New York, N.Y. 14226.

Lapidary: see Beads.

Metal studs: Tandy Leather, 324, Sheridan Drive, Buffalo, New York, N.Y. 14226.

Mirror and mosaic tiles: Dazian's, 40, East 29th Street, New York, N.Y. 10016.

Plaster of Paris: see U.K. suppliers.

Plastics: see Cold-enamelling resin.

Resin: see Cold-enamelling resin.

Ryagarn: see *Handcraft & Co., U.K. suppliers.

Self-hardening clays: Stewart Clay Co. Inc., 133, Mulberry Street, New York, N.Y. 10016, (write to Henry Cahan).

Soapstone: Tri-Talc Stoneworks, 5830, NW HWY 99W, P.O. Box 1008, Corvallis, Oregon 97330 (mail order).

Stained glass: Whitmore-Durkin Glass Co., P.O. Box 2065, Hanover, Massachusetts 02339 (mail order).

Transers: from chain or variety stores.

Wax: see Egg decorating.

Suppliers addresses
United Kingdom

Please send a s.a.e.
with any enquiries to
the suppliers below

Cloth—sewing 1. For similar reversible machine washable wool (56" wide)—write to Taftex Ltd, 63 Ifield Road, London SW10 for nearest stockists. Plastic Foam Chips at Arrowtip Ltd, 31/33 Stannery St, Kensington Road, London SE11.

Cloth—sewing 2. 36" wide cotton fabric from Laura Ashley, 71 Lower Sloane St, London SW1. Bonded polyester wadding —for mail order write to Beckfoot Mill, Beckfoot Lane, Harden, Bingley, Yorkshire BD16 1AR. Also available from John Lewis, Oxford St, London W1 and branches.

Moblies 1. Origami paper available at art shops or Paperchase Products Ltd, 216 Tottenham Ct Rd, London W1 (both mail order and personal shoppers).

Wax 1 and 2. *All materials at Candle Makers Supplies, 28 Blythe Rd, London W14.

Paper 1, 2 and 3. Ingres and cover paper at art shops.

Beadwork 1. All beads and findings at Hobby Horse, 15 Langton St, London SW10.

Plastic 1. Clear cast resin, catalyst and pigment at Trylon Ltd, Wollaston, Northants, NN9 7QJ. Paperweight moulds at Turner Research Ltd, Cross Green Garth, Leeds 9. (Also offer mail order).

Clay 1 and 2. Jug, vases and egg cup at Craftsmen Potters Shop, 58 Marshall St, London W1. Selfhardening clays—Cold-clay (this can be fired too) at Fulham Pottery, 210 Kings Road, London SW6 (also mail order) Das at hobby shops: for your nearest stockist write to Wiggins Teape (Toys & Crafts) Ltd., Hubert Rd, Brentwood, Essex.

Clay 3. Mirrors in terracotta clay designed by Birchwood Pottery, Birchwood Hall, Storridge, Malvern, Worcs. Similar designs available from Boadicea, 42 Beauchamp Place, London SW3.

Wood—carpentry 1. Spoon holder at Habitat, 158 Tottenham Ct Rd, London W1 and branches. Softwood and ramin dowel at timber merchants. Juniper discs in packs of 20 (1"-1½") from Hobby Horse, 15 Langton St, London SW10.

Wood—carpentry 2. Wax polish and polyurethane varnish at hardware shops. Wallpaper by Sanderson and Sons Ltd. Clock and kitchen utensils at Habitat, 206 Kings Rd, London SW3 and branches.

Wood—finishes 1. All items at hardware or DIY shops. Ronseal Coloured Polyurethane Wood Seal supplied by Sterling Roncraft, Chapeltown, Sheffield S30 4YP. Page 73: Dressing-table and mirror at John Lewis. Accessories at The Neal Street Shop, 29 Neal St, London WC2. Page 75: Wallpaper by Sanderson and Sons Ltd, rug at John Lewis and china at Wedgwood Gered & Spode, 158 Regent St, London W1.

Yarn—needlepoint 1. Single canvas 14 threads per 2.5cm (1"), Anchor Tapisserie wool and Appleton's crewel wool at The Needlewoman Shop), 146-8 Regent St, London W1.

Yarn—needlepoint 2. Anchor and Appleton's yarns, and canvas at The Needlewoman Shop (see above). Anchor Stranded cotton, Appleton's crewel wool, DMC Laine Tapisserie, and canvas at Harrods, Knightsbridge, London SW1 (both also do mail order). Ladies' cigarette lighter at Ronson, 352 Strand, London WC2. Powder compact at Selfridges, Oxford St, London W1.

Yarn—weaving 1. Cotton fabric for table mats and napkins at Laura Ashley, 40 Sloane St, London SW1 and branches. Woollen rag rug by Superior Pride of Erin, High St, Newmarket, Co Cork, Eire. Blue blouse and skirt at Mary Davies, 12 Queen St, London W1.

Yarn—weaving 2. Dowel at timber merchants. Basket and vase at Habitat, 206 Kings Rd, London SW3 and branches. Room setting by Heals, 196 Tottenham Ct Rd, London W1.

Yarn—weaving 3. Dress at Mary Davies, 12 Queen St, London W1. Hat and scarf at Herbert Johnson, 13 Old Burlington Street, London W1. Shoes at Chelsea Cobbler, 66 New Bond St, London W1.

Yarn—crochet 1. Jaeger Spiral Spun at Jaeger stockists or write to Consumer Liaison Dept, Jaeger Handknitting Ltd, Alloa, Clackmananshire, Scotland, for nearest stockist, or for mail order from The Needlewoman Shop, 146-8 Regent St, London W1.

Metal 1. Beads, tools, findings and wire at Hobby Horse, 15 Langton St, London SW10.

Metal 2. Tinned copper wire at hardware shops. Sheet vinyl flooring or lino at DIY or hardware shops.

Enamel 1. All items sold separately from Dryad by mail order or Reeves Dryad Shop for personal shoppers (for addresses see below). Blow torch, emery paper or glasspaper, tongs at hardware shops. Art nouveau broach by John Jesse, 164 Kensington Church St, London W8.

Colour—Printing 1 and 2. Paints, sugar paper and cartridge paper available at art shops. Paints at Reeves Dryad Shop, 178 Kensington High St, London W8 for personal shoppers.

Colour—paint 1. Brolac Colorizer Paints used for mural, by Berger Paints. Their booklet 'The Berger Guide to wall patterns' is free from Berger Paints Service, Freshwater Rd, Dagenham, Essex RM8 1RU. Tumbletwist rugs at John Lewis, Oxford St, London W1.

Colour—paint 2. Masking and low-tack tapes at hardware shops. Floor paints—ask for Liquid Lino at hardware shops or write to International Decorative Paints, Connaught Rd, Silvertown, London E16 for nearest stockist.

Creative Ideas 1. Clear polyurethane varnish at hardware shops.

Creative Ideas 2. Transfers by mail order from Paperchase Products Ltd., 216 Tottenham Ct Rd, London W1.

Creative Ideas 3. Chenille wire at haberdashery departments or stationers. Dip-It at Dip-Film Products, Railway Street, Braintree, Essex (also mail order).

GOING METRIC
In this volume you will fin two systems of measuremen The first set of figures refers t the metric system and th Imperial figures follow in brackets. Wherever possible, commonsense approach ha been adopted and both set of measurements have bee worked out in round numbers **BUT BEWARE!** This mean that metric and the Imperia figures are *not* equivalent s make sure you only work wit one or other set of figures.

This edition published 1978

Distributed to schools and
libraries in North America by
Marshall Cavendish Corporatio
and in the United Kingdom by
New Caxton Library Service

Library of Congress Catalog
Card Number 77-832-69

© Marshall Cavendish Ltd,
MCMLXXV 58, Old Compton
Street, London, W1V 5PA

EDITORIAL STAFF

Editors	Elsie Burch Donald Beverley Hilton
Art Editors	Kelly Flynn Maggi McNally
Assistant Editors	Louis Jordaan Alison Louw
Sub-Editors	Jinty Lentier Maggie Selway
Section Editors	Diana Atteridge Sarah Chapman Elsie Donald Margaret Empson Anne Johnson Rosemary Kean Donald Paul Lindsay Vernon
Art Assistants	Angela Dunn Linda Palmer Sue Walsham
Stylists	Judy Bardrick Maggie Heinz
Picture Research	Ethne Rose Sylvie Watton

CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Robert C. Akers
Janet Allen
Judy Allen
Elizabeth Ashurst
Diana Atteridge

Candice Bahouth
Michael Baker
Laura Balston
Jill Barber
Neil Bardrick
Audrey Barker
Dennis Barker
Val Barry
Eve Barwell
Ruth Beard
Clare Beck
Marilyn Berry
Valerie Bexley
Eileen Bird
Sue Biro
Richard Blore
David Boot
Michael Boys
Angela Bragg
Germaine Brotherton
Frances Brown
Shirley Brown
Sheila Brull
Sue Burgin

Michael Carmichael
Stacey Carr
Joyce Carr-Griffiths
Richard Casey
Kevin Caston
Doreen Cavanagh
Sarah Chapman
Shelley Churchman
Joy Clucas
Jarvis Coates
Jenny Colverd
David Constable
Chris Constantinou
Emmanuel Cooper
Joan Cotton
Kay Cunliffe

Stuart Dalby
Philippa Davenport
Amy Dawson
Pam Dawson
Jackson Day
Richard Dent
Pixie Dorchy
Phoebe Douglas
Trata Maria Drescha
Alistair Duncan
Vic Duppa Whyte
Gill Dutfield
Valerie Duthoit

Victor Edwards
Siddig El'Nigoumi
Graham Elson

Frances Farrer
Morag Felton (co SIRA)
Laura Ferguson
David Fisher
Norman Fisher
Marisa Flecha
Mary Franks
Clara Furness

Joanne Godfrey
Horatio Goris
Liz Goodman
Ilse Gray
Anna Griffiths
Anne Gurney

Mike Halsey
Verity Hanson-Smith
Eleanor Harvey
Marjorie Hastie-Smith
Toni Hicks
Graham Hiles
David Hill
John Hirchcliffe
Sue Hinton
Rosemary Hoar
Valentine Hoar
Charles Holdgate
Tim Holland
Jean Hornak
Dennis Howell
Brian Hoy
Frances Hutchson
Francis Hutchinson

Dennis Inkersole
Neil Ions

Valerie Jackson
Rita James
Anne Johnson
Lorraine Johnson
Patricia Johnson
Tony Jolly
Wendy Jones

Rosemary Kean
Eris Kennaway
Ron Kidd
Janet Kirkwood

Barbara Lang
Sonya Larkin
Dorothy Larkum
Judith Larney
Anita Lear
Sarah Lewis
Gerry Leybourn-Needham
Sylvia Libedinsky
Ann Lindsay
Pauline Liu
Priscilla Lobley
Anne Lomax
Neil Lorimer

Margaret Mairio
Ian Manson
Glenda Marsh
Alf Martensson
Annette Martin
John Matthews
Barbara Maynard
Jane McCarthy
Jannifer Mehta
Patricia de Menezes
Brenda Mills
J. R. Milsone
Jane Moran
Frances Morton
Marjorie Murphy

Helen M. Newman
Martin Newman
Susan Norris

Carol Packard
John Page
John Page-Phillips
Janet Palmer
Boyd Parker
Elizabeth Parton
Susan Pascoe
Edwina Pickett
H. J. B. Piercy
Brian Pike
Roger Polley
Mary Pope
Caroline Porter
Hugh Powell
Chris Power
Ken Pyman

Reg Reynolds
Gerry Richards
Alan Riddell
Maggie Riegler
Paula Rieu
Carson Ritchie
Seonaid Robertson
Sally Rousham

Mary Seyd
Irene Shankland
Jacqueline Short
Anita Skjold
Lesley Slight
Stanley Smithson
Peter Stallwood
Harry Stringer
Jennifer Stuart
Anne Sutton
Pam Swan

Sylvia Telbalian
Graham S. Thomas OBE VMH
Glen Travis
Jerry Tubby
Helen Tynan

Alan Vare
Lindsey Vernon

Diana Walls
Mary Walker
A. J. Weelan
Alan Wheeler
Hetty Wickens
Susan Wilks
David M. Willacy
John Williams
Anthony Wilson
Pamela Woods
Anne Woodward
H. E. Wright
Ray Wright

Felicity Youett

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
Deptt of Extension Services
CALCUTTA-27

First fold your paper...

Bright, original pop-up cards are easy to make and can be elaborated upon once you get the knack of a few basic techniques. The cards work on the principle of a cut made across a fold in the paper. This frees a section of the paper which is then folded to give a 3-dimensional pop-up that opens and closes to look like a winking eye, a talking mouth, or a quacking beak.
The basic construction is simply the slit and the fold, but a wide variety of original effects can be achieved by adding to this simple technique.

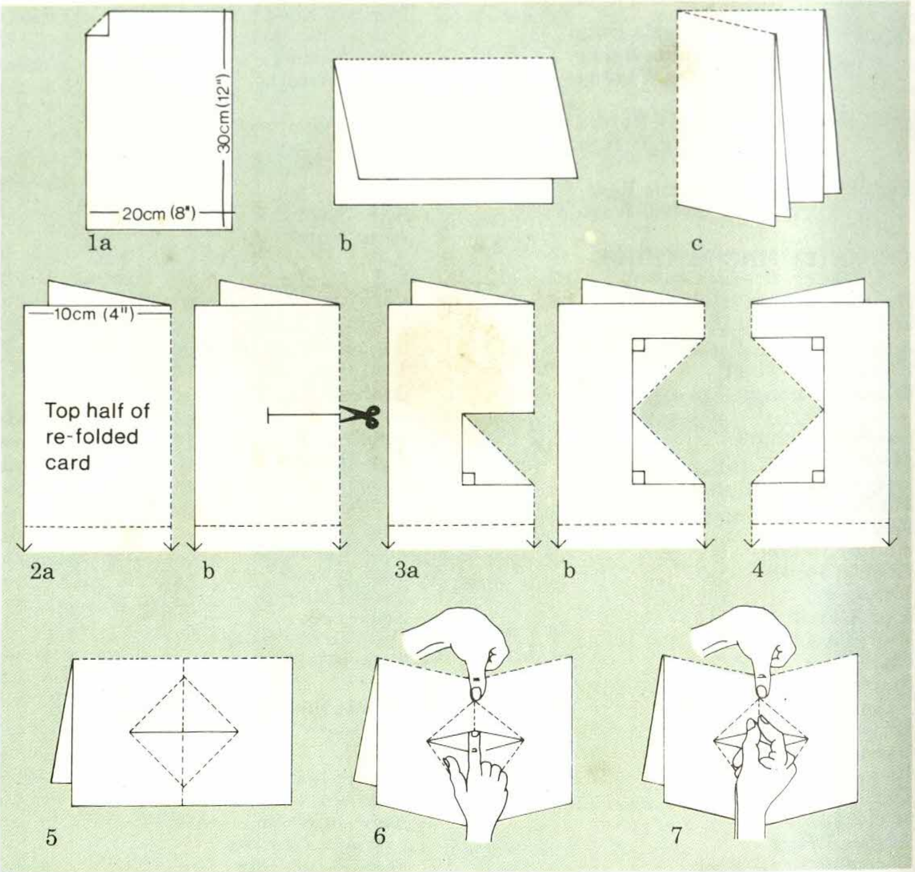
Choosing the materials

It is important to select the right paper to work with. Paper that is too thin and floppy will not fold or stand satisfactorily, whereas thin cardboard is difficult to manipulate, and if it is coated the surface may crack. To begin with, use a good quality uncoated paper such as Ingres or cover paper, available in a wide variety of colours from art shops.

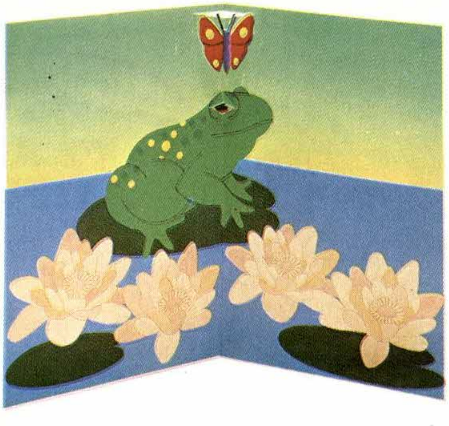
The slit principle

The simplest pop-up construction is made by cutting a single horizontal slit across a vertical fold in a piece of paper. This makes a basic opening inside which an eye, a message or a motif can be centred. Or it can form a beak or mouth as illustrated in the completed frog and fish cards.

Constructing the pop-up. It is a good idea to experiment with lined paper to begin with, so that the creases can be made accurately.
Fold the paper in half twice to make the card shape (fig.1). Open up the card and fold the inside crease in the opposite direction. Snip horizontally through the crease not more than half way across (fig.2). Fold back the edges of the slit to make two right angled triangles (fig.3). Turn the paper over and fold these triangles over the other way (fig.4). Repeat once or twice more to make the fold workable.
Open up the card flat (fig.5). With the left thumb holding down the top crease, use the right forefinger to lift the pop-up (fig.6). Press pop-up crease firmly (fig.7). Repeat with the other half of the pop-up. Carefully shut the card, if necessary helping the pop-up outwards, and keeping the top and bottom creases folding with the centre fold of the card. Press the closed card flat firmly with the knuckles.
Open and shut the card several times until it suggests a picture idea. If it reminds you of a duck you could add the face to match and write QUACK! inside the beak. If it looks like a baby bird, how about adding a worm dangling from the beak?



Joanna Ball



Steve Bicknell

Decorating the cards

Use a variety of coloured stick-ons, gummed paper or paints to finish the design on your card.
For example, trace off body shapes, plants and flowers from illustrations, cut out in coloured paper and stick them to the card. Experiment to find the different effects you can achieve by applying various finishes to the same basic pop-up—like the 3 cards illustrated here.

The frog card with the winking eye and moving butterfly shape is a more sophisticated development of the basic technique described here.

To make the bird card

You will need:
Red Ingres or cover paper measuring 19cm x 30cm (8″ x 12″)
Green paper measuring 15cm (6″) square
Scraps of orange and yellow gummed paper, or orange and yellow crayons
File paper reinforcements
Scissors, glue

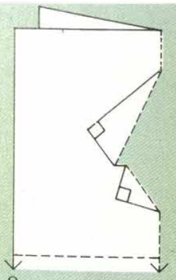
☐ Fold the red paper and make a 6.5cm (2½″) wide slit. Draw round a cup to give a circular body shape and round 3 small coins to give the tail.
☐ Cut out the bird shape in green paper. Trace off and cut out the diamond beak shape from the green body.

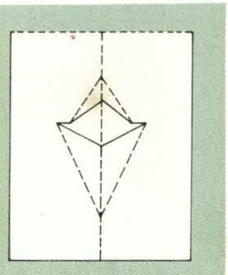
☐ Stick the body onto the card so that the diamond cut-out lies exactly over the pop-up shape.
☐ Either colour in the beak shape, or use an orange paper beak shape, cut in half horizontally and stuck on to each half of the pop-up.
☐ Draw on the wing shapes and stick on file-paper reinforcements for eyes, with inked pupils in the centre. Complete the card by sticking on feet and legs cut from bright yellow gummed paper, or draw them in yellow crayon

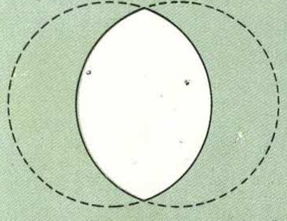
To make the fish card

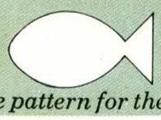
You will need:
Blue Ingres or cover paper measuring 19cm x 30cm (8″ x 12″)
Green paper measuring 15cm (6″) square
Scraps of dark green, white, yellow and black gummed paper, or crayons in the same colours
Scissors, glue

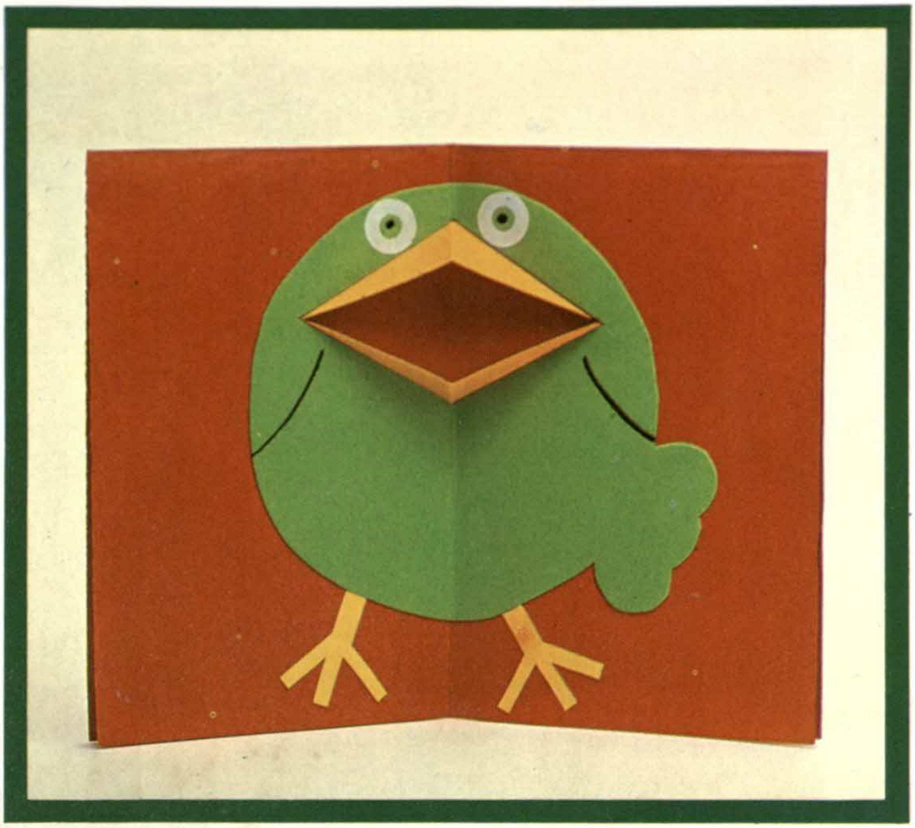
☐ Fold the blue paper and make a 5cm (2″) wide slit. The mouth shape is varied here as the top and bottom 'lip' are different sizes. This is simply done by folding back the triangles to different depths (fig.8). If the upper triangle is smaller, this gives a small upper lip and a deeper lower lip (fig.9).
☐ Draw the large fish shape (fig.10) and cut out from the green paper. Make a slit for the mouth. Stick the fish onto the card.
☐ Finish off with fins and scales in the dark green paper, a group of white bubbles and circular yellow eyes. Make the pupils from circles of black paper with a triangle snipped out.
☐ Inside the pop-up, stick a square of white paper to the back of the card to look like a throat.
☐ Trace off the tiny fish (fig.11) and cut from green paper. Stick in place.


8

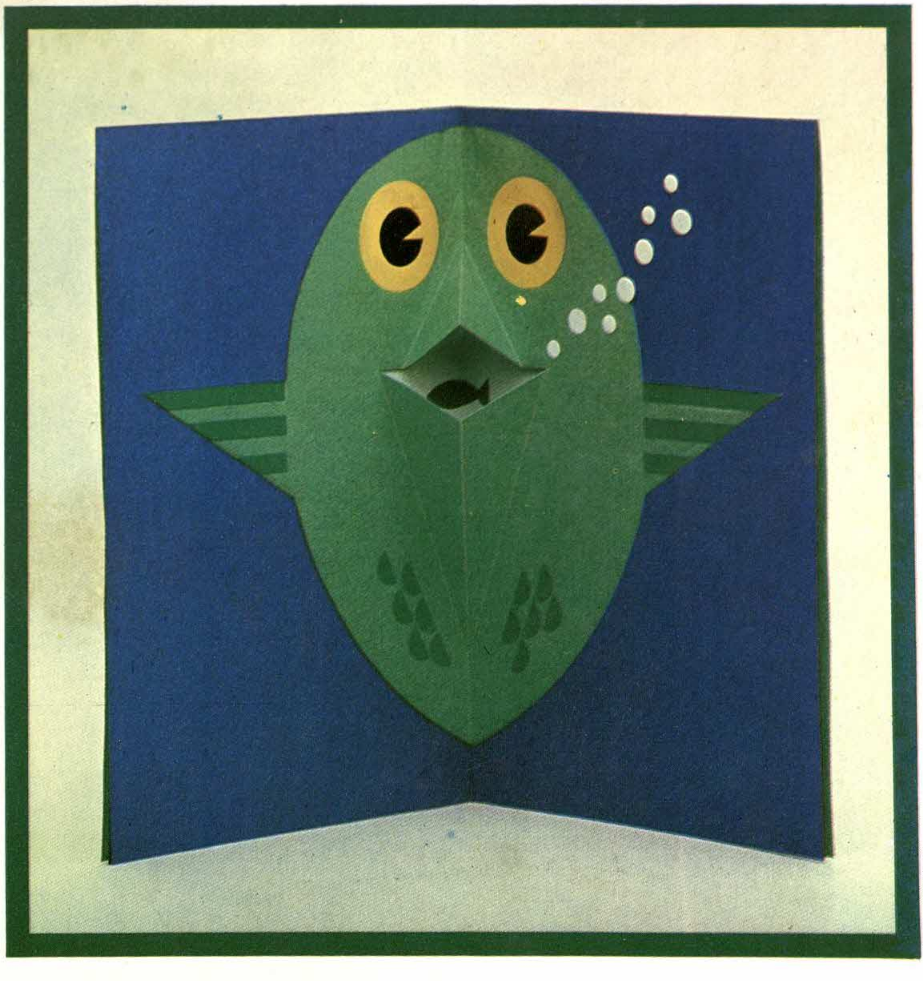

9


10. Use side-plates to draw the big fish.


11. Trace pattern for the tiny fish.


Above: a cheerful robin card based on the simplest pop-up construction, which lends itself particularly well to the gaping bird beak shape.

Below: here the pop-up is shaped like a fish mouth with a shorter upper 'lip'. A tiny fish inside the mouth and a trail of bubbles completes it.


Jerry Tubby

Getting the feel of clay

Clay 1

Chris Lewis

Clay is one of the most satisfying materials to work with. Even simple pinching and modelling with your fingers can produce exciting results and is a good way of becoming familiar with the texture and properties of clay. You can start working in a basic way without a kiln and, if your imagination is stimulated, then go on to use a potter's wheel and fire your own designs.

Natural clay. A lump of clay is made up of millions of tiny, plate-shaped particles. Water enables these flat particles to slide over each other without breaking up. When clay is dry, the particles will not move and if forced, will break. When only a small amount of water is present, movement is limited, and the clay is stiff to use.

When the clay is about 25% water it can be easily moulded and is ideal for modelling. More water turns the clay into a soft, formless mass.

Natural clay has the great advantage for the beginner of being an extremely cheap material. Two types of clay are commercially available: white clay is smooth, takes glaze well and is cleaner to use, whereas terracotta clay fires to a pleasant red colour at a fairly low temperature. Ready-to-use clay is available by post direct from the manufacturers, and usually contains about 25% water. It is polythene-wrapped in bags of various sizes, the 25kg (55lbs) weight being the most convenient for beginners. Store it in a cool place, carefully wrapped in polythene so that it does not dry out. When you have moulded the clay into a finished pot or model, the dried clay can be turned into a hard, permanent material by firing it in a pottery oven or kiln, a sawdust pit, or even a bonfire.

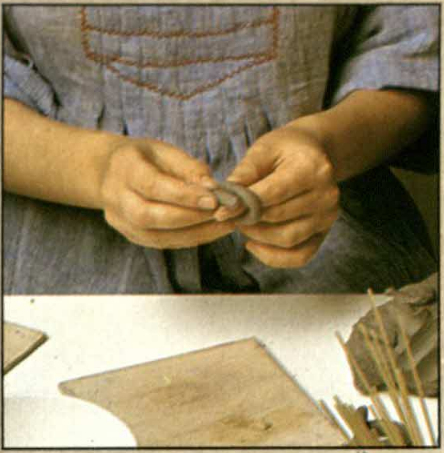
As the clay chapters progress you will discover how to use a potter's wheel to make pots and jugs, how to make vases using the slab technique, use beautiful glazes and slips, and model both life-like and stylized animals and birds. The jug shown here is made by Alan Caiger-Smith, the slab vase by Joan Hepworth, oval vase by Mary White, eggcup by David Leach and bird by Stanislas Reychan

Self-hardening clays. For potters who do not have kilns, specially compounded clay mixtures are now available which, when exposed to the air for about 24-48 hours, become really hard and should not break or scratch. The self-hardening clays are clean to use, but are less satisfying to handle than natural clay. They are widely available from hobby shops, but are relatively expensive.

Pots made from self-hardening clay are not entirely durable, they cannot be glazed and they do not hold water. If you varnish them thoroughly first however, they can be made waterproof. Manufacturers supply varnishes intended for use with their clay products, and these can be applied over painted decorations. Some of the self-hardening clays can be fired, if you have access to a kiln, so that your most successful pieces can be made impervious.

Some of these manufactured products, like ColdClay, have an added advantage in that they are natural potting clay containing a hardening additive, rather than a synthetic substitute, so they handle like natural clay.

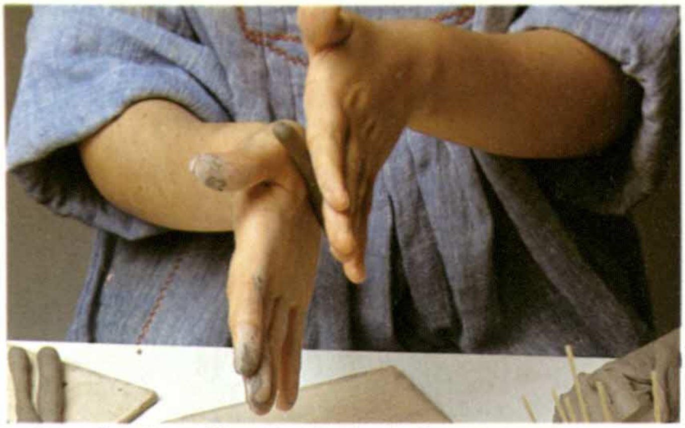
Handling qualities. Test the properties of your own clay; dry some pieces out and see how hard they become, wet other pieces and see how the amount of water present affects this quality of the clay, which is called plasticity. Pinching the clay and working it with a little water will quickly mix the two. A good test for judging the working qualities of the clay is to roll a piece between your hand into a coil which you wrap round your finger. If the coil bends without breaking, does not stick to your finger and retains its shape, then it is probably just right. If it cracks, it is too dry, and if it sticks and is floppy, it is too wet.



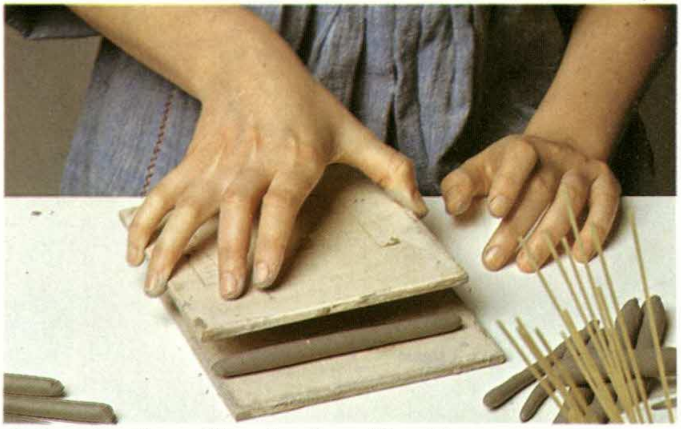
Testing the quality of the clay

Decorating unfired clay. If you are planning to work a design on the clay, press interesting shapes with snap fasteners, tiny buttons, or a pen-knife against the clay before it hardens.

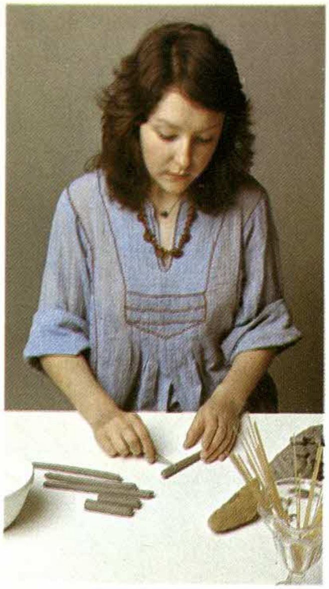
Paint the clay only when it is completely dry. Several types of paint are useful for decorating. Poster paint used direct from the pot gives a strong opaque colour. Indian inks are waterproof and dry to give a semi-matt surface and subtle colours. Gouache colours are also excellent for decorating clay. For a shiny, durable finish, on painted patterns use a suitable clear varnish such as paper varnish or polyurethane lacquer.



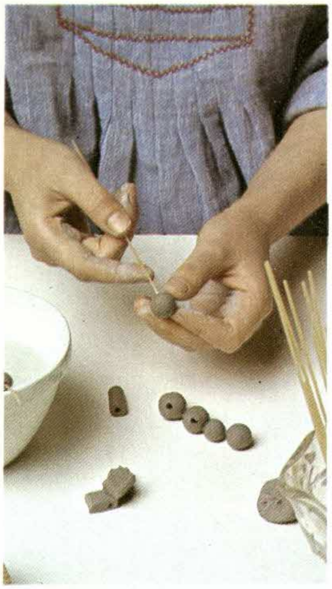
1. *Long beads—rolling the clay in the hands.*



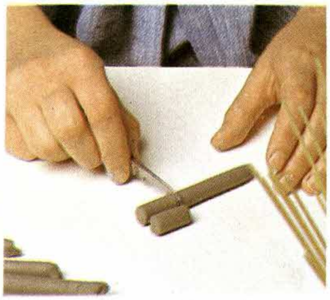
2. *Long beads—rolling the clay with a tile.*



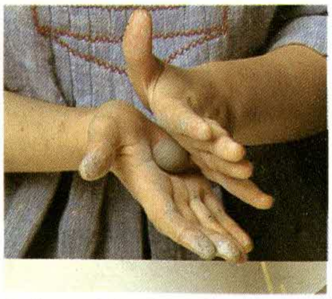
3. *Long beads—cutting coils.*



4. *Making the holes.*

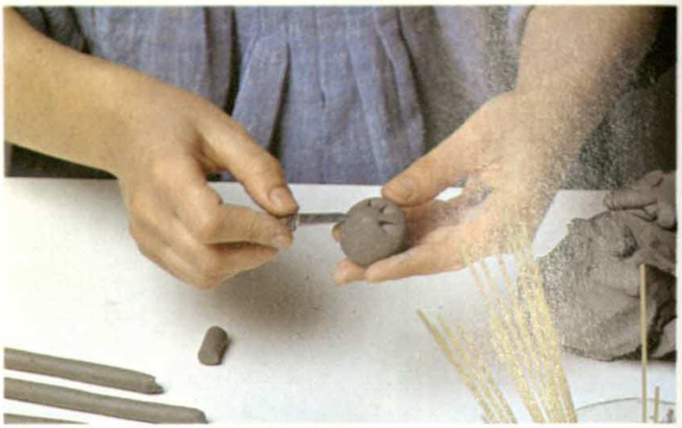


5. *Cutting equal lengths.*

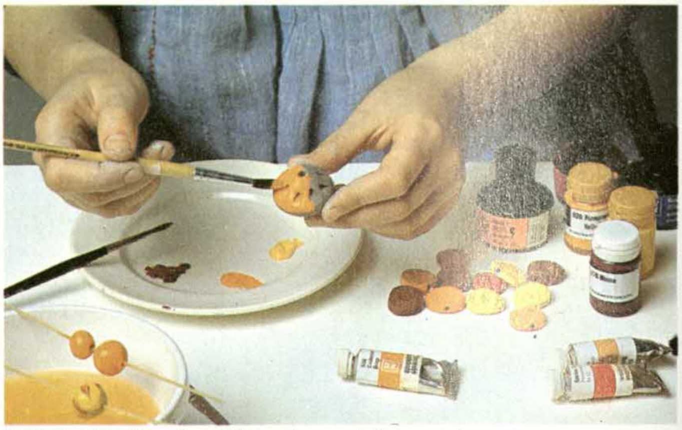


6. *Round beads–rolling a ball.*

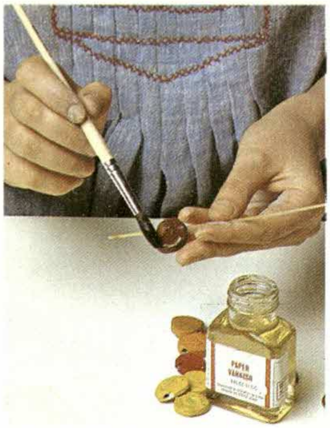
Steve Bicknell



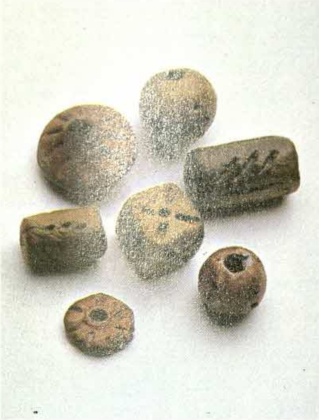
7. *Pressing a pattern with a knife.*



8. *Painting beads with poster paint.*

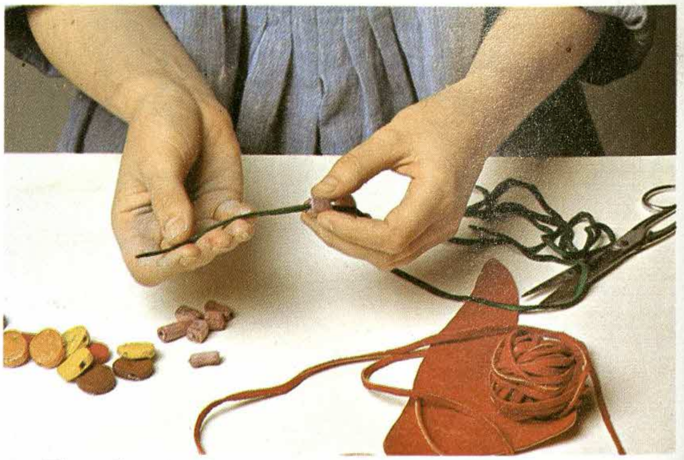


9. *Varnishing.*



10. *Completed beads.*

Kim Sayer



11. *Threading beads on suede strings.*

Making clay beads

Beads and other pieces of jewelry are good first projects to make in clay. They are small and simple to construct, but can be decorated to give impressive finished results.

You will need:
About 340gm ($\frac{3}{4}$lb) clay will make one necklace
Tile or flat piece of wood
Poster paints, Indian inks or gouache colours
Shapes for impressing
Varnish
Flat working surface, covered with hessian or canvas for natural clay
Smock or apron
Suede strips about 3mm ($\frac{1}{10}$") wide in suitable lengths for necklaces

Long beads. Roll lengths of clay between your hands (fig.1), then make them perfectly smooth and even by rolling each coil with a flat piece of wood or a ceramic tile (fig.2). Make several coils of the same thickness.

☐Use the knife to cut the coil into lengths – about 12mm-20mm ($\frac{1}{2}$"-$\frac{3}{4}$") is a good length, although some could be smaller – rolling the coils as you do so (figs.3,4). This roll-and-slice movement prevents the coil being flattened.

☐Make holes with a thick piece of pointed wire, a needle, or even a piece of spaghetti which has the advantage of not sticking to the clay.

☐Place the beads on newspaper to dry.

Round beads. Roll out even coils of clay, this time making the coils thicker. To get balls the same size, cut equal lengths carefully. To make the balls, roll the cut lengths between the palms of your hands (figs 5,6).

☐Make the holes as before.

Square beads. Roll a coil, then flatten it with a piece of wood if you want to make flat beads, or into a square block for square beads.

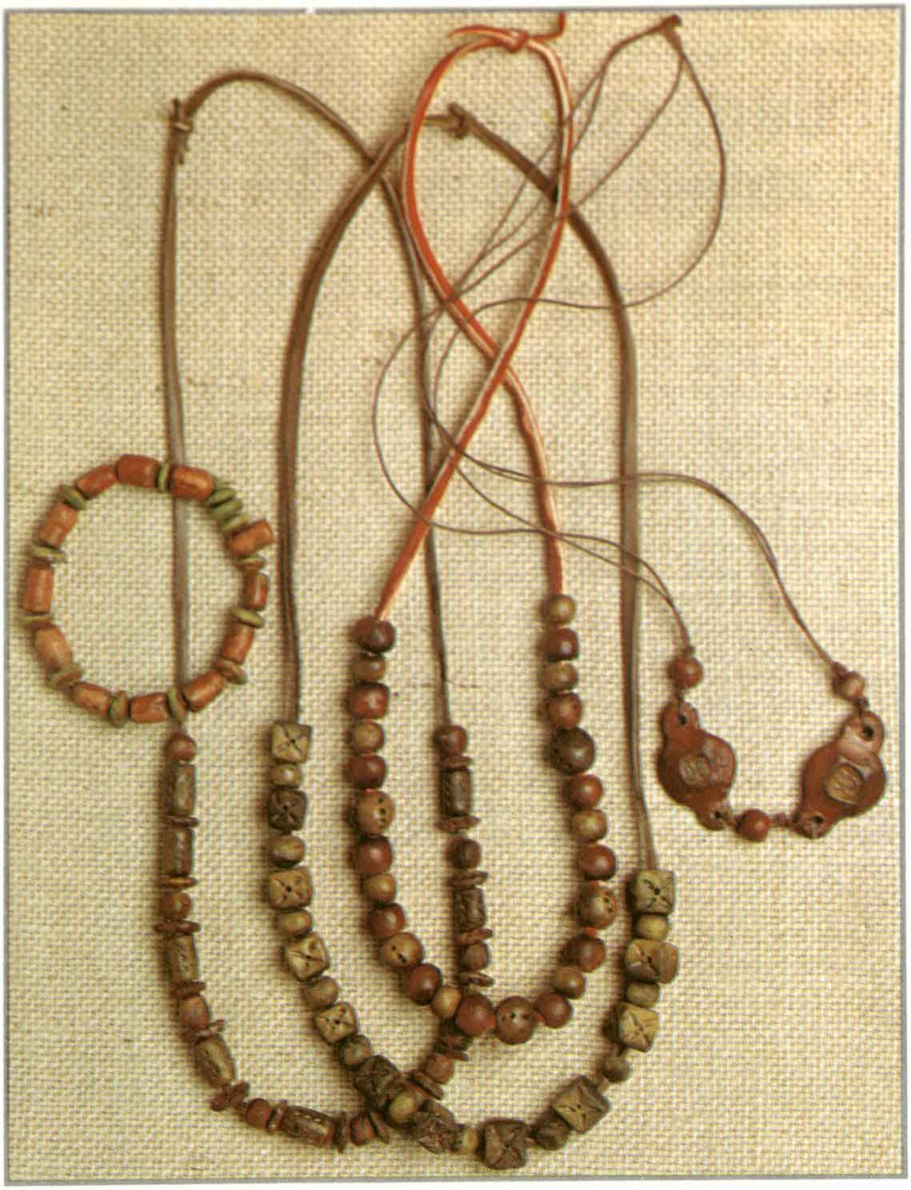
☐Cut and pierce as before.

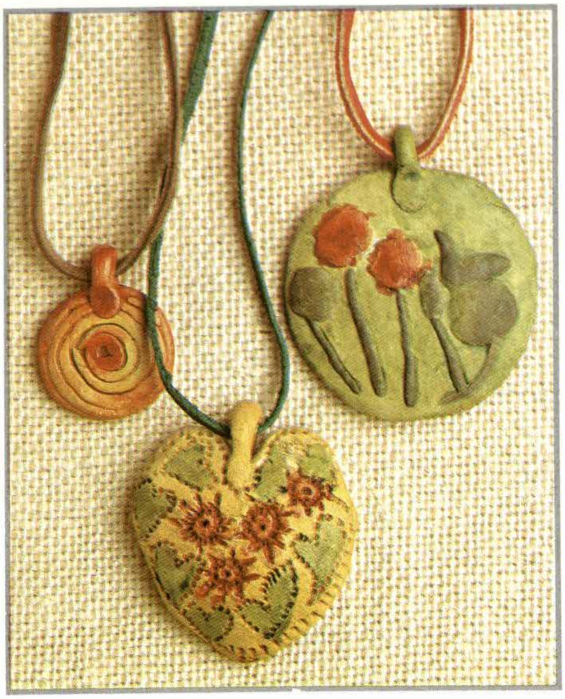
Finishing the pieces. Impress any designs at this stage (fig.7).

When the clay is dry, smooth the surface with a damp sponge. Do not oversponge, as this will roughen the surface. If you have access to a kiln, the pieces can be fired to a temperature of about 980°-1000°C (1821°-1857°F).

Potters using self-hardening clay should allow the pieces to dry for several days in the air, after which they will become very hard, although this clay can still be softened in water. Thread the beads when they are completely dry on lengths of thick wire or spaghetti and paint them with poster paints or Indian inks (fig.8). Leave to dry thoroughly and paint with a coat of clear varnish (fig.9).

Clay beads look attractive threaded on narrow suede strips (fig.11), which can be bought from hobby shops, or can be cut from suede scraps using scissors or a sharp blade.





Above: here the beads are a variety of shapes, some with small patterns incised on the surface with a sharp point. Painted in soft shades of green, brown and terracotta and threaded on a narrow suede strip or strong twine, the beads make attractive and original necklaces. Bracelets are best strung on strong elastic thread
Left: pendants provide great scope for making individual patterns, whether they are a simple design, a name, a portrait head or a message. The pendants here show a simple coil, a heart with a design pricked on it and a round pendant with flower shapes stuck onto it. All jewelry by Françoise Theroude.

Designing with straight stitch

Yarn – needlepoint 1

Tapestry, canvaswork and needlepoint are all words used to describe the art of building up a solid pattern of yarn on canvas. Usually this is presented as a specific pattern to be made up in a given yarn on a set size of canvas. But with an understanding of what yarns cover what canvas best, you can vary the scale and tailor designs to your own requirements.

You can achieve splendid, rich textures and original designs on canvas, working with any of a variety of yarns. Wool gives a beautifully firm, dense surface which is hardwearing and attractive. With silks and cottons you can work fine, detailed designs, and unusual yarns like raffia and metallic threads create interesting textures.

Canvas. There are 2 types: single thread, measured by the number of threads per 2.5cm (1″) and double thread, measured by the number of pairs of threads per 2.5cm (1″).

Single thread canvas is the best to begin on as you can try out a wide variety of stitches, whereas double thread is restricted to 4 or 5 only. The number of threads per 2.5cm (1″) can vary from 26 for fine work to 3 for very coarse work.

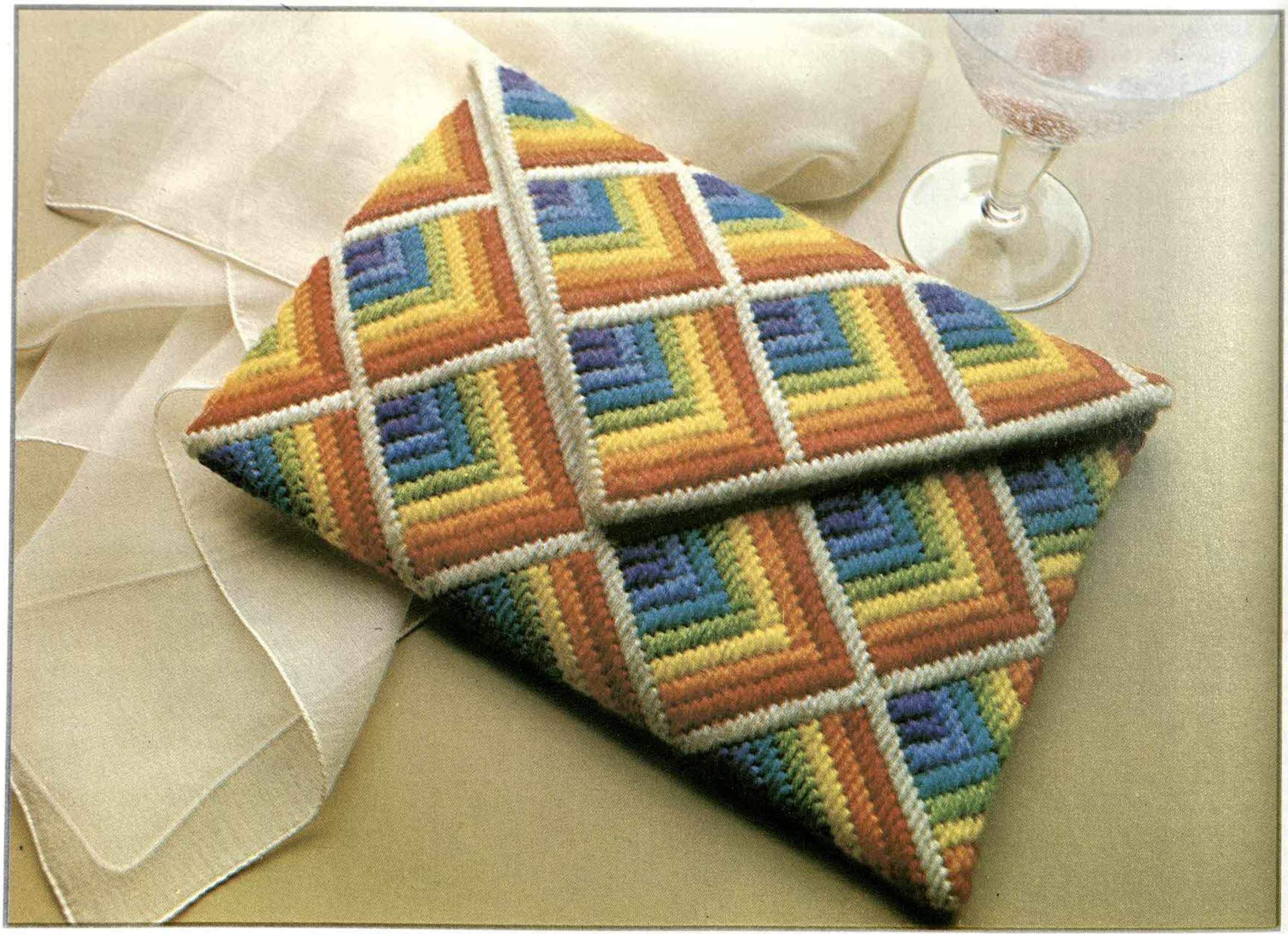
Needles. Use tapestry needles with large eyes and blunt ends. These are available in a variety of sizes, 18-21 being the most popular, but size 14 is better for very coarse canvas.

Yarns are available in many different thicknesses and some are made up of several individual strands twisted together, which can be separated as required. Use a length of yarn about 46cm (18″) long—if it is longer it will wear thin and become fluffy.

Straight stitch is used to work this bag and, as it does not distort the canvas, you don't need a frame. It can be worked over any number of threads, but large stitches are unsuitable for practical designs as they tend to get caught.

Satin stitch is usually worked over 4 threads to give a firm surface, and in this bag it is formed in steps of forward 4 and back 3.

Starting and finishing. Knot one end of the yarn. Put the needle in at the front of the canvas about 5cm (2″) from the position of the first stitch. Bring the needle up from the back and work the first few stitches. Cut off the knot, thread the end into a needle and slip the yarn through the back of the worked stitches, adding a small back stitch to secure. The next length of yarn can be threaded into the back of the previously worked stitches and finished off as before. Avoid fastening on and off in the same place. The extra-thick stitching may show through on the front of the canvas.



Steve Bicknell

Satin stitch clutch bag in rainbow colours, designed and worked by Martyn Thomas.

To make the clutch bag

This neat envelope design is worked entirely in 'stepped' satin stitch blocks using rainbow colours, to create a fishscale effect. The finished bag measures 22.5cm x 15cm (9" x 6").

You will need:

Single canvas 14 threads per 2.5cm (1"), 50cm x 32cm (22" x 13")
Lining fabric, 48cm x 30cm (19" x 12")
Choose any yarn suitable for 14 threads per 2.5cm (1") canvas. Calculate the number of skeins required from the total length of yarn given. Always round up to avoid the risk of running short, since everybody works to a slightly different tension.
Total length of yarn required:
Natural—55m (60yd)
Red—41m (45yd)
Orange—41m (45yd)
Yellow—28m (30yd)
Green—28m (30yd)
Turquoise—28m (30yd)
Blue—14m (15yd)
Violet—14m (15yd)
Tapestry needle No. 18
Snap fastener
Sewing thread and betweens needle for making up

☐Fold the canvas in half horizontally and vertically to find the centre.

Yarn	Length per skein or ball	Canvas size	Needle size
Anchor Tapisserie wool	13.7m (15yd)	14 threads per 2.5cm (1")	18
DMC Laine Tapisserie	8m (8.8yd)		
Appleton's tapestry wool	13.7m (15yd)		
Appleton's crewel wool (4 strands)	27.5m (30yd)		

☐Following the design layout (fig.1), begin by working the natural yarn in diagonal lines of satin stitch, starting at the pointed end of the bag, which lies about 5cm (2") in from the edge of the canvas.

Work the bottom right to top left diagonals in a continuous line. The opposite diagonals break at the intersections, where a small stitch worked over 2 threads fills in at the point where the diagonals cross.

☐Fill in the colour by following the chart given for the sequence of colours and stitches (fig.2). The filling-in stitches are worked over 2 threads at ends and apex of each colour block.

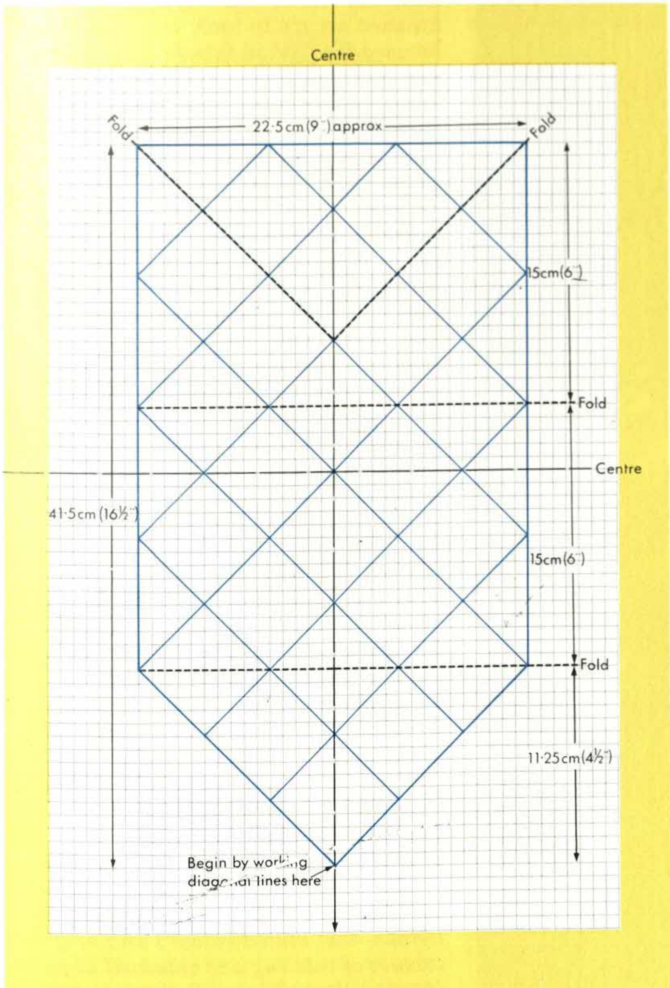
To make up. Pin the canvas to shape on an ironing board and press gently under a damp cloth. Leave to dry thoroughly. Trim the canvas to within 6 threads of the embroidery.

☐Mitre the centre of the bag flap by folding at A and turning under hems B and C (fig.3). Mitre other corners, turn under seam allowance and herringbone the canvas to the back of the embroidery.

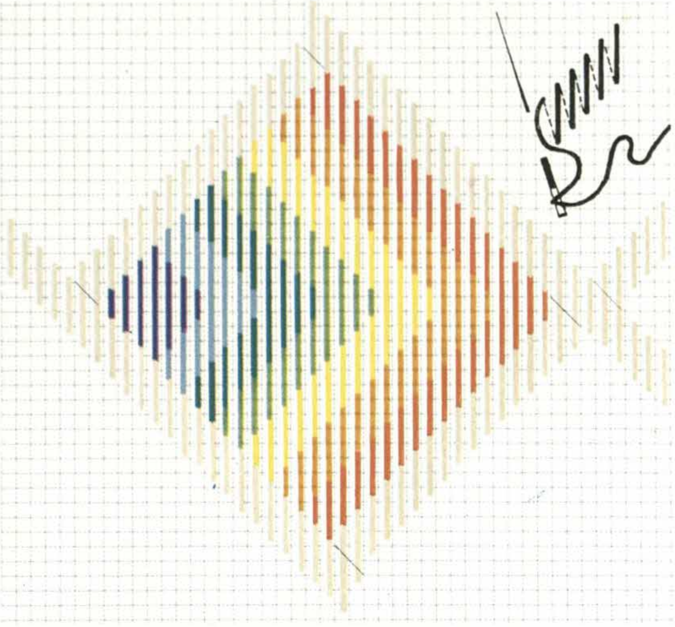
☐Cut the lining to size, allowing an extra 1.5cm (½") all round for turnings. Fold under the seam allowance and tack. Fold the flap lining in the same way as for the mitred canvas.

☐Slip stitch the lining to the embroidery neatly all round the edge, and oversew the sides of the bag firmly.

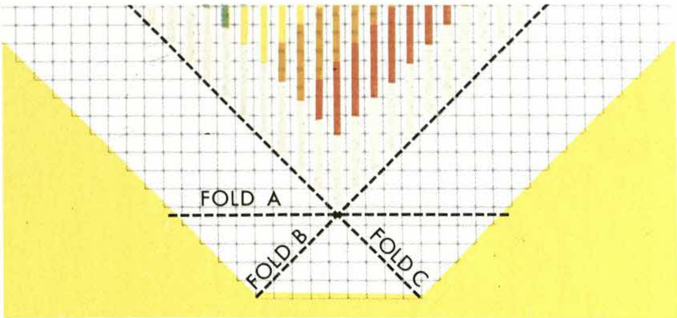
☐Sew the snap fastener to the centre of the flap and on bag to correspond.



1. *Design layout showing the position of the diagonals.*



2. *Colour and stitch chart, with stitch working detail.*



3. *Folding the canvas to mitre the pointed flap.*

Peter Bill

Plaiting with scrap materials

Yarn – weaving 1

Plaits are simple enough for children to make, and may have been the first textile process mastered by primitive man. The ancient Egyptians and Peruvians braided fabrics, some as wide as 46cm (18"). Much later, American settlers in New England found it a thrifty way of recycling worn-out clothes. Plaiting with scrap material is still an economical and rewarding way of creating fabric. It is a means of producing practical and attractive articles from discarded clothing, scraps of yarn, stockings and tights, old blankets, curtains and covers using all these materials as a form of yarn. Knee rugs, floor coverings, table mats and cushion covers are just a few of the items that can be made from the contents of a rag bag.

Construction. A plait is formed by interlacing 3 or more strands of yarn just as hair is plaited. It is the first step on the road to weaving: later chapters go on to finger weaving which is virtually a form of plaiting with numbers of threads. This in turn leads on to building up a warp and weft using rigid heddles and then to working with various types of loom.

Choosing the materials

Bear in mind how you want the finished article to look and what it will be used for. Avoid fabrics that unravel and shed their pile, such as fur fabric, and also scratchy ones that contain metallic threads. Velvets, woollen fabrics and linens tend to fray, so the edges must be turned in carefully to make sure that they don't escape. Felt is useful where a smooth look is wanted as it does not fray but, not being washable, it is unsuitable for items that are likely to get stained. Fluff and dust can be shaken out, or removed by vacuum cleaner. Cotton is suitable for most purposes and is easy and pleasant to plait.

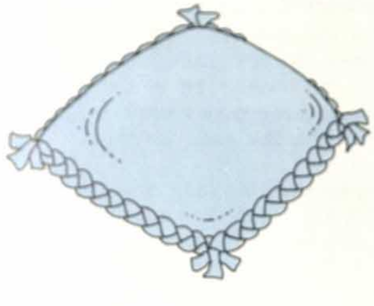
Nylon stockings, tights and jersey fabrics are ideal, especially for making cosy and comfortable rugs. Rugs, of course, take a lot of material, so if you are planning a special colour scheme you will need whole garments. You can, however, quite successfully blend different types of fabric of toning or contrasting colours, as long as the thickness and weight are the same. When making table mats, choose a washable fabric thick enough to take a hot plate.

Colour and design

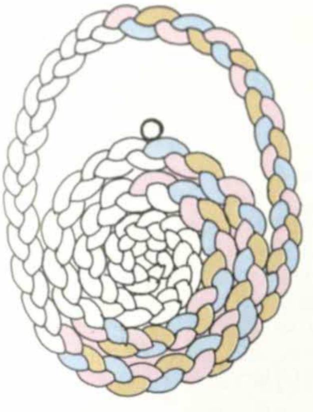
Completely different effects can be achieved depending on the number of

An excellent idea for recycling old nylons—the muted colours and original texture of this rug are obtained by plaiting together old or discarded nylons. Designed by Hilary Dukes

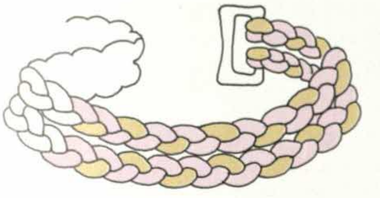
Chris Lewis



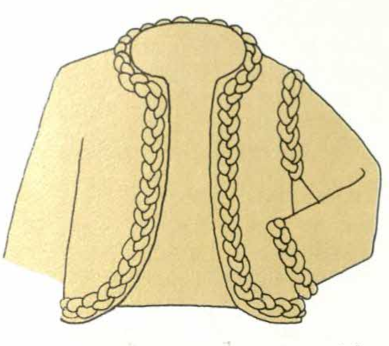
Use plaits to trim a cushion



Make a handbag with two mats.



Join two lengths to make a belt.



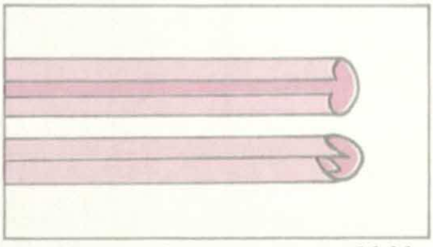
Revamp last year's clothes with beautiful, bold braids

different fabric colours and patterns available. For example, if you have a lot of a particular shade, with just a few scraps of other colours, make a feature of them. Alternatively, scatter them at random throughout the entire piece of work. Or if you have equal amounts of various colours, give strength to each by plaiting a couple of coils in each colour. Again, if there is more of one colour than another, either work a whole band from the smaller amount, or split it up into sections and stagger them to form a definite design. With a variety of different fabrics and colours you can create a handsome and unique article.

Basic working method

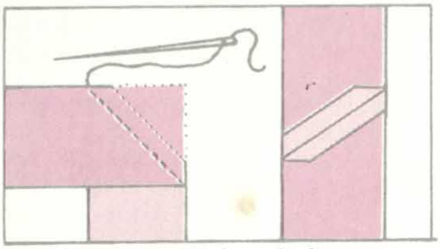
Preparing the strips. Cut or tear fabrics of similar thickness into strips, as long as possible. The width depends on the thickness of the material and what you are making. For rugs, work with 5cm-7.5cm (2"-3") wide strips; for table mats, about 2.5cm-5cm (1"-2"). If they are cut too narrow it is difficult to turn under the edges neatly.

Fold the strips so that the raw edges meet in the middle of the wrong side of the fabric, then bring the folded edges together to make a flat strip with all raw edges enclosed (fig.1). You can do this as you plait, but beginners are advised to press the fabric into its proper folds before plaiting together. Keep the strips folded either by pinning, or by winding them around pieces of cardboard.

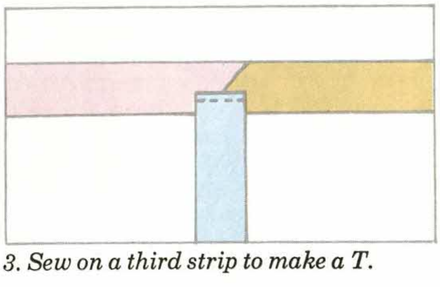


1. Fold edges of strip to centre and fold strip in half, enclosing edges

Plaiting. To begin a 3-strand plait, unfold the raw edges of 2 strips and sew the ends together with a bias seam. Trim off corner (fig.2). Refold with the raw edges of the bias seam hidden inside. Attach the 3rd folded strip with a few stitches, to form a T (fig.3).



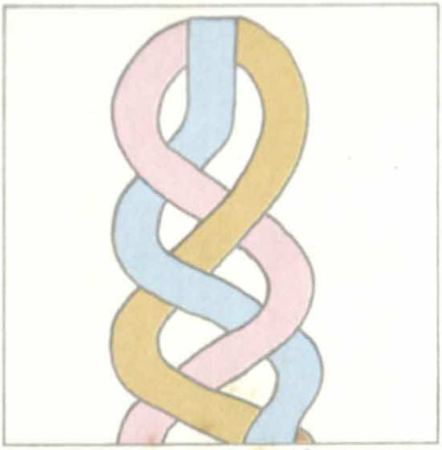
2. Sew strips together on the bias



3. Sew on a third strip to make a T.

It is best to work with all the strips held taut. Secure the T end to a hook or door handle so that both hands are free for plaiting.

Start by bringing the left-hand strip over the centre strip and then the right-hand strip over that (fig. 4). Continue plaiting, making sure that the folded edges are always towards the centre of the plait. Keep the tension even, neither too tight nor too loose, and push the work up against the already plaited end.

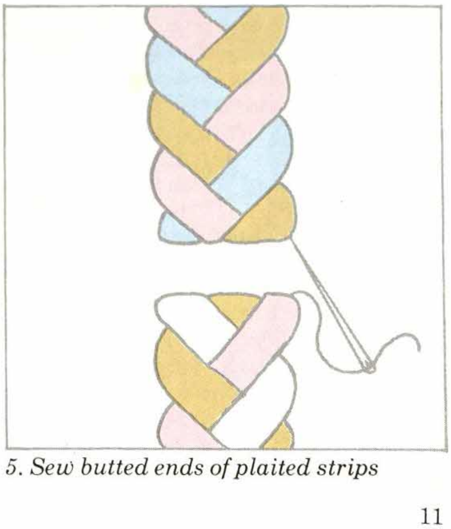


4. Plait the three strips together.

As you finish a strip, join on a new one with a bias seam.

If the lengths to be plaited are very long, keep them wound around a piece of card to prevent them tangling and twisting. Make a slit in the edge of the card to hold the working end; as the work progresses, small amounts can be released as required.

It is an advantage if the strips are uneven in length, so the joins will not be all in one place. Try to plait over a join so that it is hidden in the finished work. When introducing a new colour, secure the completed plait with a safety pin to prevent it unravelling, then turn in the ends of both the new and old plaits and sew them together edge to edge (fig.5). Make sure you keep the butted ends flat when sewing together.

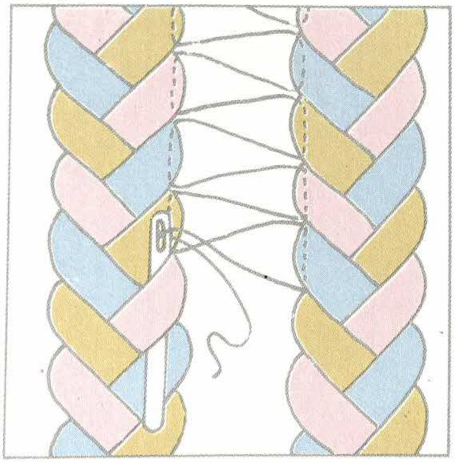


5. Sew butted ends of plaited strips

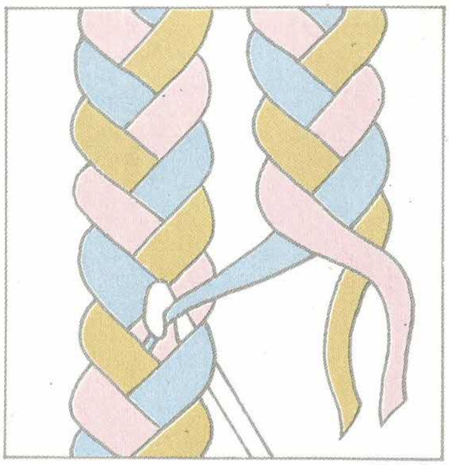
Pauline Rosenthal

Make a charming and colourful set of table mats from scraps of toning fabrics. You can use any pieces of material that you have around the house that go well together. Choose complementary designs and colours.

Making up. As soon as you have plaited about 60cm-90cm (2′-3′), begin sewing together. Lacing is the easiest and strongest method of connecting plaits. Thread a blunt tapestry needle or bodkin (flat needle used for threading elastic) with either carpet thread or strong waxed cotton. Draw it through the loop of one plait, then thread through the corresponding loop of the plait opposite (fig.6).



6. Lace coils together with a bodkin.



7. Weave away ends into last coil.

When making a circular rug, wind the plait round and round, keeping it flat. This requires a little practice; if wound too tightly it will buckle, but it must not be too loose or the work will look rough and untidy. Ease in the fullness on the curves to keep the work flat.

When lacing together, it may be necessary to pass the needle through one loop on the inner plait and through two on the outer one.

To make an oval rug, begin with a long plait folded in half and laced together to give a long, shaped centre. Wind round it, easing in the fullness where necessary.

Finishing. As you approach the end of the rug, start to taper the strips (fig.7). This will diminish the size of the plait so that it will gradually blend into the last plaited row of the rug. Weave the remaining ends of the plait into the outer ring of the work—you may find a crochet hook helpful here. Slipstitch the ends invisibly to secure in place.

Backing. You may wish to line, or back the finished work. Choose a non-slip fabric if backing a rug or table mat. Place the finished article flat on the lining and cut to shape, allowing 1.5cm-2cm (½″-¾″) all round for turnings. Turn in the edges of the lining and slipstitch to the back of the work.

Round nylon rug

Most women get through dozens of pairs of stockings or tights every year. Instead of throwing them away once they are ruined, keep them—and ask all your friends to do so as well—then make them up into a tough, smart rug for the kitchen or bathroom.

Tights are better to use than stockings as they are longer and therefore need fewer joins. Discard any that are very badly damaged as the runs will show in the finished rug.

To make a rug 90cm (3′) in diameter:

You will need:

About 150 prs of tights or stockings
Nylon sewing thread
Sewing needle and bodkin

☐Cut off and discard feet and reinforced tops from tights and stockings.

☐If the nylons are all of a similar colour, bleach some of the legs in a weak solution of ordinary household bleach or proprietary nylon bleach. Dye others dark brown.

☐Sew the legs into strips, then plait them, taking care to mix the various shades effectively. Try to work 2 or 3 rounds that are predominantly pale and to finish with 2 or 3 rounds that are predominantly dark.

☐Finish the rug in the usual way.

Round table mats

Worn or out-of-date cotton clothes are ideal for making table mats.

To make a set of 4 mats 40cm (16″) in diameter:

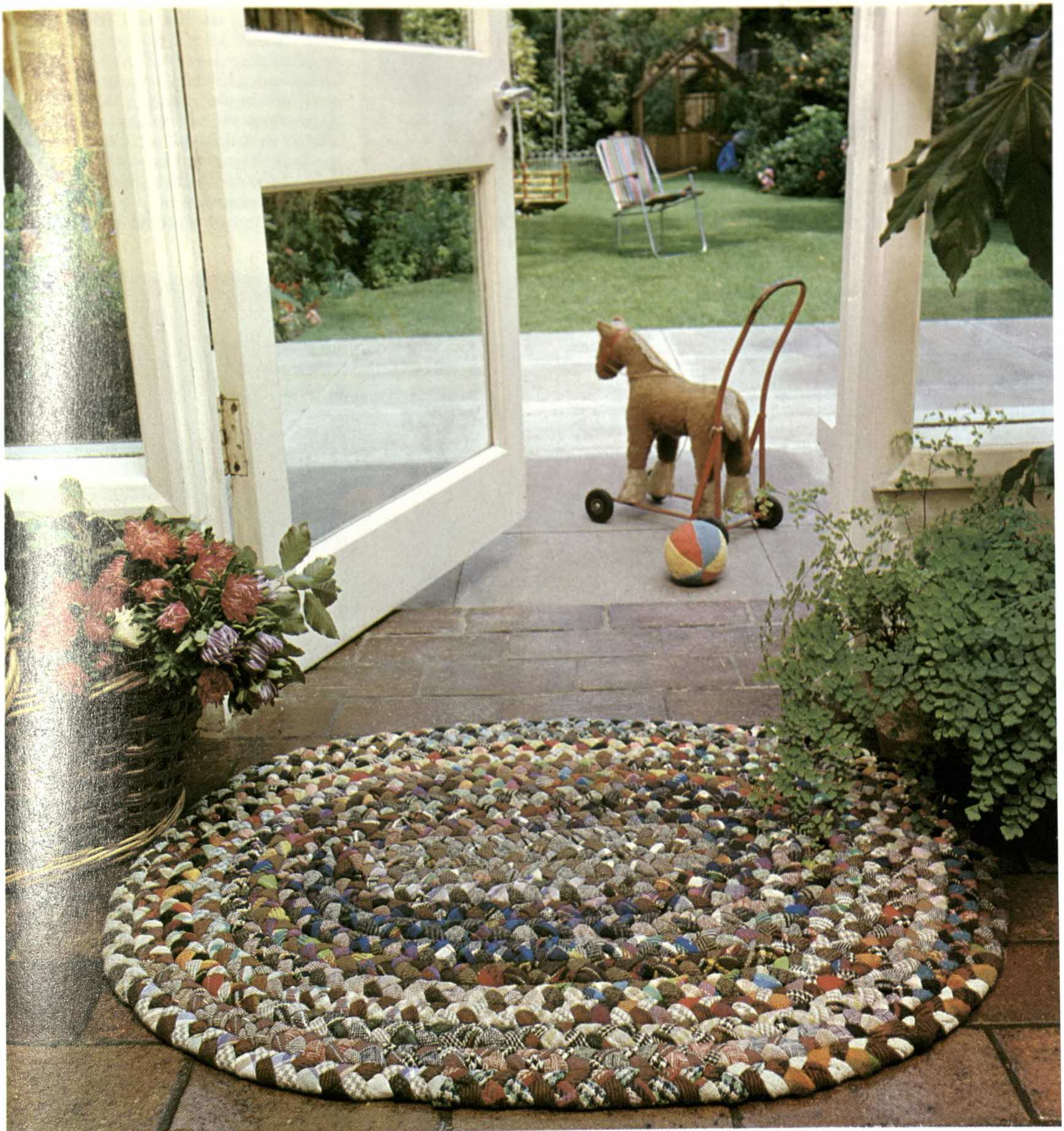
You will need:

A total of 3m (3yd) of cotton fabric 90cm (36″) wide—a set of 4 mats as shown uses about 1m (1yd) each of red, pink and orange sprigged cotton
Cotton thread
Sewing needle and bodkin

☐Cut each colourway into strips 2.5cm (1″) wide and fold.

☐Divide the colours equally into 4 mixed piles.

☐Working with one pile, start by plaiting 2 strands of one colour to emphasize it, then mix all the colours, then make another colour predominate. This will create strong, interesting



This attractive, cosy rag rug is made from long tweedy strips, plaited together in subtle combinations and coiled into an oval

bands of colour in the completed mat.

☐Finish in the usual way.

☐Make up the other 3 mats in the same way, but do not attempt to make the varying bands of colour identical in each mat. Part of their charm is that each has its own unique qualities.

Oval tweed rug

A warm oval rug of this type would look good in front of the fire, by the bed or inside the front door.

You may be able to get hold of some bags of scraps from a garment manufacturer—otherwise it's worth looking through shapeless, unloved tweed and woollen clothes at second-hand sales for rock-bottom bargains.

To make this oval, multi-coloured rug 90cm x 60cm (3′ x 2′):

You will need:

Tweed and woollen scraps adding up to about 7m (8yd) x 90cm (36″).

Thread, sewing needle and bodkin

☐Cut fabric into strips 7.5cm (3″) wide.

☐Turn under the edges and fold.

☐Join and plait the strips. If the colours are predominantly muted, with only the occasional bright touch, try to space out the bright pieces. Otherwise, work all the colourful pieces together to make a band a little way in from the edge.

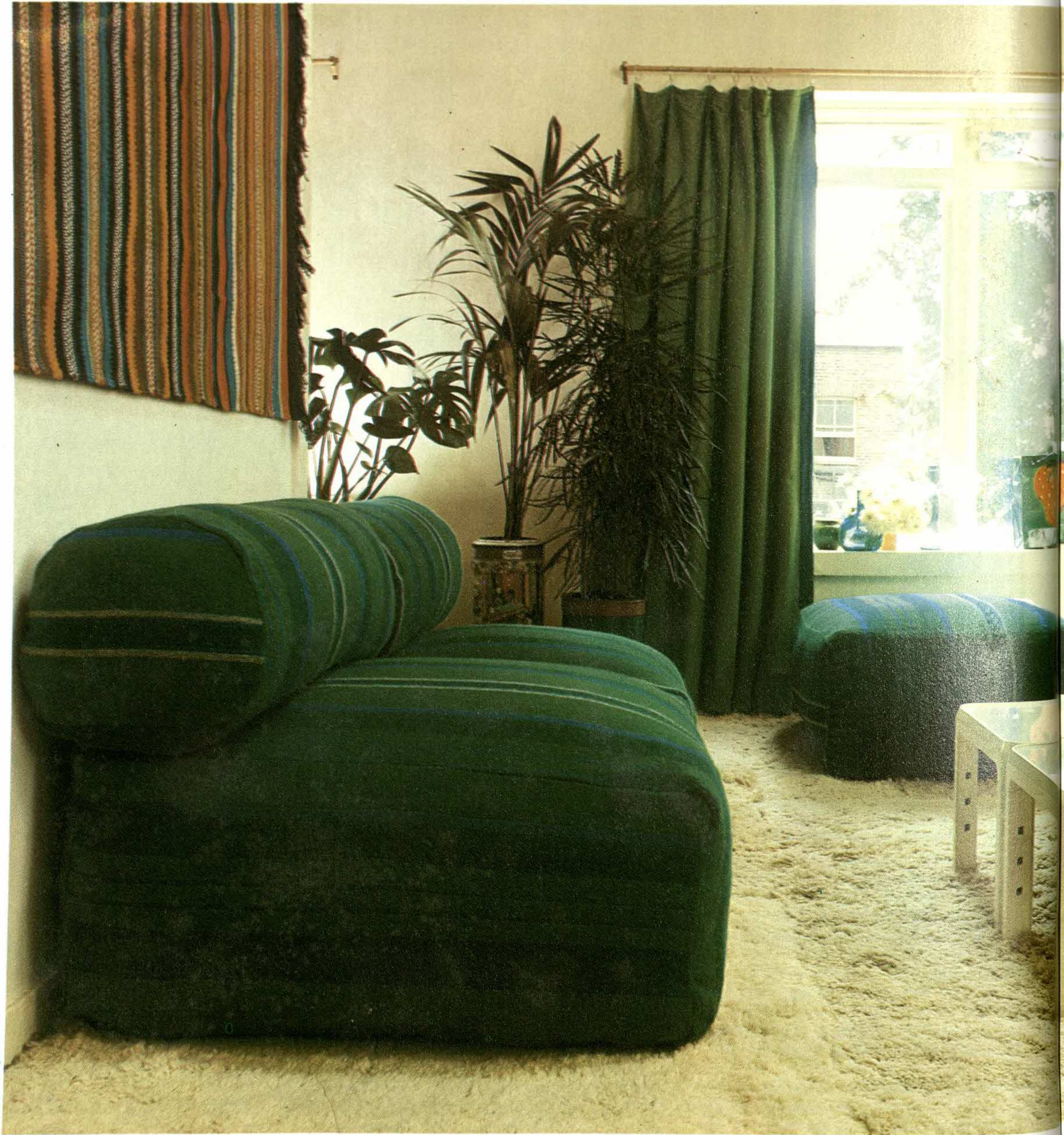
☐Make the first plaited length 30cm (12″) long, before coiling and sewing it up into an oval.

Pattern variations

You can go on to develop intricate rug patterns on the lines of decorative rush matting. For example, work an oval centre, surround it with round panels sewn on firmly, then sew 2 or 3 rows of plaiting all round the outside.

Sew a simple seating system

Comfortable seating can be an expensive item of furnishing, but an encouraging aspect of modern seating is the way in which shapes have been getting simpler, less formally tailored, softer and more rounded—altogether easier to translate into do-it-yourself designs. Here is one of the easiest and most successful ideas—a bolster back cushion which props against the wall, on top of a plump base cushion.



It's specially designed to cut down the number of seams to a minimum.

The dimensions of this type of seating are the key to determining looks and comfort. Make sure that the base cushion is longer from front to back than it is wide or it will look stubby when the bolster is in place. And check that the height of the bolster doesn't exceed that of the base cushion or the chair will look top heavy.

Suitable cover fabrics. Virtually any fabric recommended for upholstery and loose covers will do, but avoid very thick, heavy cloths which are difficult to work with and cause congestion at the corners. Also avoid velvet or any fabric with a pile which is likely to get crushed when in constant use. Even synthetic, furry fabrics tend eventually to lose their texture.

An all-wool, reversible fabric with a woven stripe has several advantages. Being reversible, it gives you a chance to enjoy a seasonal change of colour schemes—like blue for winter and green for summer—and because it is woven in stripes (not printed) it makes cutting a straight seam extremely easy, an important consideration when making large cushions.

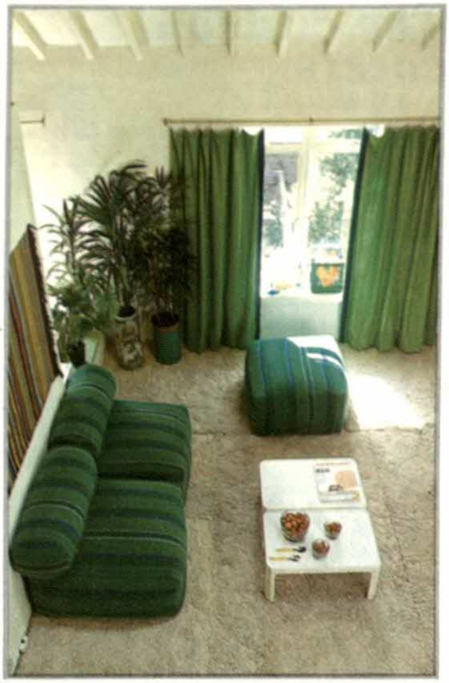
Any leftover strips of fabric can be used to make an attractive border for curtains.

The inner cushions consist of non-removable calico covers filled with a mixture of crumbled foam and polystyrene pellets. Cut out and make calico covers following the instructions given below for detachable covers, but cut them about 2.5cm (1″) larger all round. The professional way to keep cushions looking trim and well filled is to make inner cushions slightly larger than the finished covers.

When stitching the calico covers, use flat fell seams (see sewing know-how) and leave an opening in each, large enough to insert the filling.

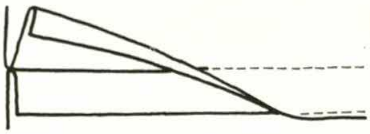
Filling the cushions. A good mixture is 50% crumbled foam and 50% polystyrene pellets. When used on their own, crumbled foam mats into nasty chunks and polystyrene pellets are hard and uncomfortable—but a mixture of both makes a good texture. The polystyrene pellets constantly work through the foam to prevent it matting, so you need only mix them roughly when filling. When feeding in the crumbled foam, leave it in the plastic bag until right inside the calico cover, to prevent it spilling. Polystyrene pellets (sold in sacks), can be tricky to manipulate until you know how. Quite simply, you need someone to hold the cover open while you pour in the pellets —either from a cardboard box with a hole cut out of one corner, or through a large funnel.

To fill one bolster and one base seat cushion you will need a total of 2.25kg (5lb) of crumbled foam and 2.25kg (5lb) of polystyrene pellets. When the cushions are full, sew up the openings firmly using thick cotton thread.

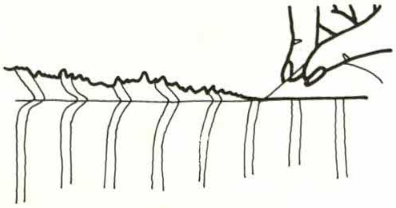


One of the easiest and most successful types of cushion seating to make yourself —a bolster back cushion which props against the wall on top of a square base cushion. This design cuts seaming to a minimum

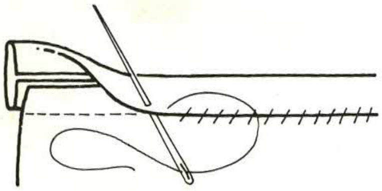
Basic sewing know-how



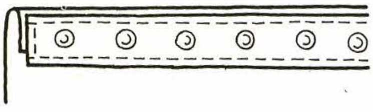
Flat fell seam: stitch seam in normal way and trim one seam allowance to 7mm (¼″). Press seam to one side with wider allowance on top. Turn under edge of upper seam so it is level with trimmed seam. Pin in place and stitch close to folded edge



Finding the straight of grain by pulling a crosswise thread



Attaching bias binding or tape



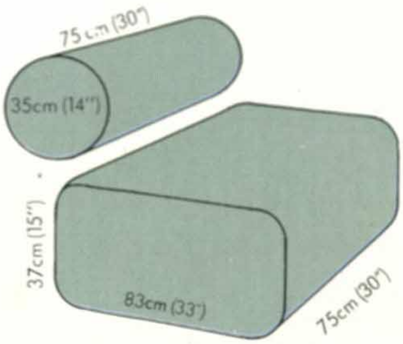
Attaching snap fastener tape

Victoria Drew

The cushion covers

Key to pattern pieces

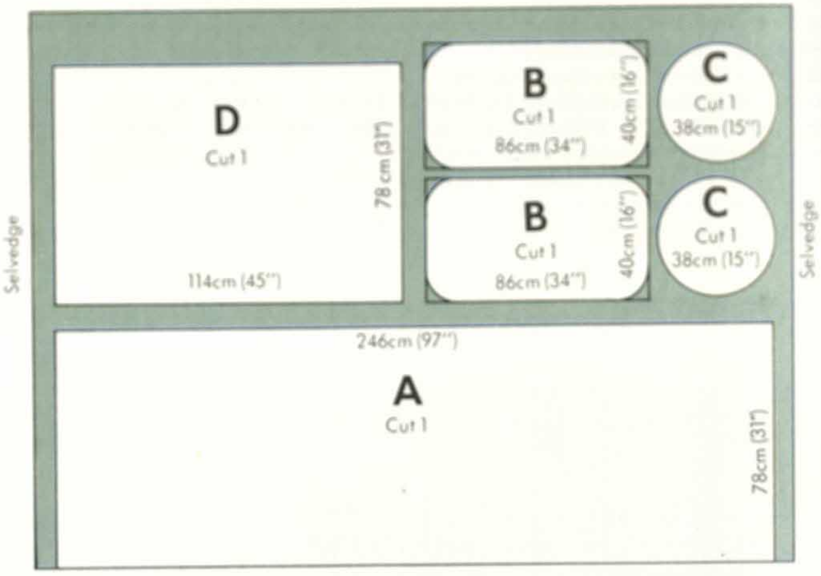
A = base seat wrap-around
B = base seat end piece
C = bolster end piece
D = bolster wrap-around



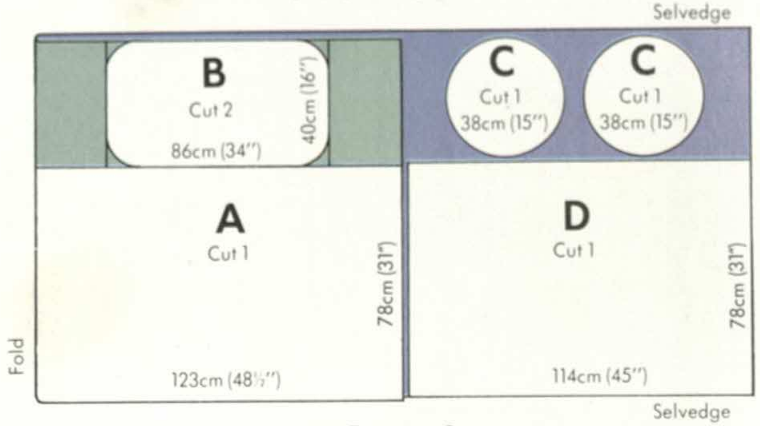
Large size seating

To make a seat 83cm x 75cm x 37cm (33″ x 30″ x 15″) and a bolster 75cm x 35cm (30″ x 14″).

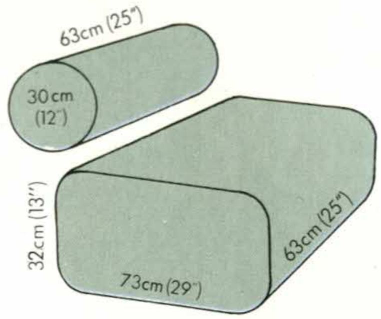
You will need:
Length of fabric as given for layout 1 or 2
Matching thread
Tape of large, ready-fixed upholstery poppers, 1.75m (5′9″) long
Bias binding or tape 2.5cm (1″) wide and 7.3m (8yd) long



Layout 1
For fabric 254cm (100″) wide you will need 1.7m (1⅞yd)



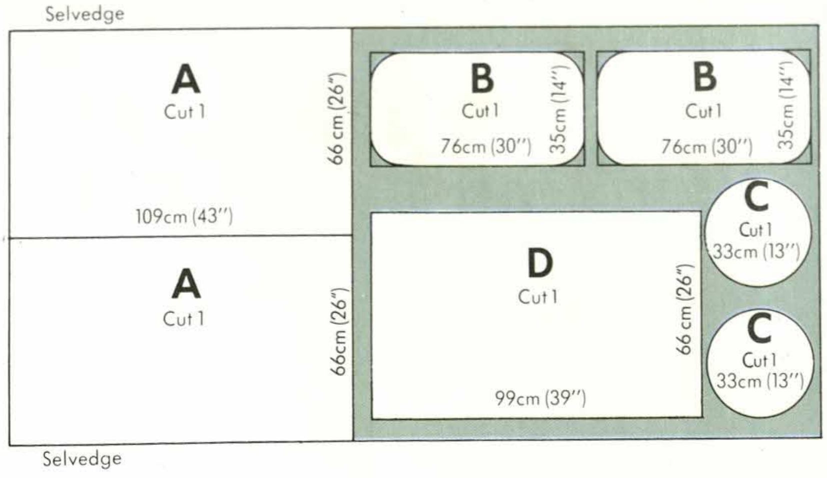
Layout 2
For fabric 119cm (47″) wide you will need 3.7m (4yd)



Smaller size seating

To make a seat 73cm x 63cm x 32cm (29″ x 25″ x 13″) and a bolster 63cm x 30cm (26″ x 12″)

You will need:
Length of fabric as given for Layout 3
Matching thread
Tape of large, ready-fixed upholstery poppers, 1.5m (5′) long
Bias binding or tape 2.5cm (1″) wide and 6.5m (7yd) long



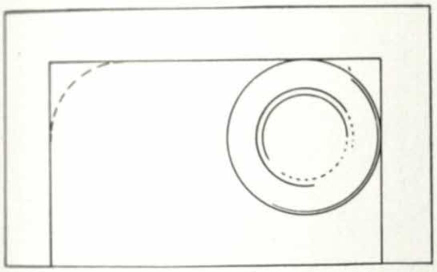
Layout 3
For fabric 132cm (52″) wide you will need 2.7m (3⅛yd)

To make up

Depending on your fabric width, follow the relevant cutting layout. These allow for 1.5cm (½") seams.

If you use a woven, striped fabric, make sure the stripes lie straight. Otherwise, make sure your selvedges are straight. It is important to follow the layouts so that the pattern on the bolster and the seat run the same way and so that both side panels of the seat are identical.

The seat cushion and bolster can each be made out of a single, wrap-around piece of cloth, with two end pieces. Note: the smaller cushion (using 137cm (52") cloth) needs one extra seam in place of fold line X shown in fig. 1. The end pieces are rectangular with rounded corners for the seat cushion, and circular for the bolsters. To cut the rounded corners, use a pudding plate to give a curve (fig.2).



2. Use a pudding plate for corners

For a reminder of basic sewing techniques, see previous page.

To make up the seat cushion cover

☐Assemble pieces A and B as in fig.1, with right sides facing, and pin.

☐Stitch together with 1.5cm (½") seams. Leave sides open where indicated by dotted lines in fig.1 and oversew or zigzag stitch the raw edges where popper tape will be attached.

☐If the cloth is reversible bind the edges with contrast bias binding or tape to give a piped effect to one side of the cushion covers and a flat finish to the other. If the cloth is not reversible, use plain bias binding or tape.

☐Turn under 1.5cm (½") on the openings and attach the tape of poppers along the dotted lines (fig.1).

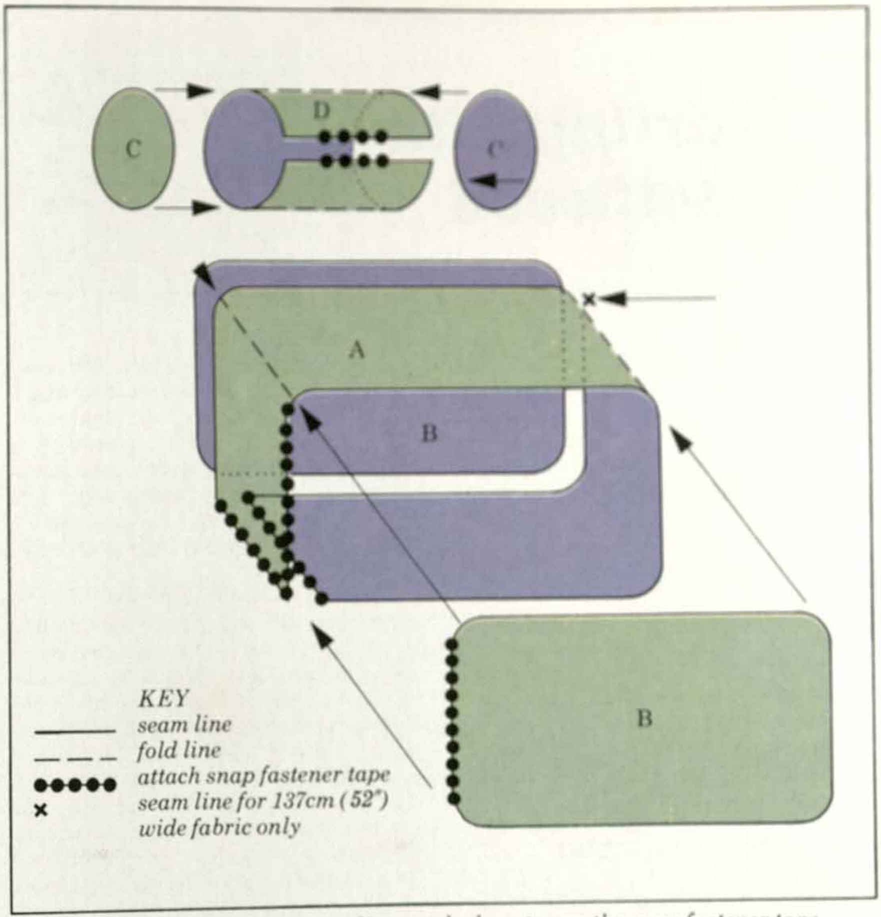
To make the bolster cushion cover

☐Cut a paper template for the end pieces by drawing a circle with a radius of 19cm (7½") or 16.5cm (6½") for smaller version, and cut (see layouts).

☐Prepare the edges of the bolster ends by making a row of small running stitches all round them and ease into the bolster. Pin and tack before you stitch, easing in the same way you would a sleeve into an armhole.

☐Stitch bolster, leaving a 46cm (18") opening for the popper tape (fig.1).

☐Bind seams as for cushion.



C
D
C
A
B
B
KEY
seam line
fold line
attach snap fastener tape
× seam line for 137cm (52") wide fabric only

Trevor Lawrence

1. Assembly detail showing seam lines and where to sew the snap fastener tape.

Reversible covers enable you to enjoy a seasonal change of colour scheme.

Starting with softwood

Carpentry is as easy to learn as cooking or dressmaking. It's surprising how quickly the few basic techniques can be mastered, and how satisfying and economical it is to build even the simplest of objects. It's really a matter of organizing the tools and materials, then following the directions step by step, carefully and patiently.

Jargon words like rabbet plane, spoke shave or ripsaw make woodwork sound much more difficult than it really is. These chapters set out to avoid the inhibiting language and introduce useful techniques clearly and simply.

The pot stand in this chapter involves sawing, cutting and sanding. The only tools you need are a saw, a carpenter's square, steel tape and a chisel.

Softwoods and hardwoods

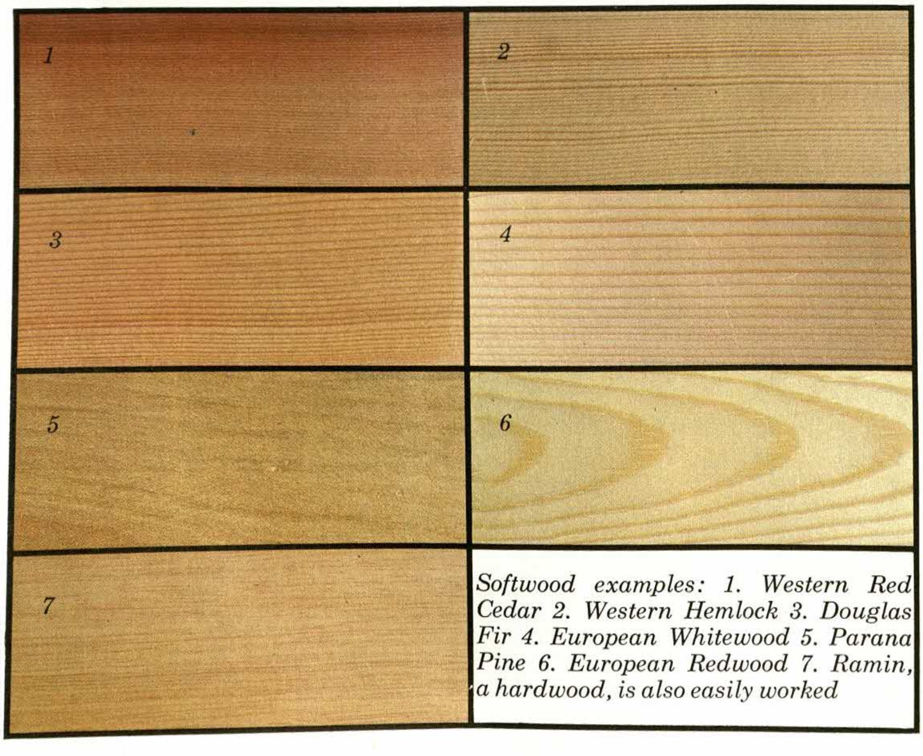
Wood is made up of long tubular cells like a bundle of drinking straws glued together. This structure makes wood much stronger in one direction than the other and it's much easier to cut along the cells or grain (ie to rip) than it is to cut across them (ie to cross-cut).

All pine or cone-bearing trees with needle pointed leaves, usually evergreens, are softwoods, while all broad-leaved trees are classed as hardwood. Softwoods include pine, fir, redwood, spruce and many others. Hardwoods, include mahogany, teak, oak, birch and, surprisingly, balsa-wood. For most projects softwoods are best—being cheaper and easier to work with.

Selecting standard sizes

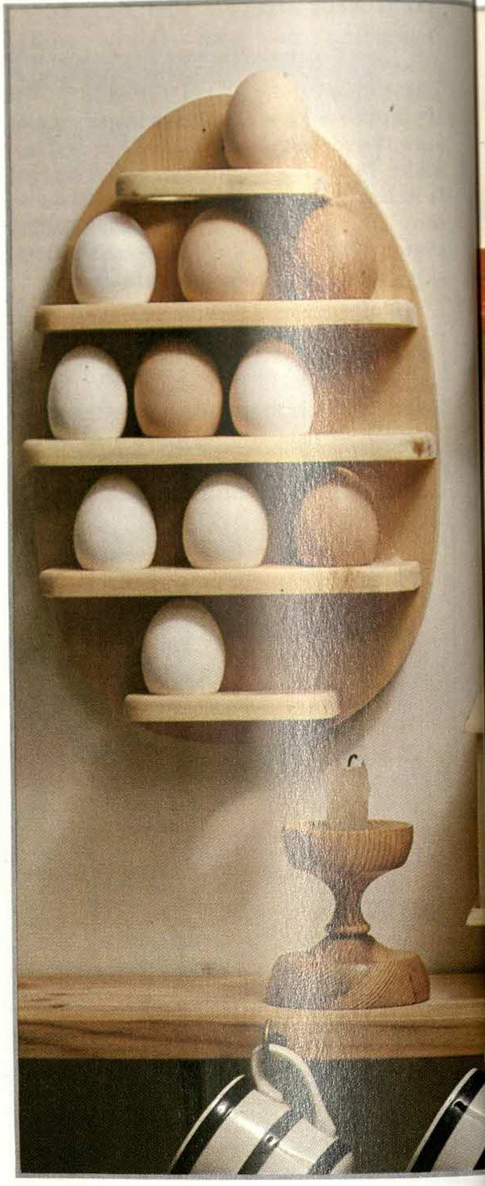
Most timber merchants or lumber yards hold a large selection of stock sizes. These are usually referred to by their sectional sizes: ie the width by the thickness. For example, you would ask for a 100mm x 50mm (4″ x 2″) piece of pine, 2m (6′6″) long. In these chapters, the millimetres always refer to the sectional size and the centimetres or metres to the length.

The standard sizes refer to sawn wood so when buying prepared (ie planed) wood, the actual size will be fractionally smaller. The size of prepared wood can vary slightly from batch to batch, so always buy enough to complete a project. Select clean, straight pieces and try to look through the stock for those without knots, splits, or discolouration. For most projects any of the softwoods will do.



Softwood examples: 1. Western Red Cedar 2. Western Hemlock 3. Douglas Fir 4. European Whitewood 5. Parana Pine 6. European Redwood 7. Ramin, a hardwood, is also easily worked

Steve Bicknell



Tools

There is a great variety of special-purpose tools available. Many of these are for convenience only and most work can be done perfectly well using a minimum number of hand tools. Power tools are quicker to use, but unnecessary for basic projects.

Cutting tools must have a keen edge and are therefore potentially dangerous. Never work on an uneven or unsteady surface: if you do not have a work bench, use a bench hook on the kitchen table.

Saw. There are many sizes and types of hand-saw. Almost any saw will do, but a small, light panel saw or a compass saw with interchangeable blades are both easy to handle and suitable for all small projects.

Carpenter's square. This is used to make guide lines for sawing and chiselling etc. Since it forms a rigid 90° angle its primary purpose is to make lines perpendicular to the edge of the timber for cross-cutting. Use a sharp pencil to mark the line and if you have

Jerry Tubby

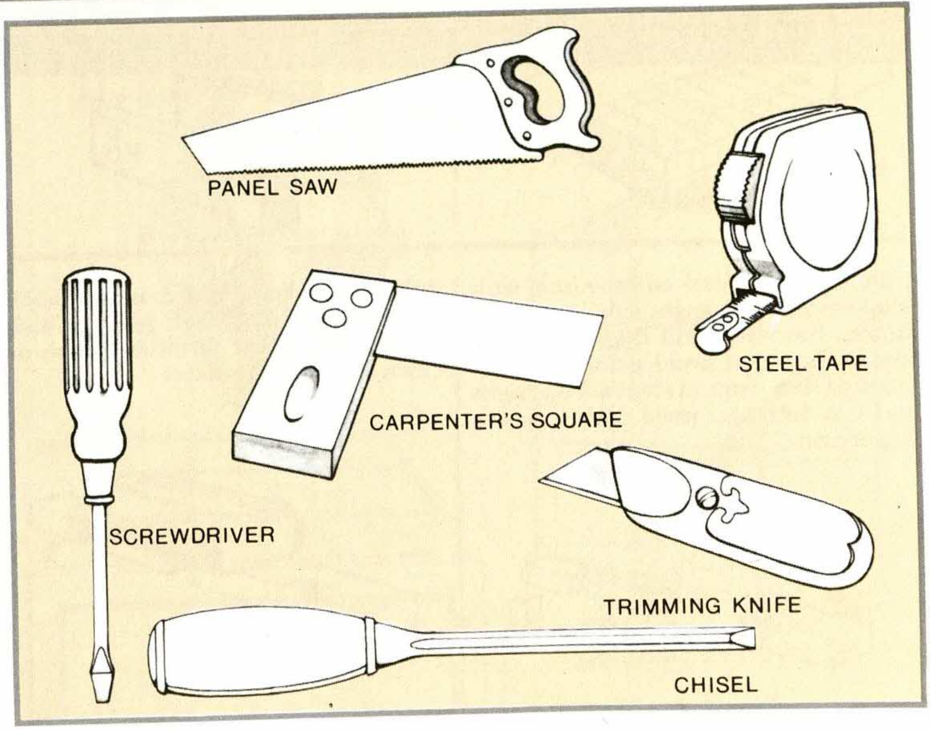
All these articles are made from softwoods and illustrate some of the techniques used in woodwork. For example, the egg rack involves sawing with a coping saw and drilling; the candlestick is turned on a lathe; the salad servers are whittled. The wood can be finished in a number of ways, such as waxing, oiling and by the application of polyurethane

a trimming knife you can use it to score the wood; it severs the fibres and gives a cleaner cut.

Steel tape. A 3m (10′) retractable tape is recommended.

Chisel. A 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) is best for making this pot stand.

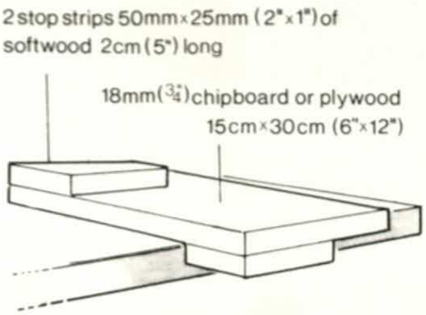
You cannot do without the saw, but at a pinch you could do without the carpenter's square and use a ruler for measuring instead of a steel rule. You can use a screwdriver instead of the chisel, but you may ruin a good screwdriver and you will make a neater cut with a chisel.

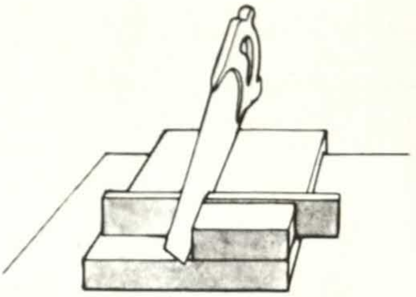


Bob Harvey

To make a bench hook

Spread an even layer of wood glue on the face of one strip. Lay this in position and rub to and fro across the chipboard. As air is squeezed from the joint, the glue forms a strong bond. Repeat for the second side and leave overnight to dry.


2 stop strips 50mm×25mm (2"×1") of softwood 2cm (5") long
18mm(¾) chipboard or plywood 15cm×30cm (6"×12")



To make the pot stand

This easy-to-make pot stand can be used to protect the table or sideboard from hot casseroles or teapots.

For a pot stand 19cm x 19cm (8″ x 8″):

You will need:

A piece of softwood 25mm x 12.5mm (1″ x ½″), 2m (6′6″) long (allowing for some spare pieces)

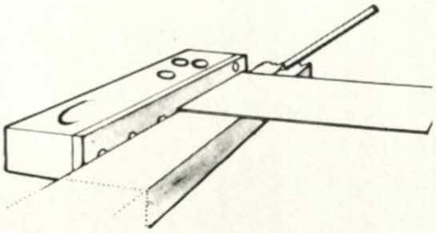
Fine glass paper

Optional—9 juniper discs from hobby shops, or slices of ramin dowel, 3cm (1½″) diameter; ask a timber merchant to cut them about 5mm (¼″) thick

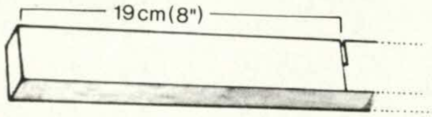
Wood glue

Tools: saw, steel tape, carpenter's square, chisel and trimming knife.

1. To 'square off' the wood mark a line about 25mm (1″) from the end with the carpenter's square. Place saw on edge of wood and draw it towards you to start the cut. Continue sawing, holding the saw vertically and using even, relaxed strokes.



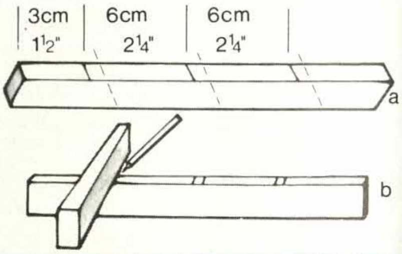
2. Measure off 19cm (8″) from the squared off end and mark a line across. Make sure to saw on the outside of this line so the piece will be the full 19cm (8″) long—the saw cut is about 2mm (1/10″) wide.



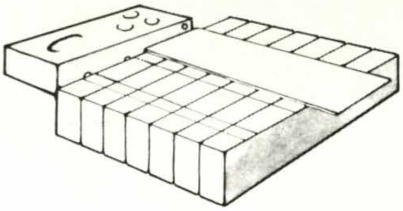
3. Cut 7 pieces each 19cm (8″) long (allowing one spare). On one piece:-

a) Mark off lengths shown along one 12.5mm (½″) edge (using the square).

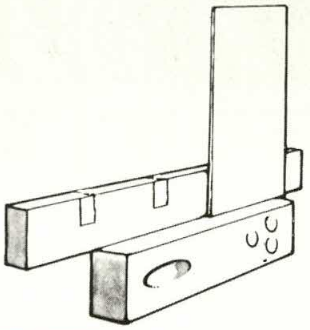
b) Align one of the other pieces along each of these lines and mark along the other side.



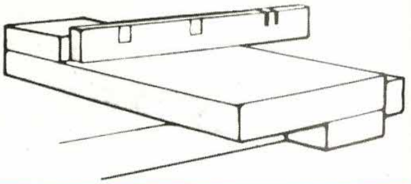
4. Holding all the pieces together with ends level, use the square to continue the lines across the other 6 pieces.



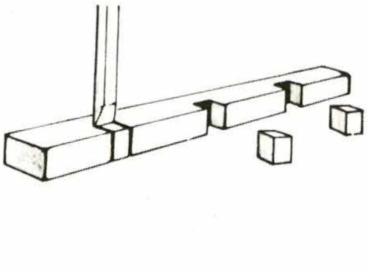
5. Mark 12.5mm (½″) down both sides of each piece using a trimming knife. This prepares for a clean cut at stage 6.



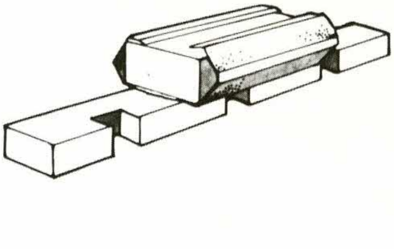
6. On all pieces make 6 cuts on the waste side or inside of each line, so the notch will be the exact width for the cross piece to fit tightly. (Cutting on the line would make notch about 2mm (1/10″) too big.) First draw in the base lines of notches.



7. Put edge of chisel on base line, with sloping face on waste side, and push down. The waste will break off along the grain so, to avoid going over the marked line, work in stages. You might have to turn the wood over to get a square cut.

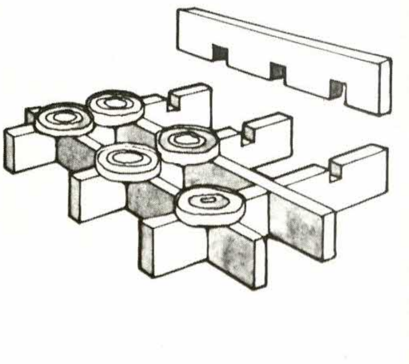


8. Wrap the glass paper around a block of wood and sand each piece. Finish by applying either furniture polish or clear, matt polyurethane.



9. Slot the sections together.

10. Glue dowel discs (or juniper) as an alternative finish.



Bob Harvey

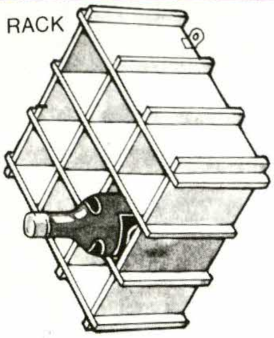
Alasdair Ogilvie

The number of cross sections can be increased to adapt the basic principle to other larger projects

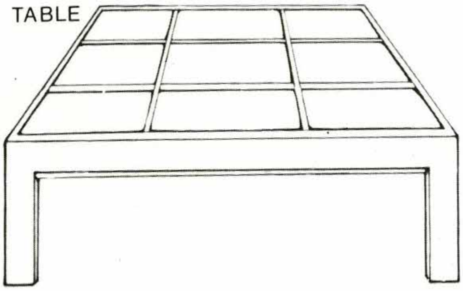
Other projects using this technique

Using this simple joinery technique you can make a variety of interesting and useful projects. It is just a matter of a little practice to acquire confidence. Each time the technique is repeated it will be that much easier and faster.

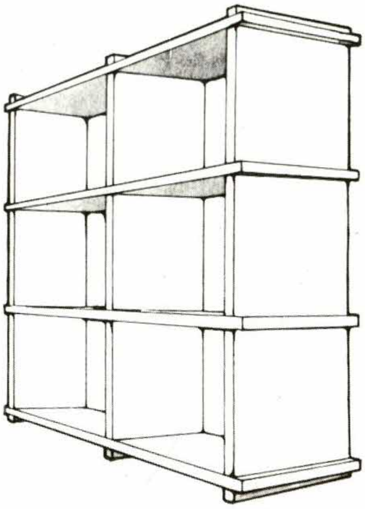
The most important thing to remember when planning a project is to sit down with pencil and paper and draw the object and each piece individually. Indicate dimensions and make notes on how much timber and which tools are necessary. Think out the project step by step, just as you followed each step for the pot stand. This may take a little time but it's well worth it for, when it comes to the actual cutting, most of the planning will have already been worked out.



WINE RACK



TABLE



SHELVING SYSTEMS

How to make a mural with arcs

Colour – paint 1

The first steps in using wall paints creatively are surprisingly easy and very effective. And on top of that, murals are great fun to paint. With non-drip paints it's easy to get a good finish, and with various cunning schemes you can achieve sophisticated and assured designs which don't require any freehand drawing ability. Look carefully at this mural and you will see that it is entirely built up of arcs, circles and straight lines. If the colours are not to your liking then imagine, for example, how cool it would look in shades of beige, cream and white (fig.2). And the arcs and circles system can be applied to all sorts of design ideas, some of which are developed below.

Basic drawing techniques

Arcs. To draw an arc larger than a pair of compasses can produce, tie a long piece of string to a pencil (fig.1); make a groove as close as possible to the sharpened end – this will prevent the string from slipping. Stab a drawing pin or tack through the string to give the radius required. If you're right handed, use your left thumb to hold the drawing pin where you want the centre of the circle, and draw your arc or circle. For very large arcs, ask a friend to hold the drawing pin while you draw the arcs.

Small circles. Small motifs, like flowers, can be made by clustering 4 or 5 circles drawn around drinking glasses and cups. For larger motifs, use various sizes of plates or dishes, even flower pots.

Ellipses. Draw shapes like rabbits' ears and leaves with 2 arcs, each drawn round a plate (fig.3).

Ovals. Use a dinner plate to draw 2 circles just touching each other. With a ruler, draw 2 lines at a tangent to the tops and bottoms of the circles.

This is a simple system for drawing shapes like sheep's bodies. Add a head drawn from a side plate, stick legs, and a scalloped line round the body for a woolly effect (fig.4).

Composite shapes. To make shapes like clouds and foliage, take a sheet of newspaper, brown wrapping paper or cardboard and use dinner plates to construct intersecting arcs to make up an irregular mass. When it looks satisfactory, cut all round the outside and use this as a template to draw the shape on the mural (fig.5). To use the template but vary the effect, turn it over and reverse the pattern.

To prepare the wall. Wipe down and apply an undercoat of white emulsion (water-based paint). If the area you want to paint is square, divide the side and ceiling edges into 4 equal sections. Ask a friend to stand on a chair and hold a long piece of string weighted with a heavy object from each marked point. Lightly pencil in the lines from ceiling to floor. Mark off these vertical lines into 4 equal sections and draw a line across with a straight edge. If the wall is wider than it is high, start from the extreme left or right, mark off a square based on floor to ceiling height, and divide as before. Extend the grid to fill the rest of the wall.

Suitable paints. Quick-drying paint like emulsion is best, preferably the non-drip variety.

To make the Springtime mural

The mural shown is painted on a wall 2.4m (8′) square. The design works on any square area; simply adjust the scale as required.

You will need:

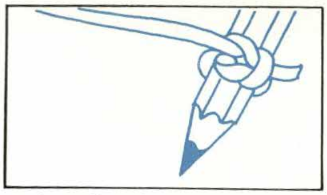
White emulsion for undercoat
One litre (1qt) sky blue emulsion; small amounts of mauve, candy pink, orange, yellow, light green, mid-green
Brushes in various sizes

☐Prepare wall.

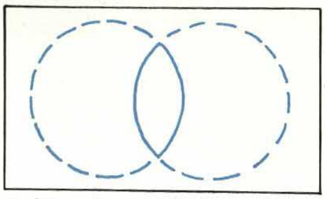
☐Mark off into 16 squares and label as shown. Extend grid for oblong wall.

☐Right hill: with centre 1D and radius 1D-1B, draw arc from 1B to line E. Left hill: with centre 1A and radius 1A-3A, make arc from 3A to meet right hill. Centre hill: with centre 1C and radius 1C-3C, draw arc to intersect left and right hills.

☐Rainbow: with centre at intersection



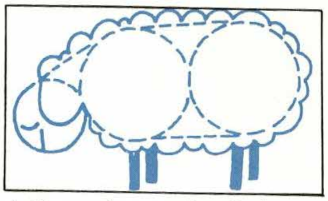
1. *Attach string to pencil.*



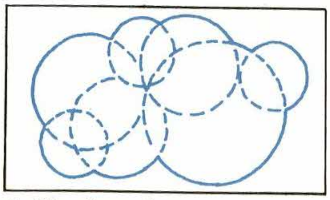
3. *Drawing rabbit's ears.*

2. *Cool beige colour scheme.*

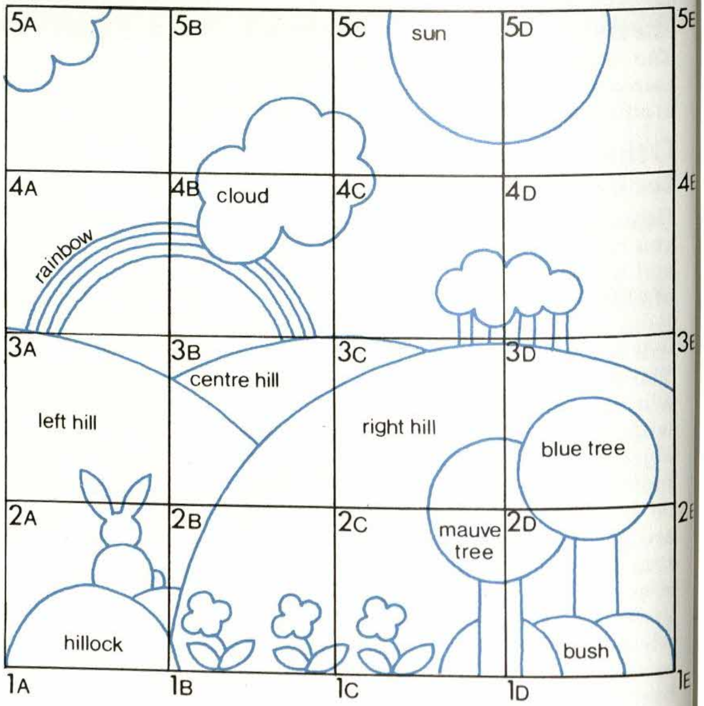
Victoria Drew

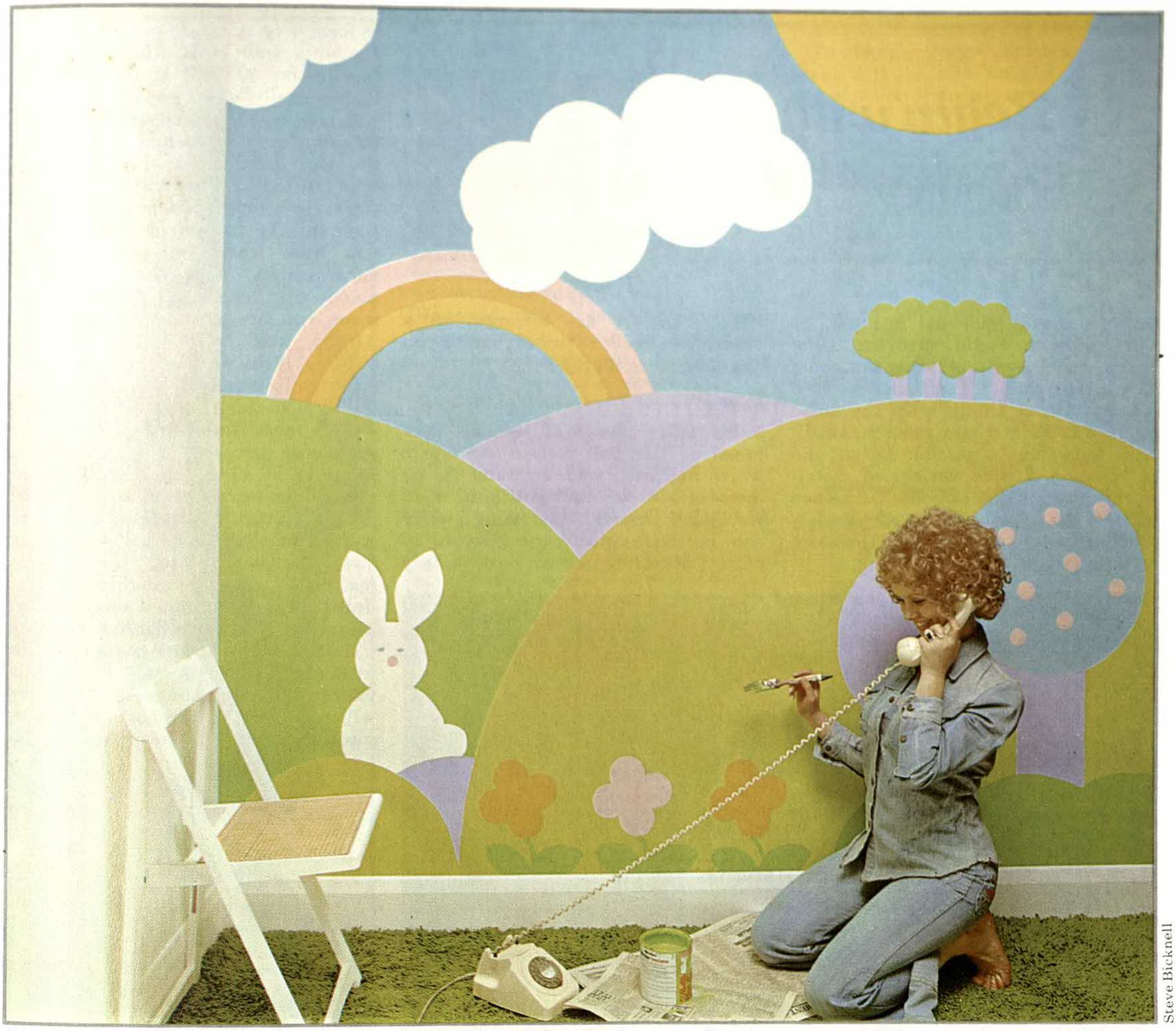


4. *Draw sheep using 2 plates.*



5. *Clouds and trees composite.*





Steve Bicknell

Springtime mural in sunshine colours to liven up dull or plain walls, designed by Juliet Glynn-Smith.
Left: square off the wall and draw in the shapes for the mural. For an oblong wall extend the hills and the cloud or repeat with a mirror image.

of left and centre hill, and radius $\frac{2}{3}$ of distance from drawing pin to 3A, draw arc. With same centre make 3 more arcs about 8cm (3″) apart.

☐Blue tree: to find the centre of the blue tree; with centre 2D and radius just over $\frac{1}{2}$ of 2D-2E, draw an arc. Repeat with centre 2E, and intersect first arc. This intersection is the centre point of the blue tree. With this centre and radius just short of line E, draw a complete circle.

☐Mauve tree: with centre 2D and same radius as blue tree, draw an arc. For trunks, make bands with straight edge.

☐Bushes: with centre 1D and radius $\frac{1}{3}$ 1D-1C, draw an arc to intersect bottom line. With centre where right hand point of first bush meets line 1, and same radius, make another arc. Repeat to make 3rd bush.

☐Hillocks: with centre at mid 1A-1B, and radius $\frac{1}{2}$ 1A-1B, draw a semicircle. With centre 1B and same radius, draw small arc.

☐Sun: with centre on line D, 8cm (3″) down from 5D, and radius $\frac{3}{4}$ 5D-4D, draw an arc.

☐Trees on horizon: on a piece of cardboard make a composite shape with teacups. Move template around until it is in a satisfactory position, draw around it and mark in the trunks.

☐Rabbit: use 25cm (10″) dinner plate for body, 18cm (7″) side plate for head, average teacup for tail and large coin for nose. Make ellipses with side plate for ears.

☐Flower: make a cardboard template, using teacup for petals and sideplate for leaves and stem.

☐Clouds: use dinner plate to make a composite shape.

Start painting by first outlining areas of different colour and filling in large areas. Example: outline the clouds and sun in blue and then paint the sky. Work from top to bottom in this way so any drips from the top can be covered.

To get a clean edge on curves, keep plenty of paint on the brush and use the side, drawing it along gently, rather than using the tip. Keep brushes clean to avoid muddying the colours. Let first coat dry thoroughly before applying 2nd. Yellow may need 3 coats.

Alternative design ideas

Develop the rainbow theme to cover a wall entirely with arcs, and paint in graduated tones of pale colours. Overlap arcs to build up a complete fishscale pattern, then paint blue and silver for a bathroom. Use dinner plate clusters for huge red poppies, or separate plates for a cloud, balloons or bubbles in a cloakroom. Or paint a friendly flock of white sheep on a pale blue nursery wall.

Begin with wire jewelry

Metal 1

Because most people tend to think that working with metal involves using heavy machinery, it is rather neglected as a craft material. But primitive man did marvellous things with the minimum of tools and now modern, small-scale aids make it possible for anyone to take up a wide variety of metal-working techniques at home. And since metal is so versatile the creative design possibilities are endless, once the basic techniques are mastered.

These chapters are arranged in a progressive order of techniques, so you can acquire tools gradually.

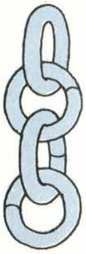
Wire

Many early pieces of jewelry were based on patterns created with wire which had been made by hand. As an introduction to the possibilities of working with metal, interesting jewelry can be made from various types of wire. The techniques can be developed to form very intricate pieces and wire combines well with other materials, like leather and all kinds of stones. Economically, it is a good idea to start with copper, brass or silver-plated wire. Once you acquire the knack of bending the wire in various ways you can graduate to fine silver wire.

Care. Keep stocks of wire labelled with their thickness or gauge number until you have learnt to recognize the various sizes. Wrap the wire up in plastic bags to prevent discolouration when you are not working with it. Always keep wire as straight as possible. If the wire has been kept in a large coil it can be straightened by lightly smoothing it with the fingers.

Polish and finishing. Clean the completed pieces by immersing them in a liquid silver cleaner. Wash in soapy luke-warm water and dry. To prevent future discolouration, spray with a metal or clear varnish. If the silver is being used with other materials, clean it thoroughly first.

Joins. Note how joined pieces hang. The pieces do not stay flat but alternate – one flat and the other at right angles to it (fig.1). Designs must follow this pattern otherwise the piece of jewelry will not hang in the correct way. A piece of work will never appear the same when lying on the work bench as when it is suspended, so always hold your work up to look at it.



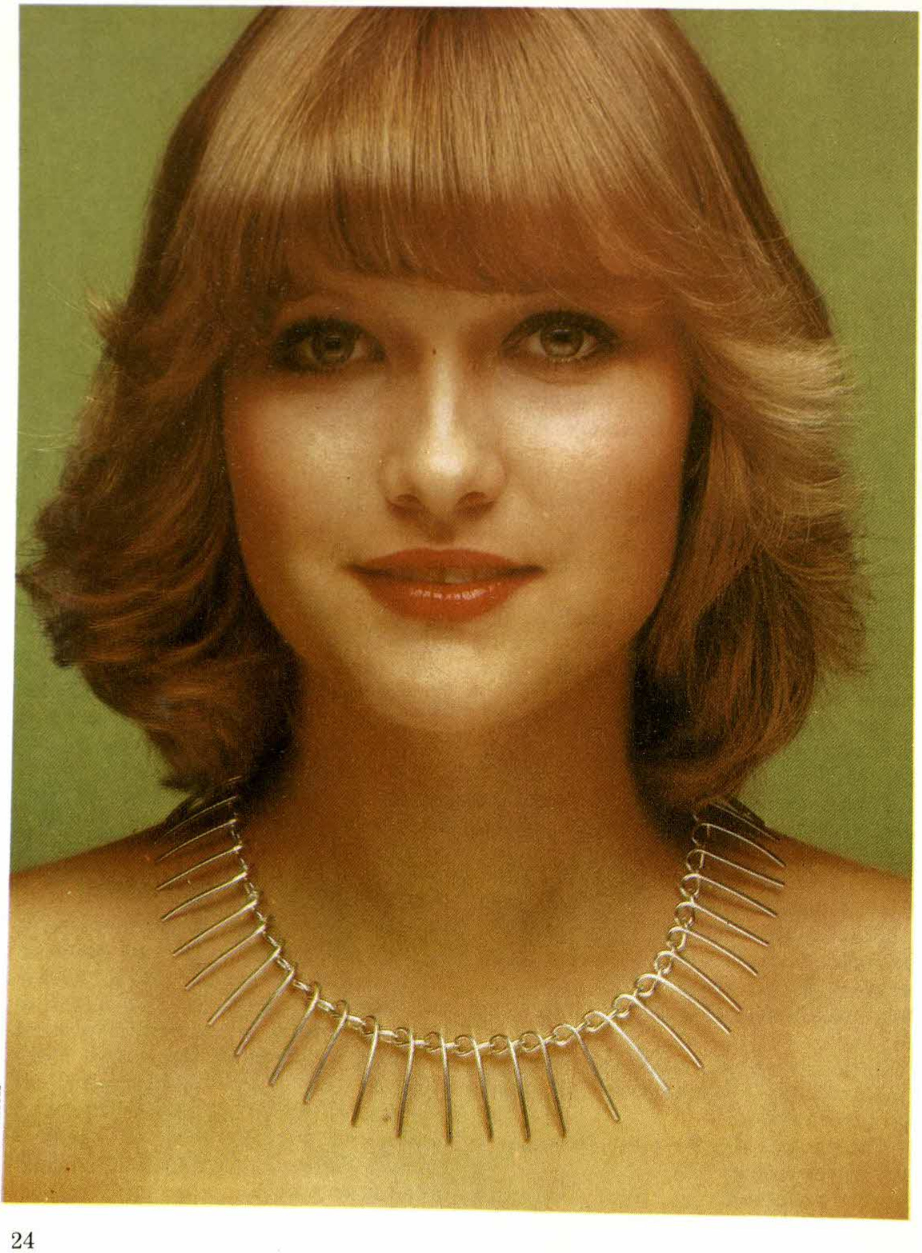
1

It is difficult to correct or straighten a piece of wire without it looking untidy and overworked so, if a mistake is made, it is better to start again with a new piece of wire.

You can use the discarded pieces for making jump rings.

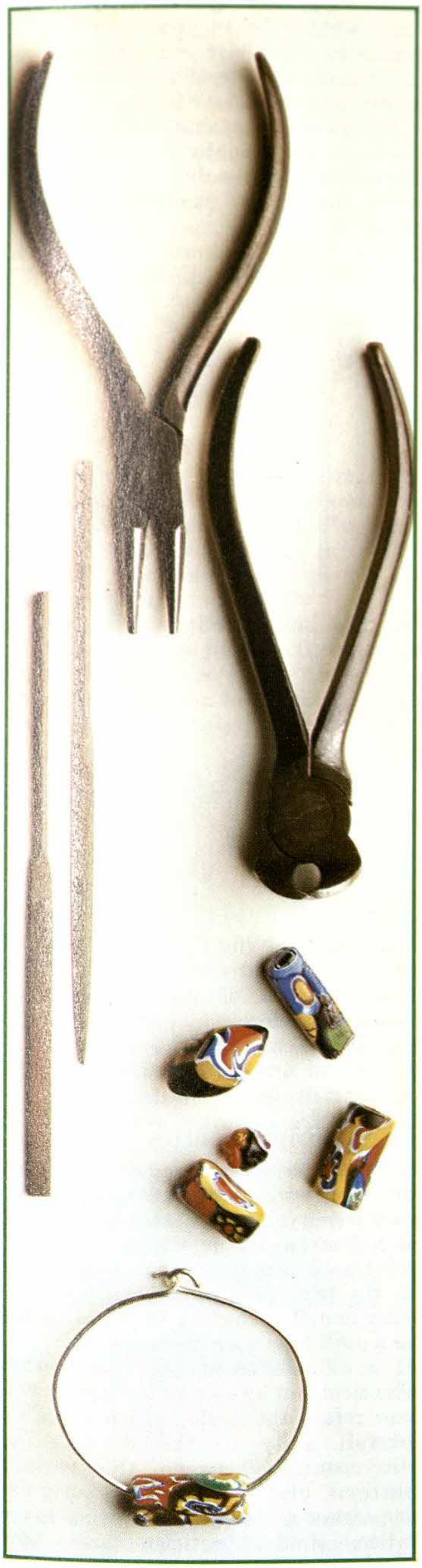
Tools

Round-nosed pliers do not have to be expensive but check that the jaws make contact along their entire length. The inside of the jaw should be smooth otherwise it will damage the surface of the wire. If they are not smooth, cover the jaws with sticking plaster, although this does make it slightly more difficult to grip heavy wire firmly. All-in-one pliers that cut and bend round and square lines are only suitable in the early stages. Once more



Steve Bicknell

This intricate sunray necklace is not nearly as difficult to make as it looks.



Basic jewelry-making tools and silver-plated wire bracelet with bead.

progressive techniques are reached a higher quality of tool is required.

Curling with round-nosed pliers. The size of the curl depends on the position of the wire in the jaws of the pliers. A small curl is made with the wire at the front of the pliers and a large one with it at the back.

The end of the wire in the jaws should not stick out beyond the pliers. Grip the pliers firmly and turn in a clockwise direction using the thumb of the other hand to apply pressure to the wire close to the jaws. You can work in an anti-clockwise direction if you find it easier but whichever way you do, make it a habit to work in the same direction. Try to complete a curl without having to regrip the wire.

Diagonal wire cutters or end cutters. It is easier to cut jump rings with the diagonal wire cutters, but either these or end cutters will do.

Metal file. You can use a medium sized metal file or you can buy a selection of Swiss or needle files. You will not need all the files to make the pieces shown here, but it is economical to buy a set of about 6 as they will be useful later.

It is sensible to spend as much as you can afford on tools, all of which can be bought from a hardware store.

Bracelet with bead

You will need:

18cm (7″) of 1.5mm (gauge 15) silver-plated wire

One bead that will fit onto wire

☐File ends of wire and thread the bead. Shape with fingers and make a curl at either end to hook together.

Earrings

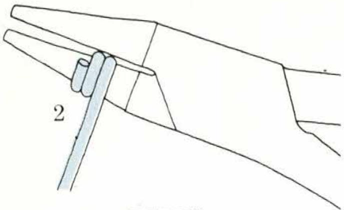
You will need:

31cm (12″) of 1.5mm (gauge 15) silver-plated wire

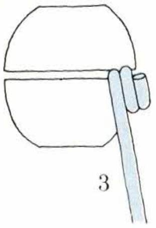
A pair of earring findings, clip-on or screw type, available from craft shops, haberdashery stores or jewellers. The findings must have a hook or eye to which a jump ring can be attached.

Jump rings are used to attach and assemble jewelry. Make 2 jump rings by placing the end of the wire halfway down the jaws and working it around until you have 2 complete circles (fig.2).

☐Line up the end cutters with the end of the wire and cut through both coils (fig.3).



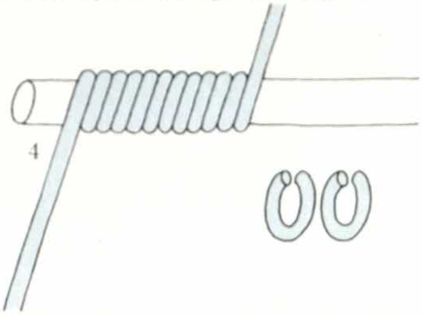
2



3

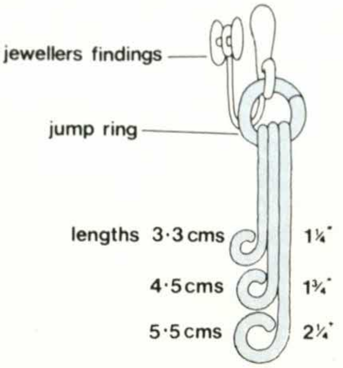
☐File ends of rings flat and smooth.

☐To make a larger number of jump rings coil the wire around any cylindrical shape of the right size (fig.4).



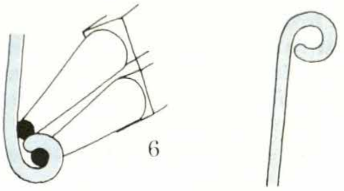
4

Hanging drops. Cut 2 of each of the lengths shown in fig.5 and file ends.



5

☐Make a small loop at one end of each piece of wire (fig. 6). These will thread onto the jump rings.



6

Victoria Drew

☐The curls at the other end must be made at right angles to the loop. You must curve 3 pieces in a clockwise direction and 3 in an anti-clockwise direction. To do this divide the lengths of wire into 2 equal groups so that you have the same number of equal lengths in each pile.

Working from one pile, hold the loop to curve away from yourself and make a curl at the other end so that it is in a vertical position when the loop is in a horizontal one.

Make a small curl for the short piece of wire and increase to larger curls for the other 2 pieces, the longest piece having the largest curl.

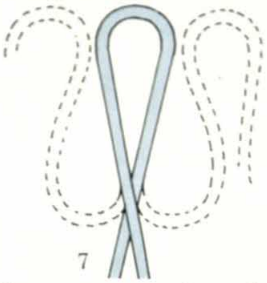
☐Repeat with the other 3 pieces but hold the loop so that it curves towards you. Assemble the pieces with the jump rings and findings as illustrated. Close the jump rings using the pliers. When doing this do not hold the earring in such a way as to bend any of the pieces.

The curvy bracelet

You will need:

38cm (15″) of 1.5mm (gauge 15) silver-plated wire

☐At the centre of the wire make a large curl with the pliers to let the wire cross about 2.5cm (1″) from the curve. Bend as shown in fig. 7.


7

☐Make the next curve where the wire crosses and continue to form the pattern illustrated.

☐Bend the wire with your fingers so that it fits round the wrist. The bracelet is not circular but elliptical.

☐Bend each end into a U-shape so that they hook into one another.

The size of the bracelet can be varied by opening or closing the angles of the curves.

The pendant

You will need:

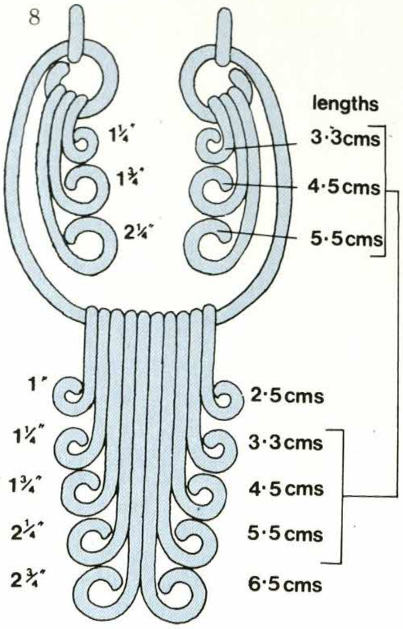
91cm (37″) of 1.5mm (gauge 15) silver-plated wire

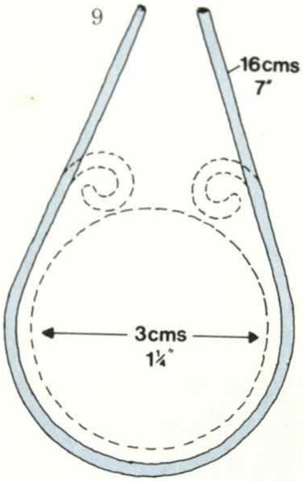
45cm (18″) of 0.6mm (gauge 23) silver-plated wire for the thong

Leather thong 56cm (22″) long, about 5mm (¼″) in diameter

☐The 6 suspended pieces on the inside of the horseshoe (fig.8) are made in the same way as the 6 earring pieces.

☐Make the horseshoe with 16cm (7″) of wire. File the ends and fold the wire around a cylindrical object of 3cm (1¼″) diameter. Do this by holding the halfway point of the wire to the cylinder with one hand using the thumb to keep the wire firmly in position. With the other hand work the wire around the cylinder, starting by applying pressure to the wire closest to the thumb of the other hand. Bend the wire until the ends meet (fig.9).

8


9


☐To make the 10 suspended pieces at the bottom of the horseshoe cut 2 each of the following lengths:

2.5cm (1″), 3.3cm (1¼″), 4.5cm (1¾″), 5.5cm (2¼″), 6.5cm (2¾″).

☐File the ends and make a small loop at one end of each piece. Divide the pieces into 2 groups and proceed as for the earrings. The 3 shorter pieces from one pile are made with small curls, the next piece is slightly larger and the longest piece has the largest curve.

☐Thread the pieces on to the horseshoe to form the pattern illustrated.

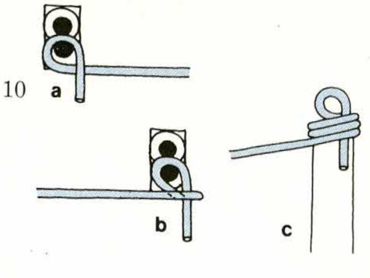
☐Make a large curl at either end of the horseshoe but do not close them completely. Thread the 6 pieces and close the open ends.

☐Make any adjustments to the pieces to even out the pattern.

☐Make 2 jump rings and hook them through the 2 curls on the horseshoe. Close the jump rings and thread the leather thong through them.

Hook and eye closure. For the thong use the 0.6mm (gauge 23) wire.

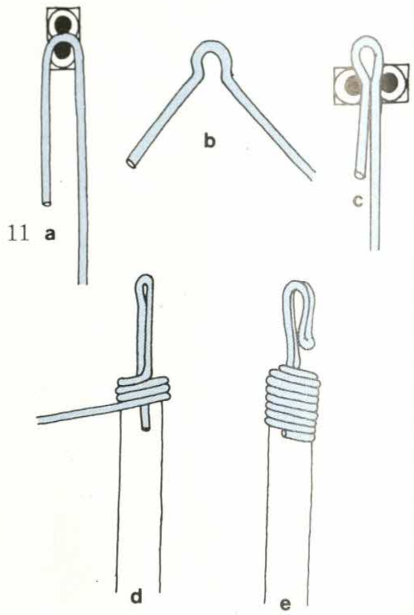
☐For the eye use 20cm (8″) of wire and make a loop 3cm (1½″) from the end of the wire (fig.10).

10


☐Wind the long end of the wire around the thong 4 times. You may find it easier to do this if you start a short distance from the end of the thong and trim it when you have finished.

☐Cut off the short end of the wire and continue winding the wire to the end. Press the end firmly into the thong with the pliers, without damaging the coils.

☐To make the hook use the remaining wire and make a U-shape 5cm (2″) from the end (fig.11). Start winding the wire around the thong 2.5cm (1″) from the end of the U-shape and proceed as before.

11


☐Bend the end around to form a hook and make any adjustment necessary so that it fits the eye.

Preparing designs

Once you have a working knowledge of different wires you can design your own jewelry. Always start by drawing a full-scale, linear diagram with a felt-tipped pen to the same thickness as the wire you intend to use. Make your motifs according to this diagram or a prototype made from it.

It is difficult to make every section identical, but by using the diagram you can retain the scale, which gives an overall unity to the design. The discrepancies between the various sections give the piece its original appearance, impossible to achieve when similar articles are mass produced.

The sunray necklace (page 24)

You will need:

3m (10′) of 1.5mm (gauge 15) silver-plated wire

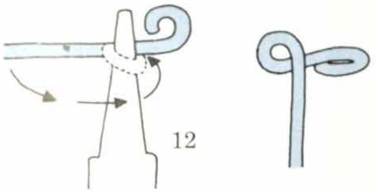
The individual pieces must be made as near identical as possible otherwise they will not hang evenly when linked together. The pieces are joined together by 2 equal loops made at right angles to one another and interlinked.

☐Cut a 6.5cm (2½″) piece of wire.

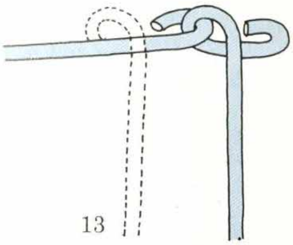
☐Use this for measuring and cut another 43 pieces of the same length.

☐File one end of each piece flat.

☐Cut 8cm (3″) of wire and file one end. Make a large loop for the eye at the filed end by putting the wire right into the jaws of the pliers. Make the 2nd loop using the pliers about 5mm (¼″) from the front (fig.12). The loops for all the following pieces, except the last one, must be made in exactly the same position.


12

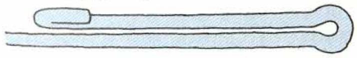
☐Working from the pile and using the pliers in the same position throughout, make an open loop at the filed end to form a hook shape. Insert this through the 2nd loop of the previous piece and close the hook (fig.13).

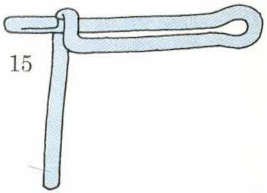

13

☐Hold the 2nd piece in the position used in fig.1 and curl the wire around to complete the pattern.

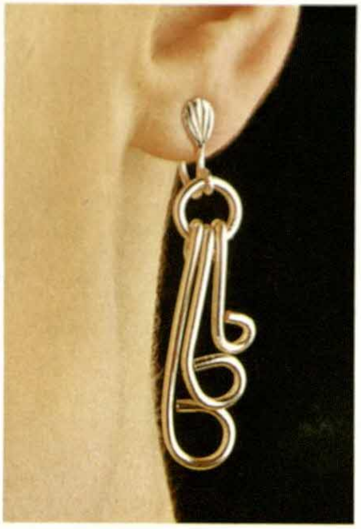
☐Repeat for all the pieces of wire.

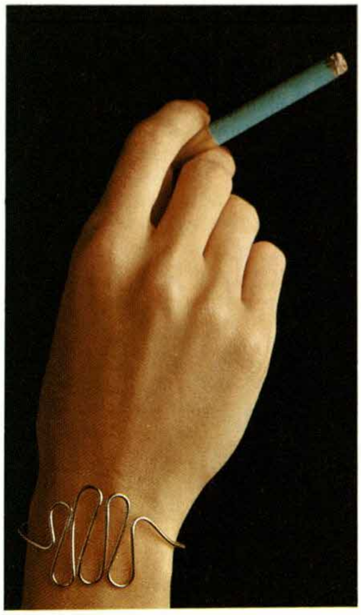
☐To make the hook cut a 12cm (4½″) piece of wire and file one end. Make a hook and insert it through the 2nd curl of the previous piece and close the hook. Make a U-shape 2.5cm (1″) from this curl (fig.14). Fold the end over near the first curl and complete the pattern (fig.15). Fold the length of U-shape in half to complete the hook. Suspend the piece over an upturned mixing bowl. Make any adjustment necessary so the hook and eye fit.

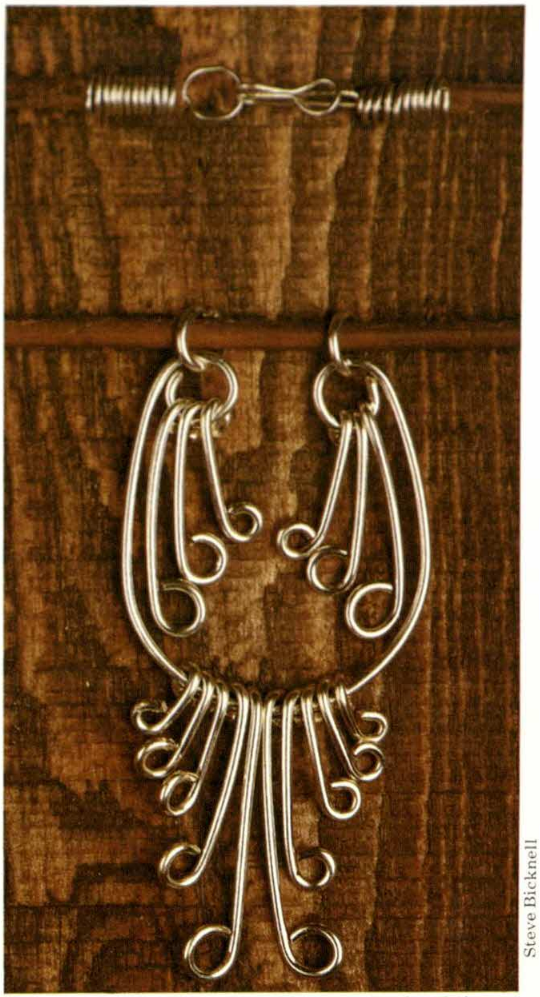

14


15

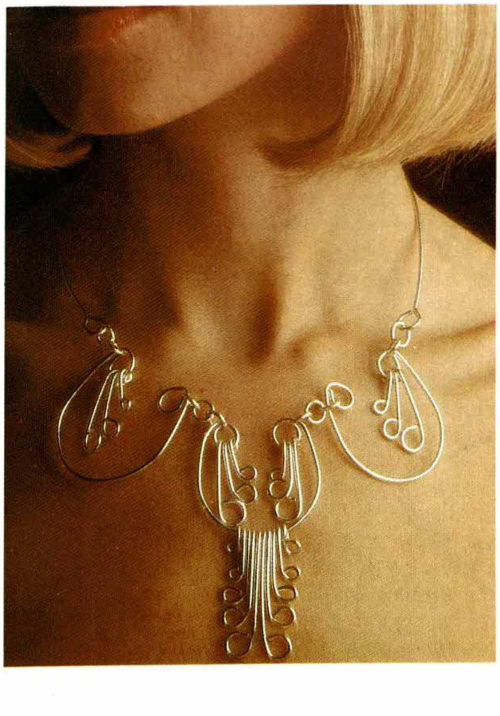
☐Trim the individual pieces so that they are all of the same length. File the ends and make any adjustment necessary to let the pieces hang at the same angle.

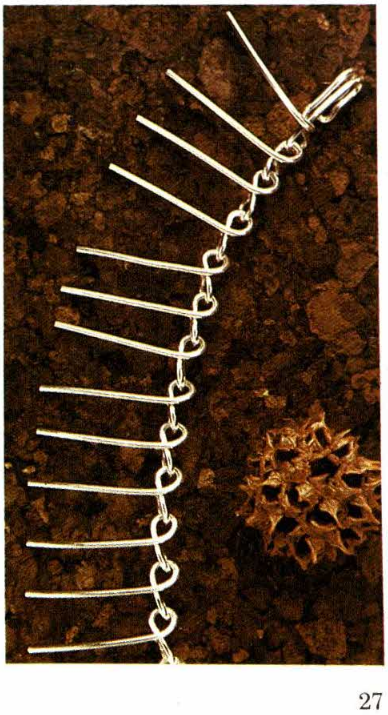

The earrings are assembled and attached to jump rings




Steve Bicknell

A series of curls form the curvy bracelet, left. The pendant above develops into a large necklace, below left. Hang the completed necklace over an upturned mixing bowl and make adjustments to it so that it hangs evenly. If you make the sunray necklace, below right from silver wire, first use cheaper wire to practise making the two pieces at the ends.





Circles, arcs and right angles

Design know-how 1

When carrying out design projects, you often need to be able to construct exact geometrical shapes. Here is a reminder of how to draw circles, arcs and right angles, the bases of many interesting designs.

Circles

The diameter of a circle is the distance across the circle measured at its widest point, and the radius is half the diameter.

You will need: Pair of compasses or pencil, string and drawing pin or tack.

☐To draw circles with diameters up to 30cm (12"), use a pair of compasses. Set the arms so that they are the radius of the projected circle apart, place the pin arm firmly where the centre of the circle is to be, and let the pencil arm swing freely around to make a perfect circle (fig.1).

☐Larger circles can be drawn just as simply using the string and drawing pin method. Cut a notch in a pencil, as close to the sharpened end as possible, and tie one end of a length of string to it. Push the drawing pin through the other end of the string to give exactly the radius of the circle. Keeping thumb firmly on the drawing pin, pull the string taut and draw the circle (fig.2).

To find the circumference (C) of a circle, use the formula $C = 2\pi R$. R is the radius, π (pronounced pie) is $^{22}/_{7}$. So, for a radius of 14cm, $C = 2 \times {}^{22}/_{7} \times 14$cm $= 88$cm

Arcs

Sections of circles, known as arcs, are also useful in planning murals or needlework designs. A variety of decorative effects can be achieved by combining arcs and circles to form a pleasing arrangement.

A fishscale pattern for patchwork, or border decorations in any material, can be made on the same principle.

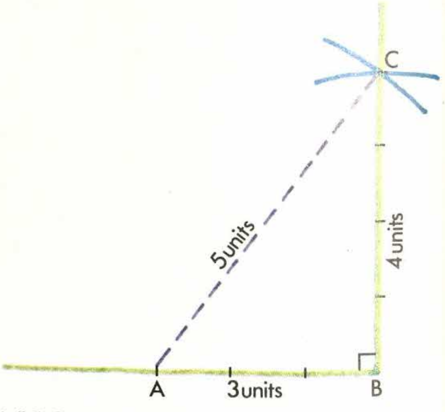
Draw a horizontal line and, using a pair of compasses or the string and drawing pin method according to the size of the design, make a series of semicircles butting up against each other on the line. Draw a line across the top of the semicircles (fig.3) and mark point A half-way between points B and C. Keeping the same radius as before, place the pin at point A and draw a semicircle that passes through points B and C. Repeat all along the row to form the 2nd layer of fishscales, and construct all further layers in the same way to the required depth.

Right angles

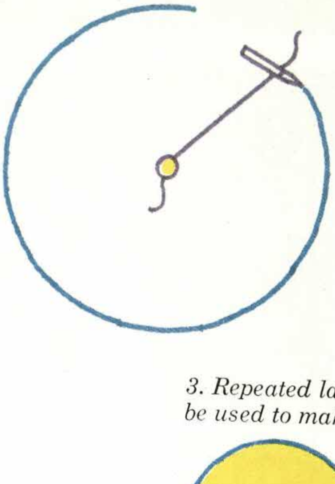
Enlarging a design on to a surface, picture framing and woodwork often require an exact rectangle to be drawn, and many designs need to be assembled to an exact right angled (90°) shape.

You will need: Pair of compasses or pencil, string and drawing pin; ruler or steel tape.

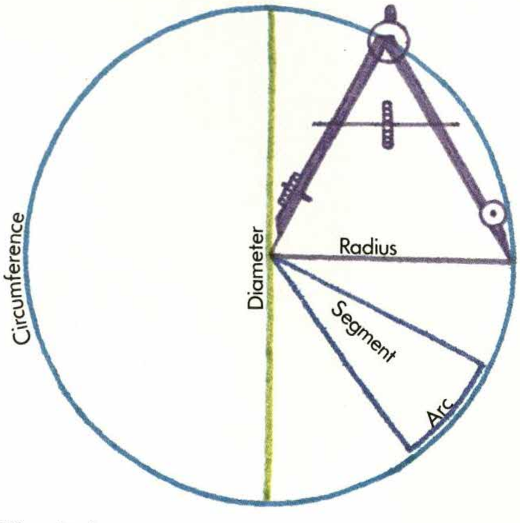
☐Draw a horizontal line, which will be one side of the right angle. Mark off a point A, 3 units from the end – the bigger the units you can afford to use the better. Set the span of your compasses or piece of string to 5 units, place the pin at A and draw an arc. Now set the span of your compasses or string to 4 units and, with the pin at B, draw a second arc to intersect with the first at C (fig.4). The line BC will be at right angles with the line AB. A right angle is normally indicated by a small square, as in the diagram. This method depends on the fact that all triangles with sides in the ratio 3:4:5 have a right angle between the two shorter sides.



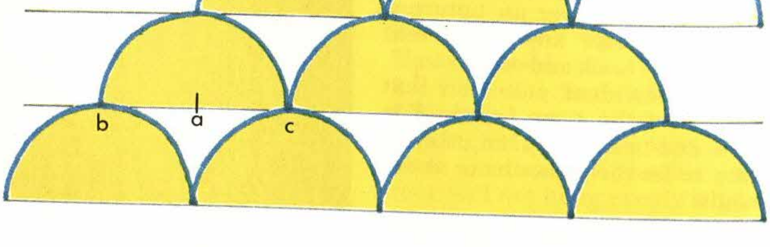
4. Making a right angle



2. Larger circles can be drawn using string and pencil



1. The circle



3. Repeated layers of semicircles can be used to make a fishscale pattern

Victoria Drew

Creative ideas 1

Jessica Strang/Pentagram Designs

Dough Sculpture

Sculpting with dough is fun. It's also inexpensive because all you need is flour, salt and water. You can make all shapes of baskets depending on what you choose for a mould. It is then baked so the mould must be ovenproof.

To make the basket shown:

You will need:

30cm (12″) round baking dish, 6.5cm (2½″) deep

Small pastry brush, or paint brush; wooden skewer or sharp pencil; clean damp cloth; aluminum foil; baking sheet; clear polyurethane varnish.

For the dough:

1½ average-size cups of salt

6 cups of flour

2¼ cups of hot water

1 egg for glazing the finished basket

☐ Cover the outside of the baking dish with foil, folding the excess inside the dish.

☐ In a medium size bowl add the water to the salt and stir occasionally until the salt is dissolved. Leave to cool.

☐ Slowly add to the flour, mixing with your hands as the dough will be very stiff.

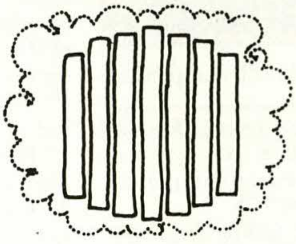
☐ Knead the dough on a pastry board until it is smooth and pliable. If the dough becomes too wet, knead in more flour, if it is too stiff, add a few drops of water.

The dough soon dries and becomes brittle when exposed to air, so work quickly and keep any unused dough wrapped up in a damp cloth.

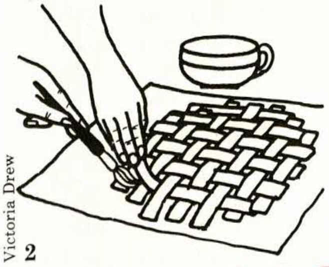
☐ Using ¾ of the dough, roll it on a lightly floured flat surface into a rectangle about 35cm x 45cm (14″x18″) and 3mm (⅛″) thick.

☐ The dough is then cut into strips 2cm (¾″) wide. For the baking dish recommended you will need 6 strips 43cm (17″) long, 4 strips 40cm (16″) long and 4 strips 29cm (12″) long. For a different size dish, invert the dish and measure over the centre from rim to rim to find the longest strips. Then cut the others proportionately. Keep the leftovers wrapped in a damp cloth.

☐ Place a piece of foil 45cm (18″) square on a table top and position half the strips as in fig.1, leaving about 2cm (¾″) spaces between them. Begin to weave with one of the 43cm (17″) pieces through the centre of those on the foil. Continue to weave the strips, working from the centre out.

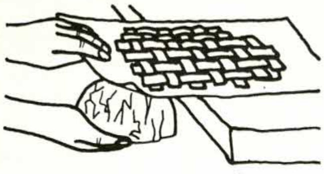

1

☐ To make the basket more secure glue all the intersections formed by the 43cm (17″) strips with a little water brushed between the layers (fig.2). Press through the centre of each intersection with the point of the skewer. Be careful not to stretch the strips as you weave, and if they break, mend them with a little water.


Victoria Drew

2

☐ Turn the baking dish upside down. Lift up the lattice work on the foil, holding the edge of the foil firmly. Centre and slowly lower over the dish (fig.3).


3

☐ Lift the dish, tuck the excess foil underneath and trim the strips even with the dish edge, using a very sharp knife. Mould the lattice to the dish by pressing lightly with your hands. Where the 40cm (16″) and 29cm (12″) strips intersect, glue with water and skewer as before. Place on a baking sheet, bottom up, and cover with a damp cloth.

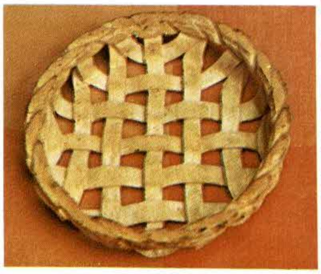
☐ Knead the scraps and the reserved ¼ of dough until smooth. Using your palms, roll the dough on a flat surface into two ropes about 105cm (42″) long and 12mm (½″) thick. Place them side by side and begin winding together one over the other to form a twist.

☐ Attach them to the basket edge by brushing the ends of the lattice strip with water and wrapping the twist around the edge, pressing it gently so that it sticks. Wet the overlapping ends of the twist to finish.

☐ In a moderate oven, bake the basket for 30 minutes.

☐ Prepare a glaze by mixing the egg with a teaspoon of water. Take the basket from the oven and remove the dish by pulling up the edges of foil. Return the basket to the baking sheet upside down and brush over with the egg mixture. Bake for 15 minutes. Repeat the glazing process every 15 minutes, alternating right side and wrong side up until it is a golden brown and thoroughly dry. Leave to cool on a wire rack.

☐ When everything is cool, apply several coats of clear varnish, allowing it to dry completely between coats.



Pop-up cards - fan folds

This chapter takes the pop-up principle shown in Paper, chapter 1 and demonstrates how it can be developed to create all sorts of interesting effects.

The pop-up cards shown here are based on a triangle folded from the centre crease of the card. The aeroplane trail is a simple pop-up triangle, the elephant and the peacock combine the triangular pop-up shape with a cut inner edge.

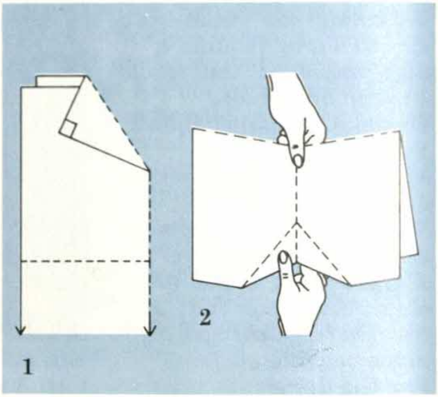
To make pop-up triangle

Fold the paper in half twice to make the card shape, then open up the card and re-fold it in the vertical crease (see Paper, chapter 1). Fold down one corner from half way down the central crease to half way along the upper edge (fig.1). Press sharply. Fold the crease over the other way and repeat once or twice to make the crease workable. Re-fold the card, and with the thumb and forefinger of the left hand keeping the crease in position, use the fingers of the right hand to ease the triangular pop-up shape into position (fig.2). Carefully ease the card closed, then work it open and shut once or twice so the pop-up operates freely.

The instructions for making the cards show how to create effects with coloured gummed papers—but you may prefer just to draw the outlines, or to use crayons, paints or coloured inks.

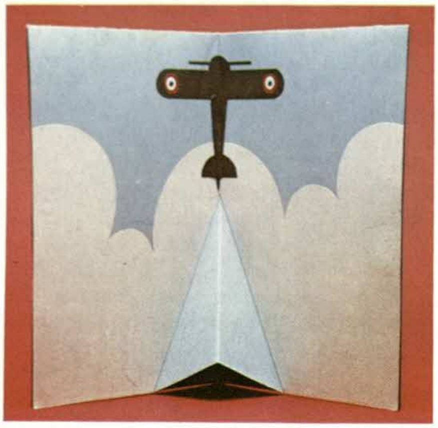
Once you have tried these ideas, you will be able to think of many others—the elephant can turn into a dog, the peacock's tail into a dress, the aeroplane trail into the rays of the Christmas star. It's not essential for the inside fold to be the same length as the outside one. The peacock's tail could just as well come half-way down the card, with the hedge stuck or painted to the inside back of the card. But it is important to get the balance right or the card may topple forward.

It's also advisable to work out new ideas on ordinary ruled paper before using more expensive, stiff paper



Joanna Ball

1,2. *Fold the pop-up triangle as shown.*



Chris Lewis

To make the aeroplane card

You will need:

Pale blue Ingres or cover paper 20cm x 30cm (8″x12″)

White gummed paper 20cm x 10cm (8″x4″)

Scraps of green, red and white gummed paper

Scissors, coins or pair of compasses, ruler, glue

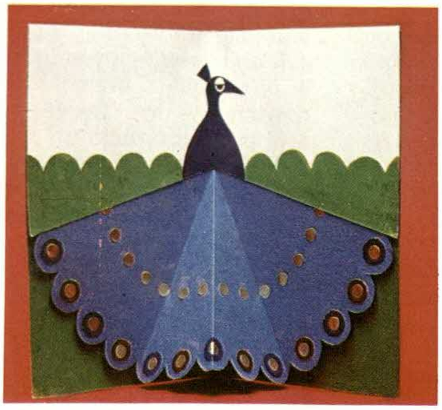
☐ Take the pale blue paper, fold in half twice to make 10cm (4″) by 15cm (6″), and make the triangular pop-up shape described above.

☐ Cut out the cloud shape from the white gummed paper, using various coins or a pair of compasses and a variety of radii to make arcs along one 20cm (8″) edge. Cut out the clouds.

☐ Fold cloud shape in half to find centre line, and fold a triangle from centre crease to the same dimensions as pop-up shape. Cut this triangle out of the cloud shape, and stick the cloud on exactly over pop-up.

☐ Trace off the aeroplane and cut it out of the green gummed paper.

☐ Fold it in half to give the centre line, and stick the aeroplane on to the card so that the centre creases coincide. Use red and white gummed circles with inked centre for roundels.



To make the peacock card

You will need:

Dark blue Ingres or cover paper 20cm x 30cm (8″x12″)

20cm (8″) squares of green and white gummed paper

Scraps of dark blue and brown gummed paper

Small gold circular stickers

Scissors, pair of compasses, ruler, glue, small coin

☐ Fold the dark blue paper in half twice to make 10cm (4″) by 15cm (6″).

☐ Using the compasses and a 10cm (4″) radius, draw an arc from the centre corner on the lower edge to the outer edge of the card (fig.3). Mark the point where the pin of the compasses was placed. Take the small coin and place it half-way over the centre crease, against the arc. Move the coin along and draw a series of semicircles, butting up against each other and the arc (fig.4).

☐ With the card folded along the vertical crease, cut out the tail shape through both thicknesses of paper (fig.5).

☐ Make the triangular pop-up shape by folding sharply from the marked point to 2½ scallops from the centre edge (see fig.6).

Re-fold the card and ease the pop-up into position.

☐ Cut a piece of green gummed paper 12cm x 20cm (5″x8″) wide and stick it to the inside back of the card to form the background to the tail.

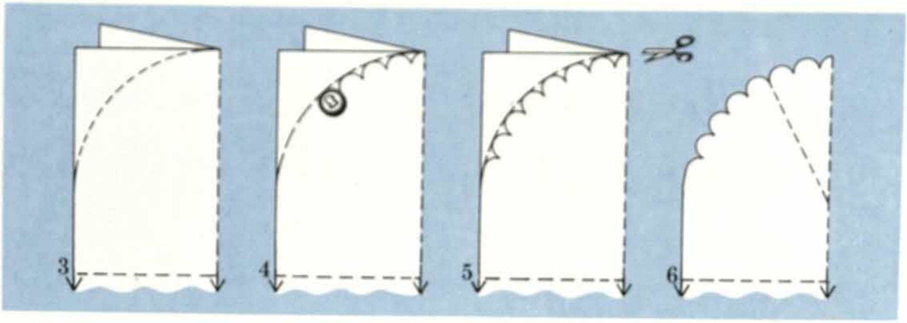
☐ Trace off the shape above the peacock's fan, cut it out of white gummed paper and stick it in position to form sky.

☐ Trace off the peacock's body from the shape given here, cut out of dark blue paper and stick in position.

☐ Draw a line from the marked point where pin of compasses was placed to the edge of the 2nd-to-last semicircle on either side. Then trace off the areas down to these lines and cut the hedge out of green paper, using the small coin again to give the scalloped edge. Stick in position.

☐ Decorate the peacock's tail with blue, brown and gold circles.

☐ Cut 2 semicircles of white paper for the eye, inking a black pupil in the lower half.



3,4,5,6. *Draw scalloped edge of peacock tail, cut out and fold as shown.*

To make the elephant card

You will need:

Pale grey Ingres or cover paper 20cm x 30cm (8"x12")

Dark brown gummed paper 12cmx20cm (5"x8")

Scraps of black, white gummed paper

Scrap of thick white paper

Scissors, pair of compasses, ruler, glue

☐ Fold the grey paper in half twice to make 10cm (4") by 15cm (6"). Open up the card and re-fold it into the vertical crease.

☐ Draw or trace off the elephant face shape given here and draw it on the edge of the card (fig.7). Cut out.

☐ Fold the card back between the centre of the card and the point between the elephant's face and ear (fig.8). Work the crease to and fro a few times.

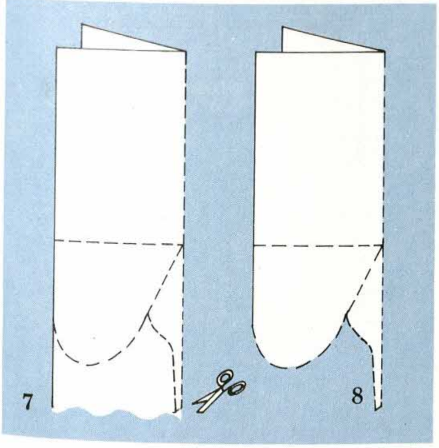
☐ Draw the circular body shape on the brown paper, using the compasses with a 5cm (2") radius.

Draw the elephant's legs 2.5cm (1") wide and 2.5cm (1") apart. Cut the shape and stick the outline to the card.

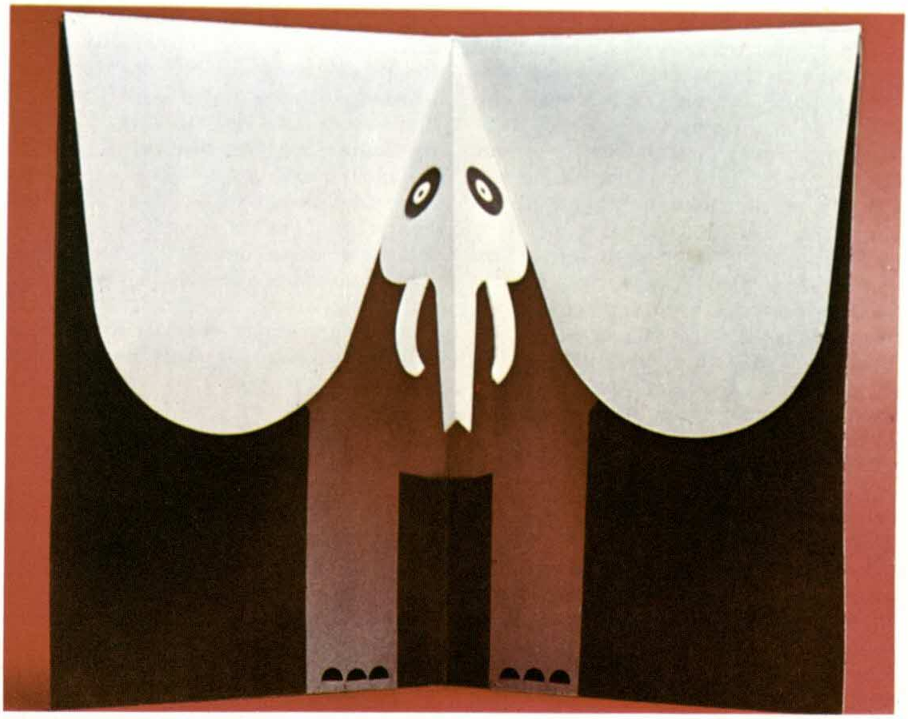
☐ Cut out black and white circles from gummed paper for the eyes, with an inked dot in the centre for the pupil.

☐ Cut 3 small circles from black paper, and cut each one in half to give 6 semicircular toe-nails. Stick in position on the bottom of the legs.

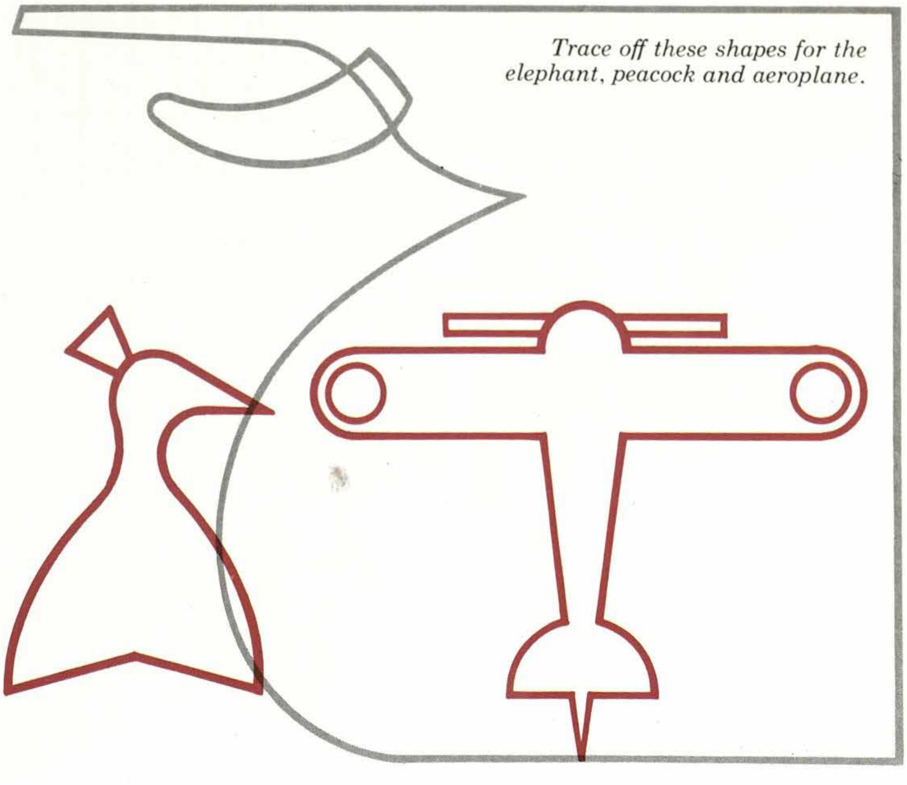
☐ Trace off the tusk from the shape given here and cut 2 from the thick white paper. Stick one on either side of the trunk, gluing them on to the underside of the face.



7,8. *Cut out elephant's face and fold.*



For a late card, an elephant that never forgets! Designed by Joanna Ball.



Trace off these shapes for the elephant, peacock and aeroplane.

Plastics 1

Clear cast embedding

Plastic is a lightweight material and is easily worked. It comes in liquid form as a polyester resin or it can be a solid such as acrylic plastic. Therefore you either pour or cut it accordingly. Plastic is at its best when transparent or translucent. Unlike glass, it does not simply let light pass through it but diffuses it and carries it along its length, even around curves in a rod, to give the edge a fluorescent light. You can make all sorts of beautiful, modern designs in plastic, such as chess pieces, paper weights, jewelry, door knobs, magazine racks and trays.

If you think of plastic only as a substitute for materials such as glass, wood or metal, then you should reconsider. Plastic comes in an exciting variety of forms and colours and behaves in a completely different way from any other material.

Plastic is made up of chemicals derived from coal and petroleum and this chemical structure can be altered to suit different purposes.

Plastic is really a collective word for a number of materials, many quite unlike one another. However, they can be divided into two main groups.

Thermoplastics

These are plastics which are hard at normal temperatures but soften when heated. The temperature needs to be controlled to prevent the plastic from bubbling and therefore shrinking. The material can be shaped and moulded and will retain the new shape when it cools to its former solid mass. This process can be repeated a number of times before the material starts to break down. This means that if you make a mistake it can be corrected.

Acrylic in sheets or rods, celluloid, polystyrene and PVC are all examples of thermoplastics.

Thermosetting plastics

These are a group of materials that undergo a chemical change which is irreversible. They solidify in the presence of heat and, once shaped and cooled, they cannot be reworked. They can be reinforced with glass fibre which makes them strong enough to be used for structural purposes.

Polyester resins are thermosetting plastics. They have a syrup-like consistency and, when mixed with a catalyst—the hardener—they generate heat and then cool down to a solid. Resins are made for different applications so always make sure that the resin you use is suitable for the particular job you are doing. Resins for clear casting are especially made to remain clear with little or no optical distortion. They are also treated to avoid excessive shrinkage so that when a solid object is embedded in them they will not crack around the object. Polyester resin is easy to work with and is suitable for craft purposes in the home.

Terminology

A cast is the moulded resin.

Pigments are special dyes used to colour or tint the resins. They are either opaque or translucent.

Moulds specially made for casting resin are available from craft shops in any size and shape, but you can improvise: any glass or metal container with a smooth, highly polished surface is suitable. Plastic moulds or rubber moulds can also be used but as the resin will react with polystyrene, containers made from this material are unsuitable. Generally, soft plastic moulds such as polythene are safe, but the hard brittle types are not.

Curing is the hardening of the resin. This process starts once the catalyst has been added to the resin and is complete when the cast has set to a solid. Heat is generated during this process. Air inhibits the curing of a pour so the exposed surface of the cast remains tacky. You can overcome this either by covering the pour to expel all air, which is difficult, or by removing the tacky surface with acetone.

The catalyst is a chemical, usually a peroxide solution, which reacts with the resin to turn it into a solid.

Gel is the stage where the resin is set but not hard. At this stage the surface will appear slightly rippled and is ready for a second pour.

These paper weights and pen-holder are exceptionally fine examples of resin casting. The piece on the left has a graphic design on the base which is optically very effective. Supplied by Barnabas (Covent Garden) Ltd.

Steve Bicknell

To make clear cast objects you will need wooden stirrers, moulds, paper cups, catalyst or hardener to mix with the resin, colour pigments to tint the cast and a measuring cup.

Clear cast embedding

Embedding is the process whereby an object is placed within a solid mass of resin. This is usually done in two layers for a single object, or in a number of layers, depending on the number of objects and the way they are spaced. Each layer is known as a pour. The first pour is to create the outer surface and to support the object. The second pour is to cover the object, thus embedding it.

There is no end to the things that can be embedded in resin. The casts you make can be varied not only by the object you embed but also by the shape of the mould and the colour of the resin. You can tint the resin slightly for a special effect, or make the back or base of the mould an opaque colour as a background for the object.

Once the casts have cured they can be finished by gluing a design to the tacky surface. You can then attach jeweller's findings to make brooches, earrings and key rings.

You can make paper weights, buttons, door knobs, jewelry, key rings, picture mounts, chess and backgammon pieces —in fact you can apply this technique to most objects.

Experiment with embedding dried flowers and grasses, some of which are more suitable than others. The colour tends to fade—red more so than yellow —but everlasting flowers can be embedded successfully as they do not fade. You can embed coins, insects, colourful seeds, coloured glass chips, watch parts, unusual stamps, address cards and shells. You can also make large clear blocks to mount photographs or to set photographs in. Remember that whatever you embed must be free of moisture.

The process is easy and you do not require any special tools. The materials are easily available and for a high gloss finish the cast can be polished with a metal polish. Resins can be purchased from hobby shops or manufacturers in various quantities. Buy the appropriate catalyst at the same time. You can buy an embedding kit or you can buy the resin and catalyst separately.

To make a cast

For example, a paper weight.

You will need:

Clear cast resin and catalyst
Mould
Object to embed
Waxed paper cups
Measuring jug, wooden stirrers
Wax polish
Optional—colour pigment

Acetone is useful for cleaning, but it is highly inflammable so throw cleaning materials away.

Prepare your work area by covering the surface with paper.

Decide on the object you are going to embed, then select a mould suitable for the object's size and shape.

Measuring and preparing the mould. Some moulds are marked with their capacity but, if not, fill mould with water up to the level required for the first pour—usually $\frac{1}{2}$-$\frac{1}{3}$ the total depth of cast. Pour the water into a measuring jug to find the capacity.

If you do not want to mix the resin and catalyst in the measuring jug, pour the water into a paper cup and mark the water level. Dry the mould and the paper cup thoroughly before adding the resin.

Polish the mould with wax polish. Although this is not essential, depending on the type of mould you use, it does help to release the cast. If you want to make more than one cast prepare the moulds together.

Remember that the open end of the mould will usually be the back or bottom of the object you are making. The smooth inside surface of the mould will form the outside surface of the cast.

Measure out the resin and add the appropriate amount of catalyst. If you want to tint the cast, add the pigment before you add the catalyst and mix it well—stirring slowly to avoid trapping air bubbles.

☐ Once the catalyst has been added, stir the mixture slowly for a minute before pouring it into the mould.

☐ Set the mould aside on a level surface and cover it lightly with foil to prevent the surface from collecting dust. You can place the mould at an angle if you want a sloping surface.

Leave the cast for about three hours or until it has gelled. The length of time can vary depending on the amount of catalyst used.

Embedding an object

☐ Some objects are inclined to trap air when being embedded. If you are using a coin, prepare it by pouring a few

Glass beads were used to create this mosaic pattern.

It is difficult not to trap air bubbles when embedding intricate pieces.

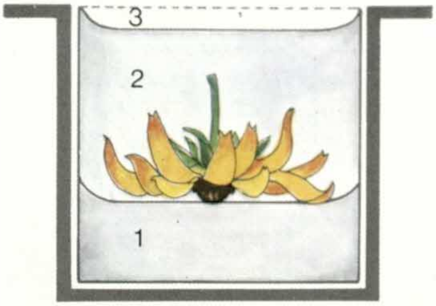
Air bubbles between the photo and the cast spoil the effect of this piece.

Too much catalyst has been used in this cast, causing it to crack.

drops of resin mixed with catalyst on to the face. Leave to set and place this side down on the gel before the second pour.

Address cards can be treated in the same way. Dried flowers should be immersed in resin before being embedded.

☐ Place the object upside down on the tacky surface of the first pour. If the object is very light in weight you can coat it with a clear plastic adhesive to keep it in position. Once this has dried, make the second pour.



1. *First pour* 2. *Object embedded in second pour* 3. *Resin or felt base.*

Barbara Firth

☐ The tacky surface of the cast can be covered with a piece of felt or you can cover it with a thin layer of resin to which you have added more than the usual amount of catalyst. This will cure to a smooth finish.

The resin can take from 15 minutes to several hours to cure completely, depending on the brand of resin and the size of the cast.

Removing the cast. If a cast is difficult to remove from a mould, immerse it in cold water and bring to the boil. Then plunge it in cold water. If it still sticks repeat the process—it will work.

Polishing. Rub the cast down with a metal polish for a highly polished finish. You can also rub it down with a fine grade wet and dry paper and then use a metal polish, but this is difficult to do by hand and requires a lot of practice. If you do attempt it, try it out on a small test cast first.

Once you have made a few casts you will find it easy to make larger objects and to adapt the technique to a wide range of colourful articles.

Hints on embedding

Patience is essential for good results. Satisfy your initial enthusiasm by making small casts—larger casts take a long time to cure to obtain successful results. But even when making small casts, apply the following hints—they will improve your casts and make the whole process easier when you attempt larger pieces.

The object to be embedded must be dry and free of dust.

Avoid trapping air bubbles by stirring the resin slowly.

The percentage of catalyst used must be decreased as the amount of resin to be poured is increased. Too much catalyst will form cracks in the cast—although you might do this for special effects. The amount of heat generated is relative to the amount of catalyst used, so if an excessive amount of catalyst is used not only will it form cracks in the cast but it can also ruin the mould.

It is better to use too little catalyst than too much. The surface can always be cured artificially if necessary by applying a thin coat of resin to which a larger proportion of catalyst has been added. You can also use this method to glue a base to the tacky surface of the cast.

Store the resin containers in a cool, dark place and cover them so that they do not collect dust. Dust could fall into the resin when you pour it from the container, so work in a dust-free atmosphere and cover the casts while curing.

To avoid waste, always have a spare mould on hand in case you have any resin left over from a previous pour.

Safety hints

Take care: some plastics can be inflammable, some fumes can be toxic, and some may irritate the skin. However, they are perfectly safe to work with in the home if you take the following simple precautions.

Store all plastic materials in a cool, dark place.

The room in which you are working must be warm and well ventilated.

Do not smoke when working with plastics and do not work in a room where there is an open flame.

Keep materials away from food.

Avoid contact with the eyes.

If you find it difficult to work wearing rubber gloves use a barrier cream on the hands.

Work on a heat resistant surface that has been covered with tinfoil or waxed paper.

Use disposable containers for mixing resin in and do not throw away the excess until it has cooled down.

Wear old clothing and remove any spilt resin with acetone.

Should your skin come into contact with the resin wash it immediately with cold water.

Wipe up any spilt resin with a paper towel and dispose of it—do not use it a second time.

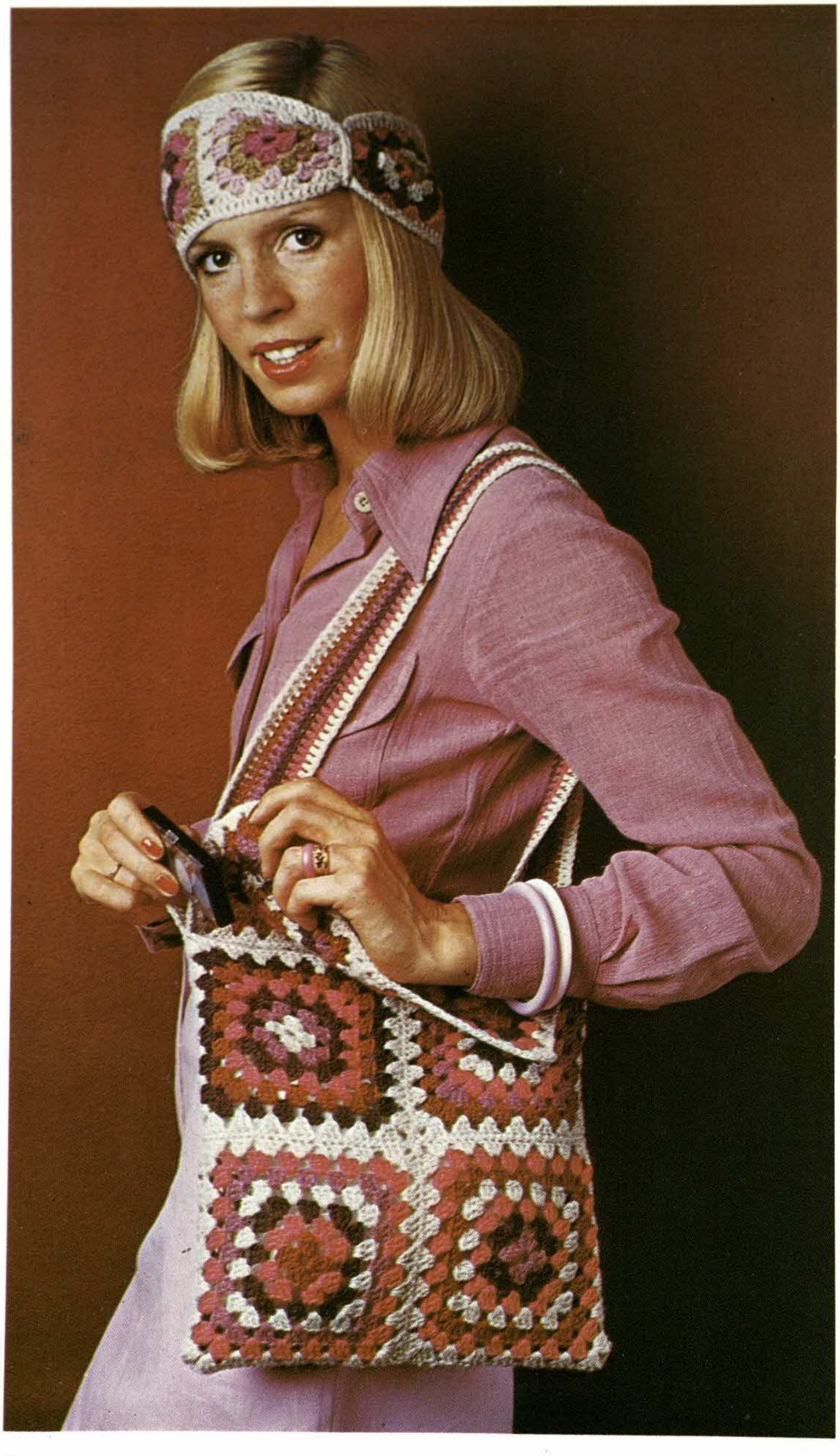
Dispose of all cleaning materials and waste as soon as you have finished working with the resin.

Begin with granny squares

Yarn — crochet 1

Crochet is quick and simple to work and, because it is so decorative, has become one of the most popular of all handicrafts. It is very adaptable and can be used in conjunction with many different fabrics and yarns. You can crochet borders, edgings and flower decorations which will enhance any garment; or you can create pictures, bedspreads and other home furnishings. The type of yarn used offers you as much scope as the articles you can make from it. Coarse wool or string can be made up into wall hangings or rugs while the finest yarns will make delicate table mats, fine curtains or gossamer-weight fabrics.

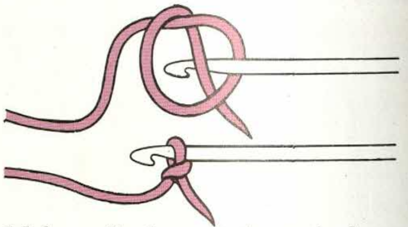
These chapters set out to explain the basic techniques so clearly that you will be able to make up any sort of



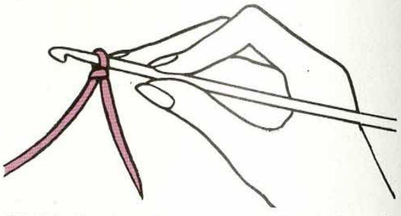
Steve Bicknell

Bright and practical, this shoulder bag is just right for carrying those things a girl insists she cannot be without! The bandeau, which can be made in an evening even by a beginner, will keep your hair sleekly in place in most weathers and looks pretty too.

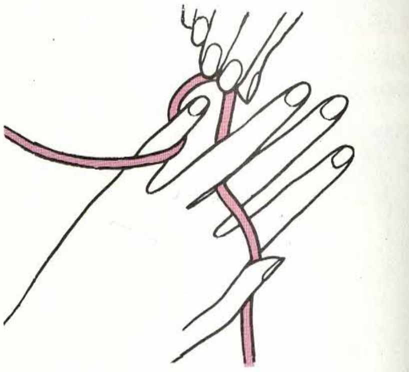
To make a chain



Make a slip loop at the end of your ball of yarn and place it on the hook.



Hold the hook in your right hand…



… and the yarn in your left hand, with the yarn looped round the little finger. This loop helps to control the flow of yarn.

pattern to the size you require—and then go on to make up your own designs with your choice of yarn. The easiest way to learn to crochet is to begin by making small, manageable shapes like granny squares. Practise a square first using scraps of double knitting yarn and a No. 4.00 ISR (U.S. size H) hook. These motifs are colourful and economical, since any odd scraps of the same thickness of yarn can be used and with the combination of half-squares, you can produce a variety of shapes.

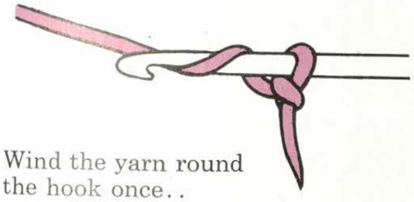
Slip stitch

Use it to join a new colour: insert hook into stitch in previous row, make a loop with the new yarn, catch it round hook, pull through stitch, wind yarn and end round hook and pull through.

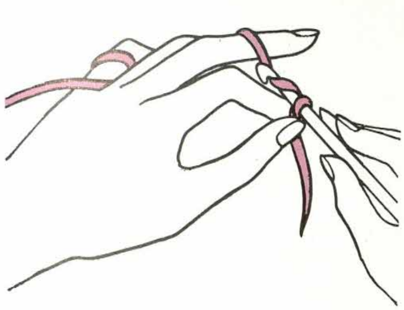
To join crochet pieces, match edges, insert hook through both thicknesses, yarn round hook and draw loop through fabric and loop on hook in one movement.

Chris Lewis

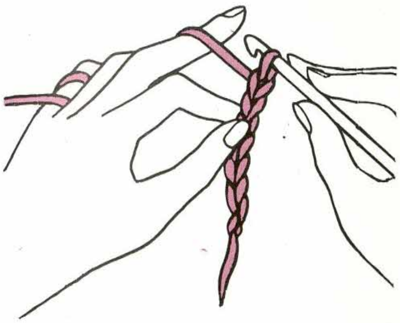
This granny square uses three colours but when it gets bigger you can use more!



Wind the yarn round the hook once..



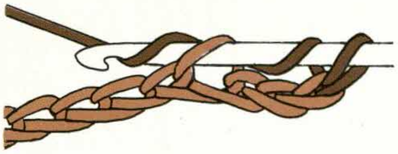
... and draw the yarn through the slip loop. One chain stitch has been made, leaving one loop on the hook —this is not counted as a stitch.



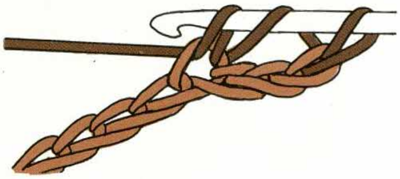
Continue making chain stitches in this way.

To work a treble

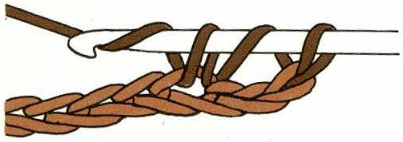
Make however many chain stitches you need and add 3 extra chain stitches. These make what is called a turning chain, which is required at the beginning of every row of treble to bring hook up to correct height to work the first stitch.



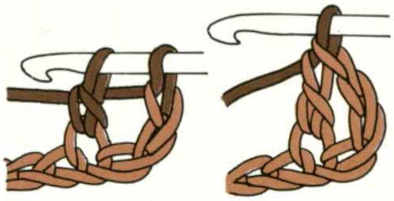
To work the first row, *wind the yarn round the hook, as shown for making a chain stitch and insert the hook from front to back into the fourth chain stitch from the hook, wind the yarn round the hook again ...



... and draw the loop through the chain stitch.



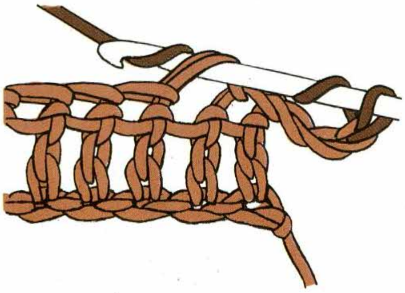
Wind the yarn round the hook ...



... and draw the yarn through 2 of the loops on the hook.

Wind the yarn round the hook and draw it through the remaining 2 loops on the hook.* One treble has been made, plus the first missed 3 chain stitches which count as the first treble, leaving one loop on the hook. Repeat from * to * into next and every chain stitch to the end of the row.

On the next and every following row, turn the work so that the yarn is again in position for the beginning of the row. Make 3 chain stitches to count as the first treble, miss the first treble of the previous row, work one treble into each treble to the end of the row inserting the hook ...



... under the top 2 loops of the treble in the previous row.

Barbara Firth

Abbreviations

beg	begin(ning)
cm	centimetre(s)
ch	chain(s)
cont	continu(e)(ing)
dec	decreas(e)(ing)
gm	gram(s)
ISR	international size range
No.	number
rem	remain(ing)
rep	repeat
RS	right side
sp	space(s)
ss	slip stitch
st(s)	stitch(es)
tog	together
tr	treble
US	United States
WS	wrong side
yrh	yarn round hook (take yarn from back of hook, over top and under hooked end)

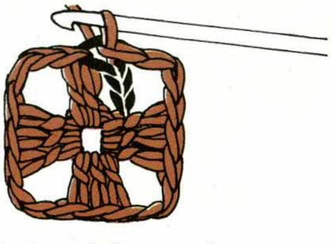
Chris Lewis

Granny square using one colour.

Making a granny square

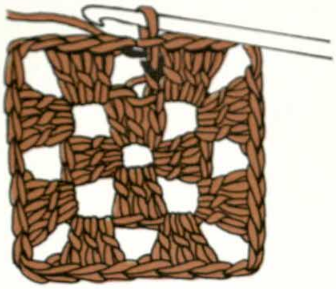
Using one colour. Without breaking off yarn at end of each round. Make 6ch. Insert hook from front to back into first ch, yrh and draw loop through ch and loop on hook in one movement. One ss has been worked to join ch into a circle.

1st round. 3ch to count as first tr, 2tr into circle working under ch, 2ch, work (3tr into circle, 2ch) 3 times. Join with ss to third of first 3ch.



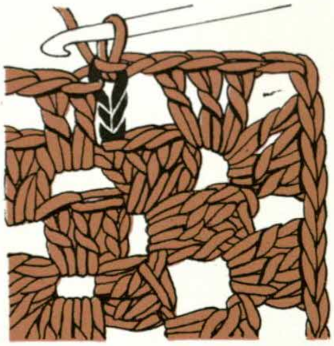
The beginning of the second row.

2nd round. 2ch, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into first 2ch sp to form corner, *1ch, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into next 2ch sp, rep from * twice more. Join with ss to first of first 2ch.



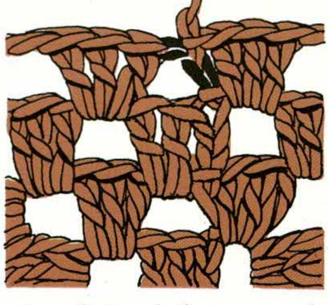
The beginning of the third row showing where the hook should be inserted.

3rd round. 3ch, 2tr into first ch sp to the left of ss join of previous round, 1ch, *work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into 2ch sp, 1ch, 3tr into 1ch sp, 1ch, rep from * twice more, (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into last 2ch sp, 1ch. Join with ss to third of first 3ch.



Working under the top two loops of the treble in the previous row.

4th round. 2ch, 3tr into next 1ch sp, 1ch, *work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into 2ch sp, 1ch, (3tr into 1ch sp, 1ch) twice, rep from * twice more, (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into last 2ch sp, 1ch, 3tr into last 1ch sp. Join with ss to first of first 2ch.
Break off yarn, draw end through loop on hook and draw up tightly—called 'fasten off'.



To fasten off, break the yarn and pull the end through loop on hook.

Granny squares using 2 or more colours. Breaking off yarn at end of each round. Make commencing ch and work first round as given for motif in one colour. Break off yarn and fasten off.

2nd round. Join next colour to any 2ch sp with ss, 3ch to count as first tr, work 2tr into same ch sp, *1ch, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into next 2ch sp to form corner, rep from * twice more, 1ch, 3tr into same 2ch sp as beginning of round, 2ch. Join with ss to third of first 3ch. Break off yarn and fasten off.

3rd round. Join next colour to any 2ch sp with ss, 3ch to count as first tr, work 2tr into same ch sp, *1ch, 3tr into 1ch sp, 1ch, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into 2ch sp, rep from * twice more, 1ch, 3tr into 1ch sp, 1ch, 3tr into same 2ch sp as beginning of round, 2ch. Join with ss to third of first 3ch. Break off yarn and fasten off.

4th round. Join next colour to any 2ch sp with ss, 3ch to count as first tr, work 2tr into same ch sp, *(1ch, 3tr into next 1ch sp) twice, 1ch, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into 2ch sp, rep from * twice more, (1ch, 3tr into next 1ch sp) twice, 1ch, 3tr into same 2ch sp as beginning of round, 2ch. Join with ss to third of first 3ch. Break off yarn and fasten off. Darn in ends of yarn where colours were joined.

This half square makes granny squares even more versatile.

To make a half-square

Using one or more colours. Breaking off yarn at end of every row. Make 5ch. Join with ss to first ch to form a circle.

1st row. Using same colour, 4ch to count as first tr and 1ch sp, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into circle, 1ch, 1tr into circle. Break off yarn and fasten off.
Each row must be started with a fresh strand of yarn from the same side at which the row was first begun.

2nd row. Join next colour to third of first 4ch with ss, 4ch, 3tr into first 1ch sp, 1ch, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into 2ch sp, 1ch, 3tr into last 1ch sp, 1ch, 1tr into top of last tr in previous row. Break off yarn and fasten off.

3rd row. Join next colour to third of first 4ch with ss, 4ch, 3tr into first 1ch sp, 1ch, 3 tr into next 1ch sp, 1ch, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into 2ch sp, (1ch, 3tr into next 1ch sp) twice, 1ch, 1tr into top of last tr in previous row. Break off yarn and fasten off.

4th row. Join next colour to third of first 4ch with ss, 4ch, 3tr into first 1ch sp, 1ch, (3tr into next 1ch sp, 1ch) twice, work (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into 2 ch sp, (1ch, 3tr into next 1ch sp) 3 times, 1ch, 1tr into last tr. Break off yarn and fasten off.

Bandeau

For a bandeau 9cm (3½") deep by 50cm (20") long. Each motif measures 8cm (3¼") square.

You will need:

50gm (1¾oz) of 4-ply yarn in 6 contrasting colours, ABCDE and F. If you use scraps of yarn, the size of the bandeau may vary.

One No.3.00 ISR (US size F) crochet hook

To work granny squares

Make 6 granny squares, using one or more colours as required.

To make up

Sew squares tog and join into circle.

Edging. Using No.3.00 ISR (US size F) hook, any colour and with RS of work facing, rejoin yarn with ss to any corner ch sp.

Next round. 3ch to count as first tr, (work 1tr into each tr and ch sp across top of first 3 squares), ss into same place as last tr, make 16ch, take ch down back of squares, round front to top again to gather the front, ss into next ch sp, 1tr into same place, work as given in brackets across next 3 squares. Join with ss to third of first 3ch. Fasten off.

Work along other edge in same way omitting the 16ch loop.

Handbag

For a handbag 27cm (11") square

Each motif measures 13cm (5½") square

You will need:

50gm (1¾oz) of 4-ply yarn in main colour and 100gm (3½oz) in 4 contrasting colours. If you use scraps of yarn, the size of the handbag may vary.

One No.3.00 ISR (US size F) crochet hook

To work granny squares

Make 10 granny squares using the colours as required.

To make up

Sew 4 squares together to make a square, and sew the remaining squares together to form an oblong 27cm x 40cm (11"x16½"). Place the square against the oblong, WS together, matching the squares exactly. Sew round the 3 sides of the square and oblong where they meet. This forms the body of the bag with a flap consisting of 2 squares.

To work the handle

Make 152ch, work 1tr into every ch and work 6 rows, varying the colours as necessary.

To complete the bag

Sew the right sides of the 2 ends of the handle to the back of the bag just where it joins the flap. Lining the bag will increase its durability and help keep its shape.

Cushion

For a cushion 40cm (16") square

You will need:

250gm (8¾oz) of yarn in one colour

50gm (1¾oz) of Double Knitting yarn in each of 7 contrasting colours, ABCDEF and G.

One No.4.00 ISR (US size H) crochet hook

Cushion pad 40cm (16") square

20cm (8") zip fastener

To make large square

Using No.4.00 ISR (US size H) crochet hook and any colour, work first 4 rounds as given for granny square, changing colour for each round.

5th round. Join in any colour with ss to corner 2ch sp, 3ch to count as first tr, 2tr into same sp, *(1ch, 3tr into next 1ch sp) 3 times, 1ch, (3tr, 2ch, 3tr) into corner 2ch sp, rep from * twice more, (1ch, 3tr into next 1ch sp) 3 times, 1ch, 3tr into same sp as beg of round, 2ch. Join with ss to third of first 3ch. Break off yarn and fasten off.

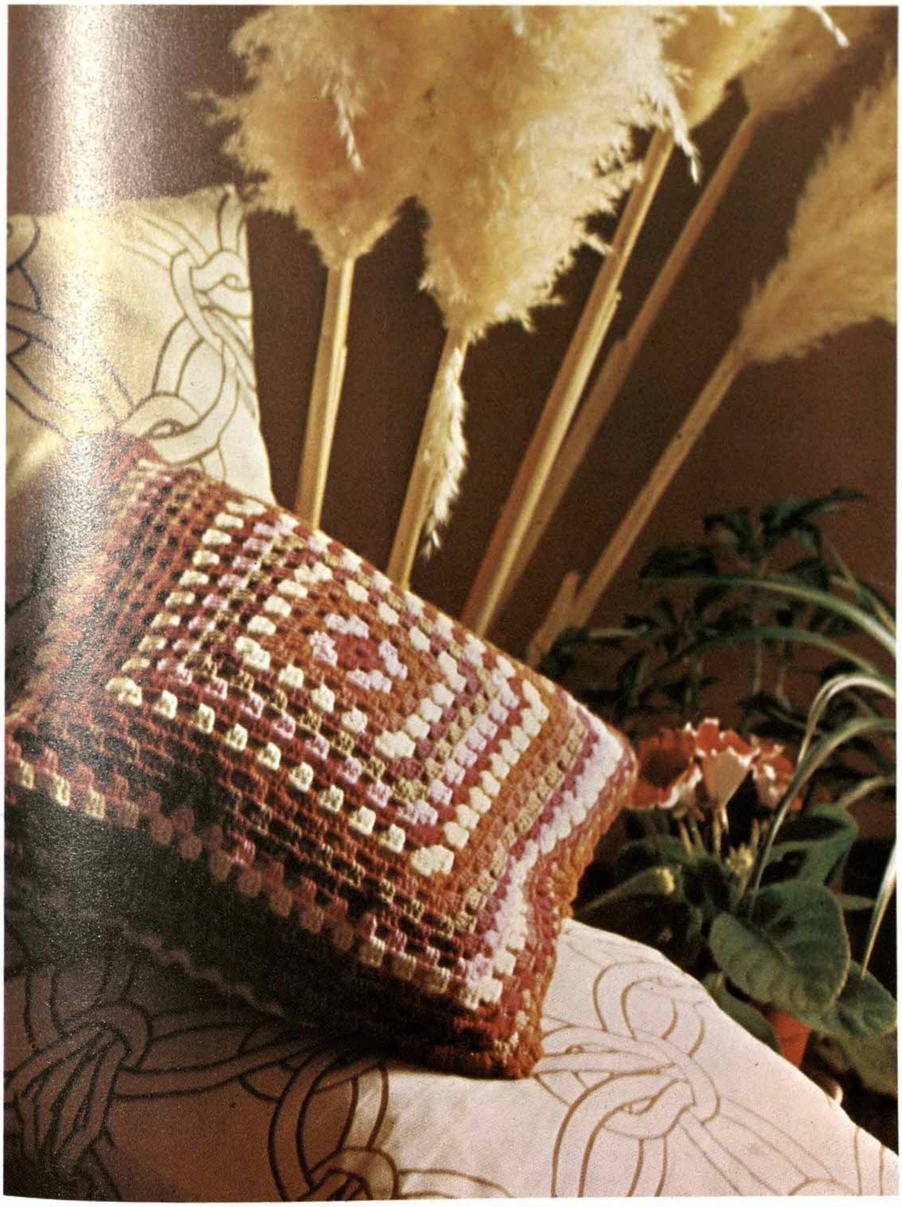
Cont in this way changing the colour as shown and working one more group of 3tr and 1ch on each side on every round until work measures 40cm (16") across. Fasten off. Darn in all ends. Make another square in the same way.

To make up

With RS of squares tog, join 3 edges. Turn RS out. Insert cushion pad. Join rem seam, leaving sp to insert zip fastener in centre.

Edging. Using No.4.00 ISR (US size H) hook and any colour, rejoin yarn with ss to any corner sp through both thicknesses. Into each ch sp round all edges work (1ss, 4tr, 1ss) working through both thicknesses, except across zip fastener opening, where you only work through one thickness. Join with ss to first ss. Fasten off.

Sew in zip fastener.



Rupert Watts

Cushion made up in Jaeger Spiral-spun Double knitting. Designer Pam Dawson.

Star weaving - God's eyes

Yarn — weaving 2

A primitive form of weaving—star weaving—has in recent years found its way into contemporary decor. These colourful stars are most commonly seen in Latin America though they are also found in Africa and the East. In Latin America they are known as Ojos de Dios—God's Eyes. In Mexico God's Eyes were made to symbolize the eye of a god and were a supplication for help or watchful care from the gods. If more than one God's Eye was woven on to the crossed sticks then it was primarily for the gods to look kindly upon a child. A God's Eye was made for each year of a child's life up to five years—after this the child was supposed to be able to make his own requests. The age of a child could also be represented by the number of colours used.

Today God's Eyes are enjoyed for their use of colour and texture and because they are easy and fun to make. The materials are inexpensive and readily available. This is an excellent opportunity to use up scraps of yarn.

Materials

You will need two straight sticks or dowels of about the same length and thickness. You can use sticks from the garden but straight, smooth sticks are the easiest to use to begin with.

When choosing yarn let your imagination run wild with colour combinations. The thickness of the yarn should be relative to the thickness of the sticks. 6mm (¼″) diameter sticks work best with double knitting weight. With practice you will be able to vary the yarn weights on each project.

The yarn may be of any material—wool, cotton or man-made fibres. It is best to use at least 2-ply on your first projects as you will be pulling on it to maintain the tension.

To make a star

You will need:

2 sticks, each 28cm (11″) long and 6mm (¼″) thick

3-ply rug wool in following amounts:

orange — 15.5m (17yd)
purple — 14.5m (16yd)
red — 1m (1yd)
blue — 6.5m (7yd)
yellow — 2.75m (3yd)
rose — 14.5m (16yd)

Remember—it is always better to have too much yarn rather than not enough.

Lashing. Lay one stick on top of the other at right angles with centres matching.

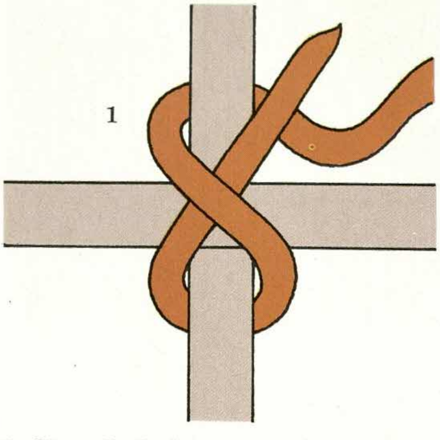
☐ Lay one end of yarn (in this case orange) diagonally across the intersection of the two sticks.

☐ Hold the tail of yarn to the junction of the sticks with your thumb. At the same time, hold the junction of the sticks, on the side away from you, with the index and middle finger of the same hand.

☐ With your free hand begin winding the yarn away from you diagonally, holding it taut as you do so. In this way the yarn should cross the sticks diagonally at the junction, on one side and have parallel sides on the other.

☐ Wind the yarn diagonally around the crossing point of the sticks alternately to the right and to the left, thus forming an X over the centre of the sticks (fig.1). When the centre wood is totally covered, you have lashed the sticks together.

1



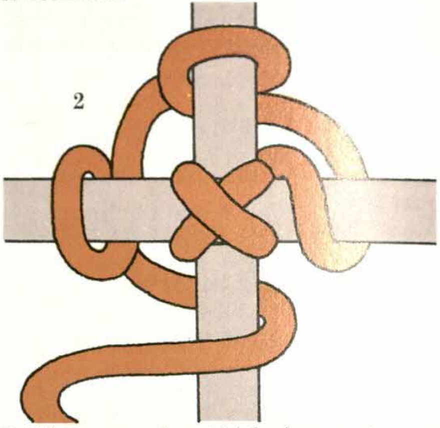
1. *Start the lashing by making a figure of eight around the two sticks.*

Note: remember to pull the yarn taut as you wrap so sticks stay in place.

☐ Turn the sticks over and tie a small but tight knot at the centre of the back with the original tail of the yarn and the yarn you now hold in your hand. This secures the lashing. Do not cut the yarn. Turn the sticks over again so that the knot is at the back. The side facing you is from now on the 'right side' of the star. Always work with this side facing you.

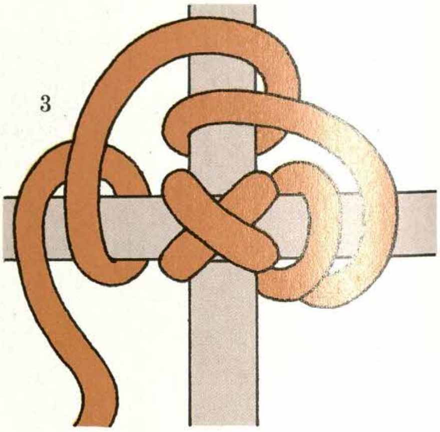
Weaving. There are two basic methods of wrapping the yarn to make stars. One shows the shape of the sticks (fig.2), the other covers the shape of the sticks completely and is slightly raised (fig.3). In both cases, all wood is covered until the outer edge of the star is reached.

2



2. *The recessed method of wrapping.*

3



3. *This is the raised method of wrapping which covers the shape of the sticks.*

This example continues with the orange yarn that was used for the lashing, and begins with the method that covers the shape of the sticks completely.

☐ Begin by holding the star in one hand and the yarn in the other (with the right side of the star facing you).

☐ Carry the orange yarn over one stick so that the yarn lies just next to the last round of lashing.

☐ Bring the yarn under the stick and back around the top of the stick (fig. 3). (Keep the yarn taut throughout the entire procedure.) You have now completed one wrapping.

☐ Carry the yarn forward to the next arm of the star. Again, lay the yarn on top of the stick next to the last round of lashing. Wind the yarn under the stick and around the top of the stick. Don't forget to keep the yarn pulled taut.

☐ Continue on to the next arm of the star and finally the fourth arm and back to where you began. You have now completed one round. Repeat this round until you have woven about

2.5cm (1″) from the centre of the star in each direction.

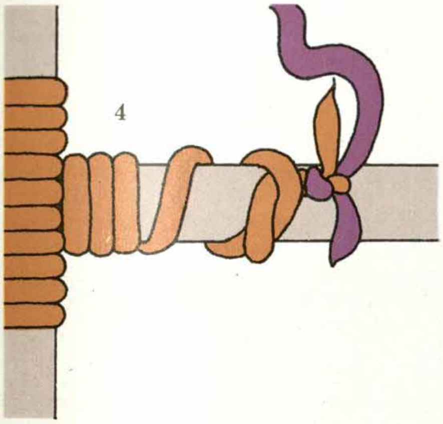
Changing colours. You are now ready to change colours. This design changes from orange to purple.

☐ On the wrong side of the star stop at one arm and cut the yarn leaving a tail of about 5cm (2″).

☐ Loop the tail once round the arm and tuck the end under the loop. Pull the end tightly. (This will hold the tension of the yarn in place while you join the new colour.)

☐ Making a double knot, attach the purple yarn to the tail of orange yarn. Tie the knot as close as possible to the arm of the star (fig.4).

☐ Continue wrapping the purple yarn around the arms of the star just as you did with the orange yarn.



Victoria Drew

4. *Join a new colour on the wrong side of the stick with a tight knot.*

To follow the example shown, wrap the purple yarn until its width is 12mm (½″).

☐ Change to the red yarn, following the method for changing colours. After winding the red yarn for 6mm (¼″) in width, change to a blue yarn.

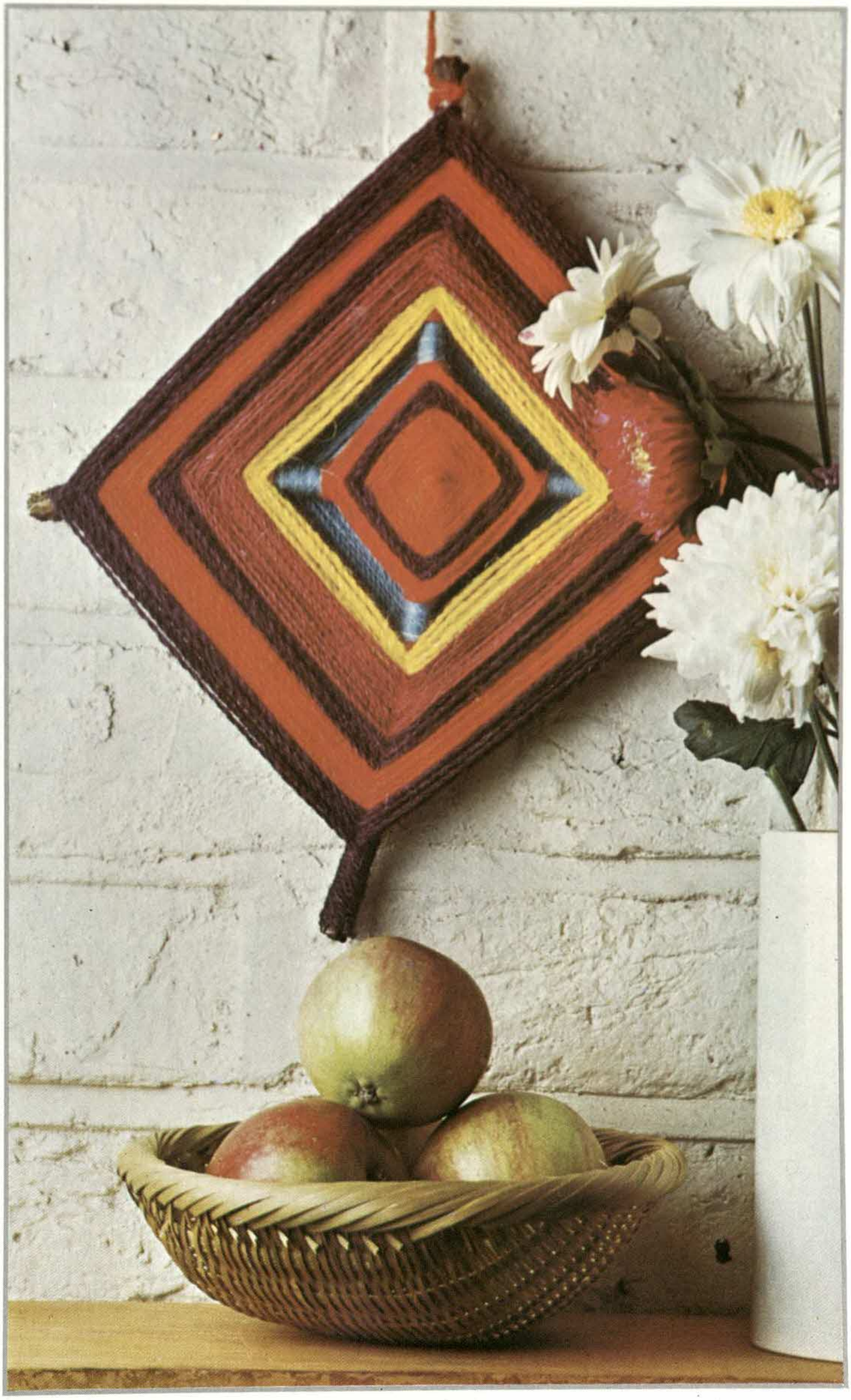
☐ With the blue yarn change to the other technique of wrapping the yarn (fig.2). You will note that the blue area appears to be recessed. This is due to the second wrapping technique which shows the shapes of the sticks.

☐ Begin by wrapping the blue yarn under the nearest arm of the star.

☐ Now bring the yarn around the top of the stick and around the underside again.

☐ Carry the yarn to the next arm and repeat the first two steps (fig.2). The blue yarn is wrapped for a width of 12mm (½″). Now, change back to the orange yarn and wrap it for a width of 6mm (¼″).

☐ Then change to a yellow yarn and resume the original method of wrapping (going over the stick, then under and back over). Continue this method to near the end of the sticks. The yellow yarn is wound for a width of 6mm (¼″). Then wind the rose yarn for 18mm (¾″); purple for 12mm (½″); orange for 12mm (½″) and finally purple for 18mm (¾″).



Chris Lewis

This star uses the raised method of wrapping broken by just a small area of the recessed method. The lower end, being longer, is covered by winding the yarn round and round. The star is light enough to be hung from a panel pin hammered into a wall.

Finally, on the wrong side, knot the purple yarn with an overhand knot.

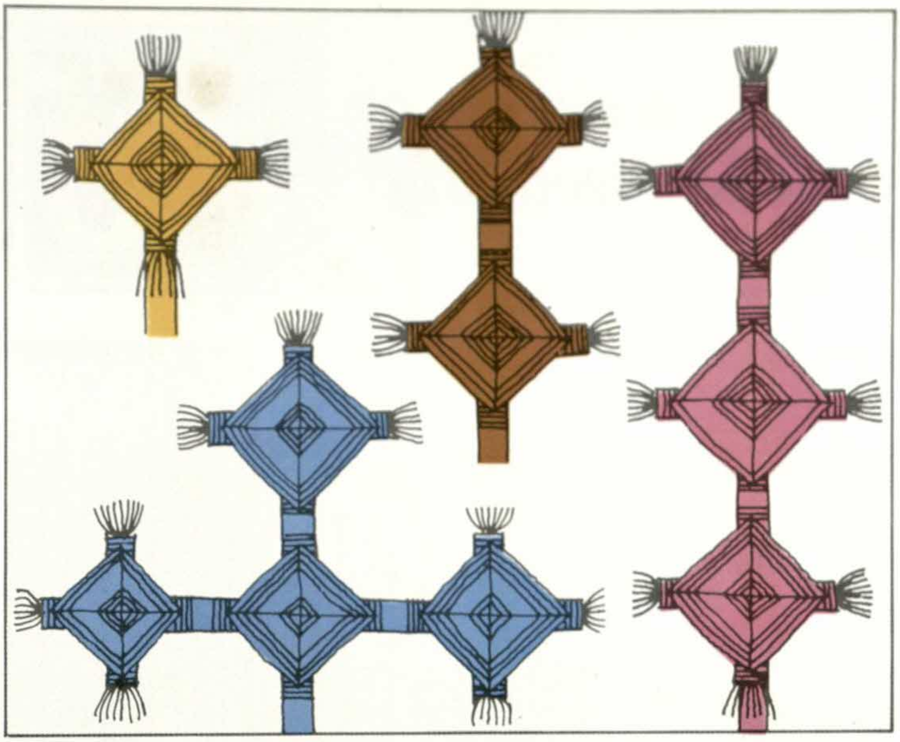
If you wish to cover the longer bottom arm of the star, as has been done in this model, do not cut the purple yarn close to the knot after you have finished weaving the star, but instead wrap the yarn round and round the stick until you reach the end. Then make your overhand knot on the wrong side of the stick. This is a good method of covering the ends of the sticks that are longer than the others.

Finishing. Make certain that all knots are tight and cut tails close to the knots for a neat finish.

Decorating stars

You may leave your star as it is, or further embellish it with various orna-

Left: stars are woven with 3-ply rug wool. The smaller star is based on curved twigs and the large star on green split bamboo garden stakes, which are available from hardware shops. The stars use both methods of winding—raised and recessed, and the smaller one is decorated with feathers. All God's Eyes illustrated (except five-starred one) were designed by Carol Packard. Right: group several stars together to make shapes like these traditional Mexican God's Eyes.



ments. The most common practice is to hang things from the exposed ends of the arms. You may, however, wish to sew or weave objects on to the face of the weaving. Tassels, pompons, feathers, bows, buttons, seashells and beads can all be used as ornaments.

As you become more proficient at making stars, you may want to try something more challenging. Some methods of varying stars are:

Irregular sticks will add bumps and concave areas to the wrapping. The sticks can be bumpy and/or curved to add interest. Just remember that these irregularities make it more difficult to maintain the tension and will require extra attention.

Very long, fat, short or thin sticks all give different looks to your stars. Remember that yarn thickness should be scaled up or down according to the size of the stick.

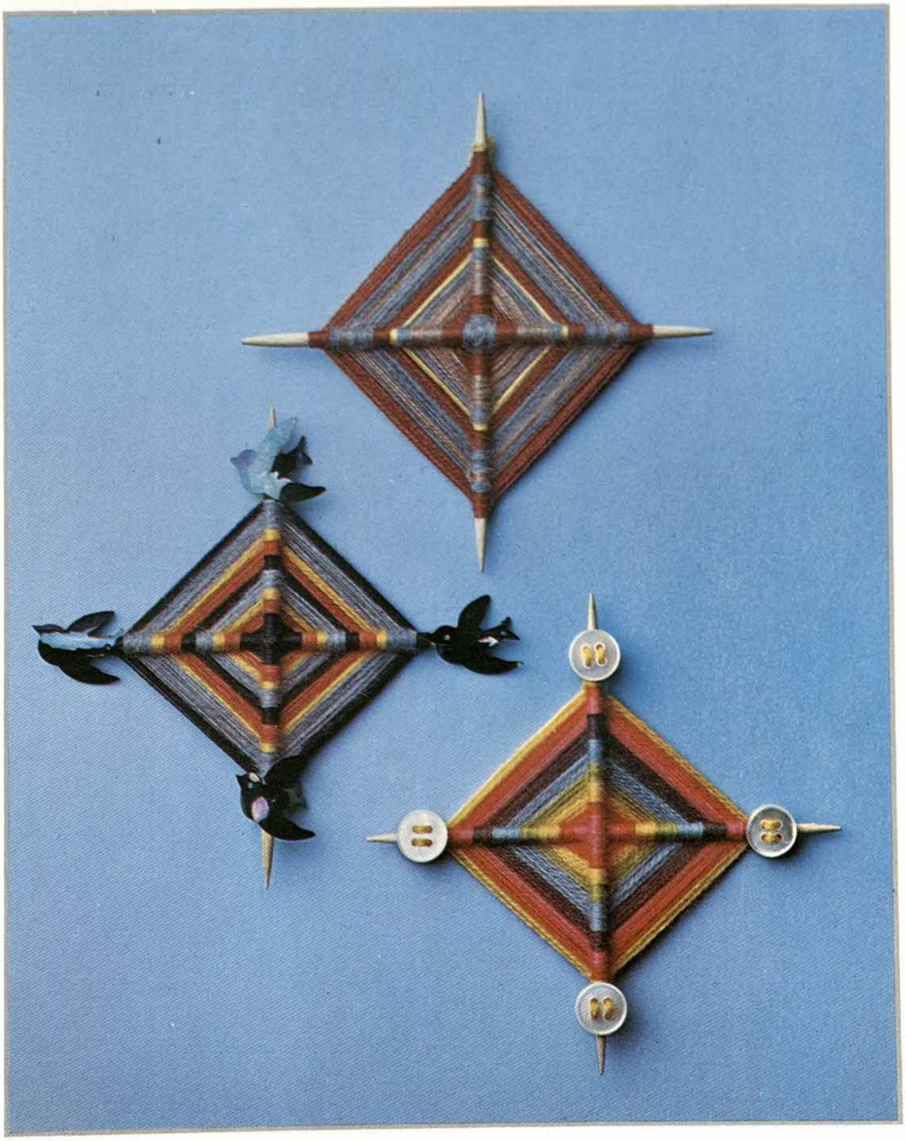
Besides changing colours with yarn, you may also like to try changing textures. There are all sorts of novelty yarns on the market, some giving a bumpy or looped effect. A smooth cotton followed by a bumpy, novelty yarn could give a dramatic effect.

God's Eyes

God's Eyes make a very effective hanging for a wall. Simply tie a string around the top arm, making a loop. Loop the string over a tack and you're all set. One star by itself looks good, or you may want to make a group of them, either all of one size or in a range of sizes.

Mobiles made with God's Eyes add a new dimension to a room. Children are attracted to them because of the lively colours.

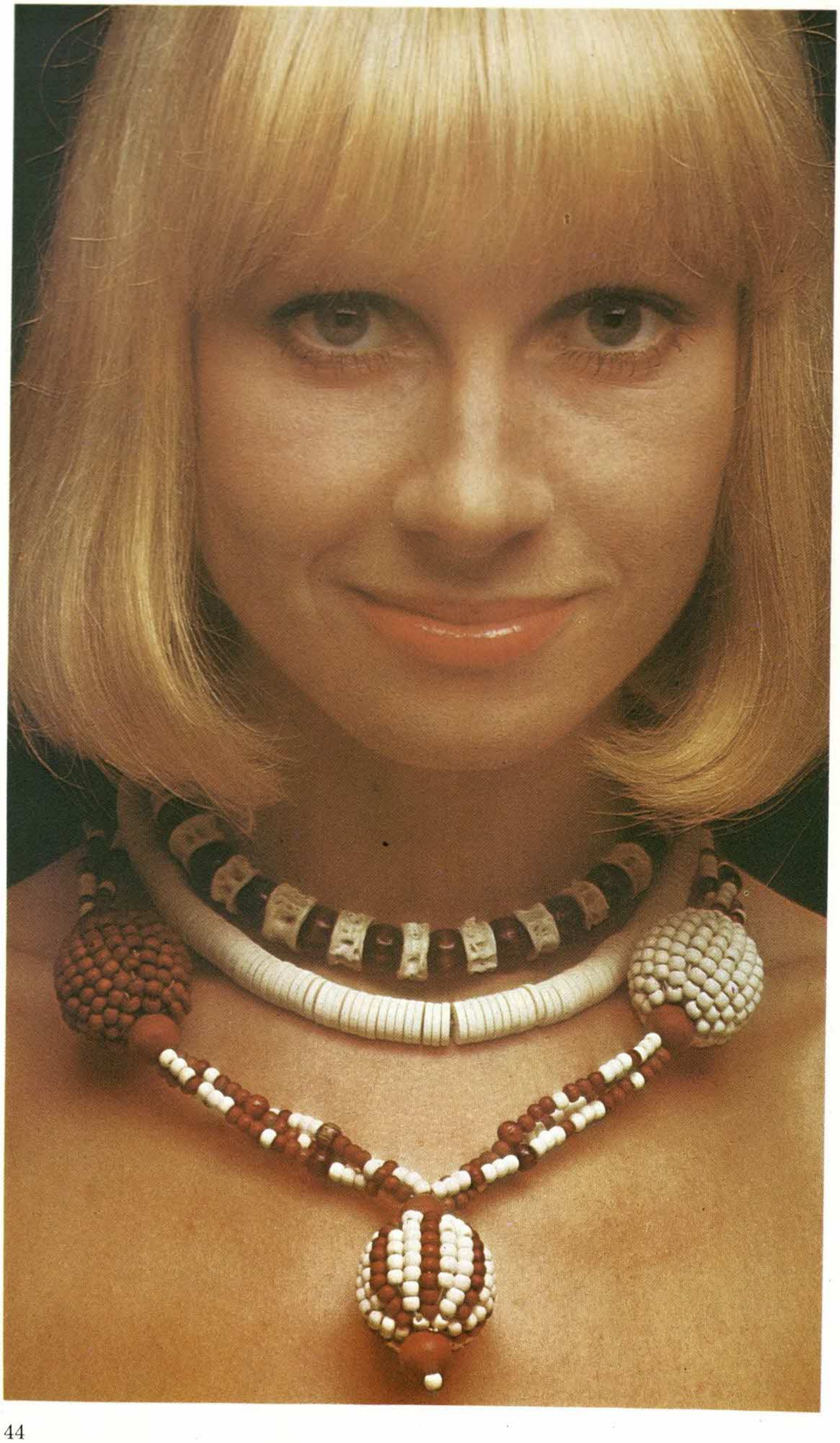
You can even use very tiny stars (made with wooden tooth picks for the cross pieces and very fine wool or cotton) to hang on the Christmas tree. They add colour in an original way.



Right: the very small stars are woven with very thin wool on wooden tooth picks. The wool is wrapped in the recessed method of under-over-under, described above. One star has plastic sequin birds attached to the ends of the arms, while another has buttons attached to the points.

Beadwork 1

The art of bead threading



Steve Bicknell

The first steps in jewelry making are also some of the most exciting. With the basic threading and knotting techniques, and an understanding of the right threads and fastenings, a dazzling treasure chest of necklace designs opens up. It also means you can go through your jewelry box and either mend or restyle existing pieces.

Making your own necklaces is great fun and the results are, of course, unique and very personal—and also surprisingly inexpensive. But before you get carried away with enthusiasm, it's well worth learning the appropriate thread, closure and knotting technique for a well-finished, durable result. There's nothing more irritating than an unknotted thread breaking and showering beads all over the floor!

Most modern necklaces fall into one of three categories. First there is classic simplicity, reminiscent of traditional ropes of pearls—long strings of smooth beads à la 1920s, perhaps knotted at the bosom. Then there is the delicate look which uses sequins, tiny glass beads and mother-of-pearl. Thirdly there is an important trend towards the primitive, with hand-made, slightly uneven shapes, marvellously contrasting textures and bold use of colour. Basic back-to-nature materials are much in evidence—wood, bamboo, metals, shells, clay, glass, bone, and even nuts, seeds, dried berries, animal and fish teeth, pieces of bone, scraps of leather and pieces of driftwood.

Where to find beads

Craft shops are Aladdin's caves for the jewelry maker, selling multicoloured beads as tiny as hundreds-and-thousands or as large as gobstoppers; wooden balls, natural or dyed, and polished in a rainbow assortment of colours and just as many sizes; knobbly textured, rough cut stones; bamboo and ceramics cut into macaroni shapes; glass beads—plain, iridescent or marbled, and discs made from clay, wood or—expensive but utterly ravishing—mother-of-pearl.

Some unusual glass beads which are inexpensive and easily obtainable:

'Eye' beads, which are still hand made in the Middle East, are believed to ward off the evil eye.

Rotelles are beads with large holes and look like round beads that have been patted flat.

Rocailles are the smallest of beads and come in a multitude of colours.

The model is wearing, from top: a choker of fish vertebrae with brown, round wooden beads; a plain necklace of round, creamy wooden discs; a chunky necklace of tiny cream and ox-blood wooden beads, interspersed with large polystyrene balls covered with beads. Designed by Karina Sterry.

Bugle beads, thin and tubular, are often used in elaborate embroidery.

You can buy buttons and sequins from haberdashers, brass nuts and washers from ironmongers or hardware shops.

Don't forget junk stalls and sales—secondhand clothes can provide antique buttons quite cheaply, and special stones or a pretty clasp can be salvaged from broken necklace pieces sold for a few pennies.

Once you know how to drill holes, mould clay and work metal, the possibilities for making your own jewelry are boundless.

What thread to use

The thread must, of course, be fine enough to pass through the holes of your beads, but sufficiently strong to carry their weight.

Synthetic sewing thread is fine but tough—ideal for tiny beads. It comes in a wide range of colours and is best used in conjunction with a beading needle.

Linen carpet thread is thicker and stronger. It, too, comes in a good range of colours and is useful for slightly larger glass or ceramic beads and small light wooden beads.

Fishing nylon 0.2mm (5lb breaking strength) from sport shops has the advantage of being almost transparent, but it is slippery and difficult to knot. Threading a needle and knotting are made easier if you first flatten the end of the nylon.

Foxtail is a strong, knitted metal thread useful for heavy, opaque beads such as marbled Venetian glass.

Shirring elastic can be bought in various thicknesses, usually only in black or white, and is particularly useful for bracelets without clasps, designed to be slipped over the hand. It is best used with beads with large holes so that the large knots can be hidden by pushing right inside a bead hole.

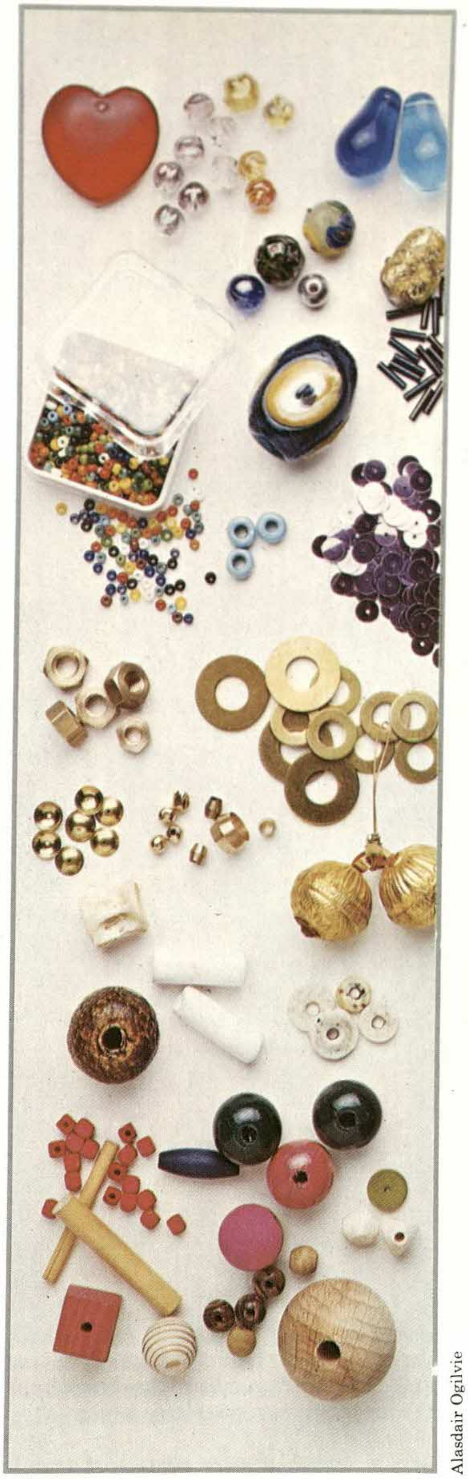
Leather is strong, chic and excellent for larger items. Rounded rather than flat thongs are easier to thread, but sometimes more difficult to obtain. They can be found dyed in a good range of colours and are rigid enough to thread without the aid of a needle.

Other useful yarns are bead silk, dental floss (obtainable from pharmacists), strong twist thread, thin cords and macramé twine.

Threading

Long thin beading needles are useful for threading beads with small holes, but needles of different gauges can be used as long as the eye will pass through the bead.

Some threads are stiff enough to be passed through a bead without a needle and other threads can be dipped in glue or twisted with soap to stiffen the ends.



Alasdair Ogilvie

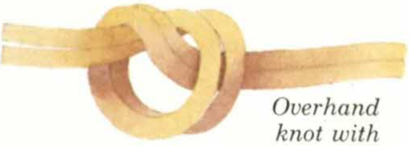
Beautiful beads—from top left to right: glass heart; small shaped glass beads; pear-shaped glass beads; blue glass lustre; Venetian mosaic; bugle beads; lamb's eye; rocaille beads (in box); turquoise rotelles; sequins, brass nuts and washers; gilt half cups; brass pipe olives; two Indian gilt beads; fish vertebra; white tubular rotelles; discs cut from ostrich egg; brown ceramic bead; large and small square red wooden beads; round and tubular wooden beads; wooden washer; white, many-sided beads; bamboo beads; round, matt wood-grain bead; small, shiny wood-grain; unstained bead.

Bead knotting

You may want to use knots for a variety of reasons: to space out the beads for appearance's sake; to space them out in order to make them go further; or to secure each bead, so that if the necklace should break, all the beads will not slide off.

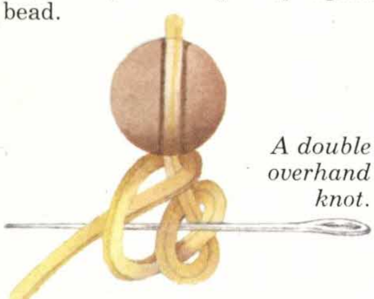
The knotting methods depend on the relationship between the bead hole and the thickness of the thread.

Overhand knot. If you tie an overhand knot, as shown, will it be large enough to prevent the bead from sliding over it? You will only be able to find out by trial and error.



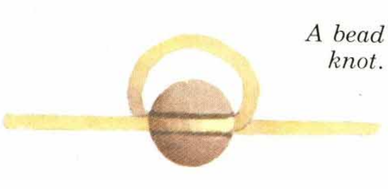
Overhand knot with double thread.

Double overhand knot. If you wish to knot the beads very closely, as for pearls, you will find it easier to make a fairly loose, double overhand knot, then ease it up to the bead with a needle, and pull it tight up against the bead.

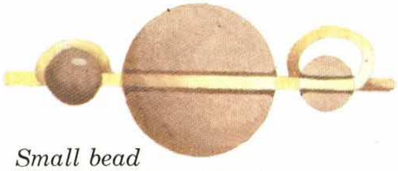


A double overhand knot.

Bead knot. If the thread is fine enough to pass through a small bead twice, you can string a small bead on either side of a larger one, passing the thread twice through the smaller beads.



A bead knot.

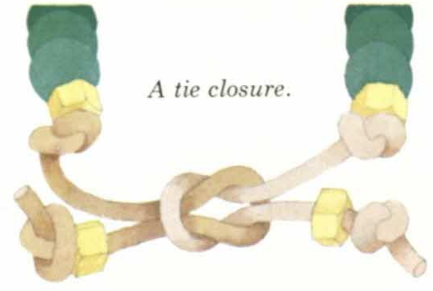


Small bead threaded either side of large one.

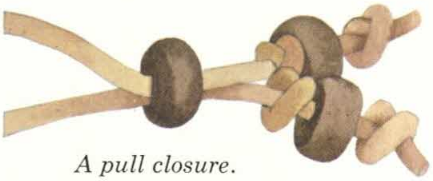
Choosing a fastening

Rounded leather lends itself to the simplest fastenings of all—tie closure and pull closure, which need no clasps.

Tie closure. Check the beads are in the centre of the leather, then fasten each end by making an overhand knot after the first and last bead. Leave 15cm (6″) then make another overhand knot, thread a single small bead, make a final knot and cut the leather. If the bead fits tightly the second knot can be omitted as illustrated.

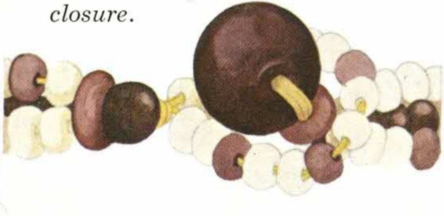

A tie closure.

Pull closure. When all the necklace beads are in position, thread both ends of the thong through a single, tightly fitting bead or washer. Leave 15cm (6″), then finish off each thong separately with overhand knots and a bead as described above.

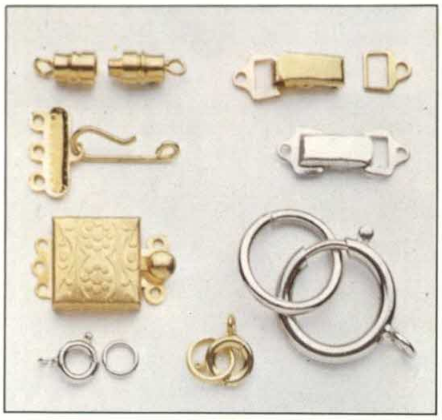

A pull closure.

Button loop closures can be used on necklaces threaded onto synthetic or linen carpet thread. Finish off one end of the necklace with a well secured, large bead, and the other end with a series of smaller beads threaded to form a loop. Make sure the large bead will fit through this loop, then pass your thread through the loop beads a second time and secure by threading back and knotting through several inches of the necklace itself. Alternatively, glue the ends of the threads before passing them through the last bead. The glue will adhere to the inside of the bead and hold it securely out of sight. Use this method for finishing off thread ends.

A button loop closure.


Anne Winterbottom

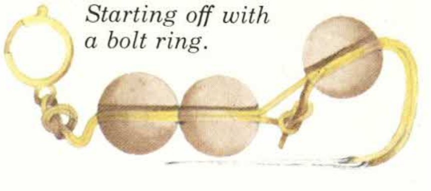
Metal fastenings (or findings). Jewellers and craft shops supply traditional necklace clasps, bolt rings and screw rings. They may also stock closures commonly used on watch straps, and hook and eye fastenings in various sizes and different metals. Some findings have perforated surfaces so that smaller beads can be stitched on.


Alasdair Ogilvie

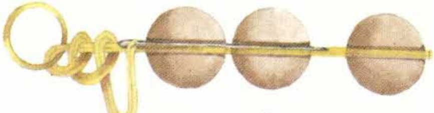
Metal fastenings—from top left to right; gilt screw clasp; gilt bracelet clasp (open); gilt hook and bar; nickel bracelet clasp (closed); gilt box clasp; large nickel bolt ring and jump ring; two small bolt rings and split rings.

Attaching findings

Bolt ring. Thread the yarn through the clasp eye. Tie an overhand knot with double thread next to the clasp. Tie the ends with a knot and snip neatly, so that, as beads are threaded, one of the beads hides the knot.


Starting off with a bolt ring.

Split ring. Finish off by looping the thread round the split ring, knotting and then re-threading the ends back through the last couple of beads.


Finishing off with a split ring.

Box clasps. For extra strength and a neat attachment, first loop the thread through one end of the clasp, then pass both ends of the thread through your needle and string the beads on to the double thread. After a necklace or bracelet is finished, take the thread ends under the tongue and the back of the clasp, and then take them up through the last two beads.

Washers and beads

You will need:

0.75m (28″) of round leather thonging
60 x 12mm (½″) diameter brass washers
4 x 18mm (¾″) round glass beads (2 yellow, 2 green)
6 x 12mm (½″) round flat beads (orange)
22 x 6mm (¼″) round beads (white)
2 x 12mm (½″) long oval beads (black)
2 x 3mm (⅛″) brass olives
One 6mm (¼″) brass olive

☐ Thread a white bead at one end of the thong and tie an overhand knot at either side to secure.

☐ Leave 15cm (6″) free for tying the necklace. Thread a black oval bead that fits tightly on the thong, or tie an overhand knot to hold the bead in place.

☐ Thread a white bead and 6 brass washers, then continue threading as in the picture, placing the large brass olive, flanked by the small brass olives, in the centre.

☐ When the last black bead is threaded, finish off to match the other end.

Two strand necklace

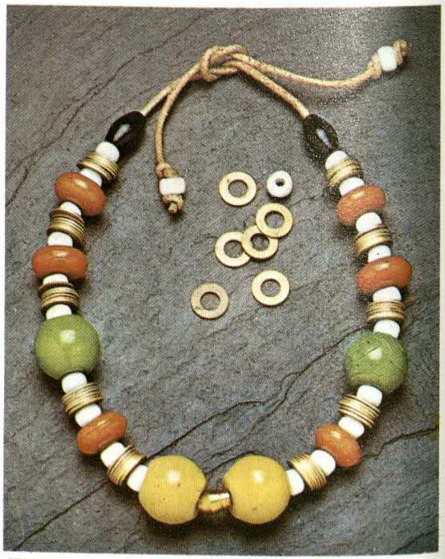
You will need:

2 x 1.25m (4′) lengths of linen thread
Blunt needle
Gilt box clasp with two or three attachments for thread
12 x 6mm (¼″) wooden beads (lime)
20 x 10mm (⅜″) wooden beads (lime)
16 x 10mm (⅜″) wooden beads (lemon)
18 x 12mm (½″) wooden beads (lemon)
132 brass cups
68 small brass or gold beads

☐ Attach one length of thread to the outside hole on the clasp, following the instructions above.

☐ Thread the beads as follows: brass bead, brass cup, 10mm (⅜″) lemon bead, brass cup, brass bead, brass cup, 6mm (¼″) lime bead.

☐ After the 7th wooden bead (4th lemon, 3rd lime), thread a 10mm (⅜″) lime bead, then a 12mm (½″) lemon.


Chris Lewis

Brass washer and bead necklace.

Continue threading, alternating the colours as before.

☐ After the eleventh large lime bead, thread the smaller beads as before.

☐ Fasten off in the outside hole of the other half of the clasp.

☐ For the inner strand, attach thread to the inner hole of the clasp. Work as before but with 9 large lime and 8 large lemon beads in the centre. Fasten off in the inner hole of the other half of the clasp.

Glass lustre necklace

You will need:

Gilt bolt ring with split ring
1.5m (5′) of linen thread (use double)
Blunt needle
27 x 10mm ($\frac{3}{8}$″) glass lustre beads (blue)
106 brass half cups
52 brass beads

☐ Fasten the thread firmly to the bolt ring of the fastener.

☐ Thread as follows: brass cup, lustre bead, brass cup, brass bead, two brass cups, brass bead, brass cup, lustre bead.

☐ Continue to the end, attach split ring and fasten off thread.

Glass necklace

You will need:

60cm (2′) of foxtail or 1.25m (4′) of bead silk or strong thread (double)
Blunt needle
49 x 10mm ($\frac{3}{8}$″) Venetian mosaic beads

☐ Thread the beads and fasten off very firmly, poking the knot back inside the bead and threading any excess back through two or three beads.

These beads are expensive, so it is a good idea to make a knot between each one for safety.

Red, white and blue

You will need:

Bolt ring with split ring
1.25m (4′) of thick linen thread (use double)
Blunt needle
14 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) tubes (red), 2.5cm (1″) long
30 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) rotelles (white)
15 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) rotelles (dark blue)

☐ Fasten the thread firmly to the bolt ring of the fastener.

☐ Thread as follows: one white, one dark blue, one white, one red. Continue this sequence ending with one white, one dark blue, one white.

☐ Attach split ring and fasten off thread in the usual way.

Beads and brass nuts

You will need:

1m (1yd) of natural, round leather thonging
20x18mm ($\frac{3}{4}$″) shiny, large-holed wooden beads (dark green)
23 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) brass nuts

☐ Thread the beads and nuts alternately. Make sure the beads are in the centre of the thonging and knot closely to each end bead. Thread a brass nut on each thong end, leave 10cm (4″) for tying and make another knot.

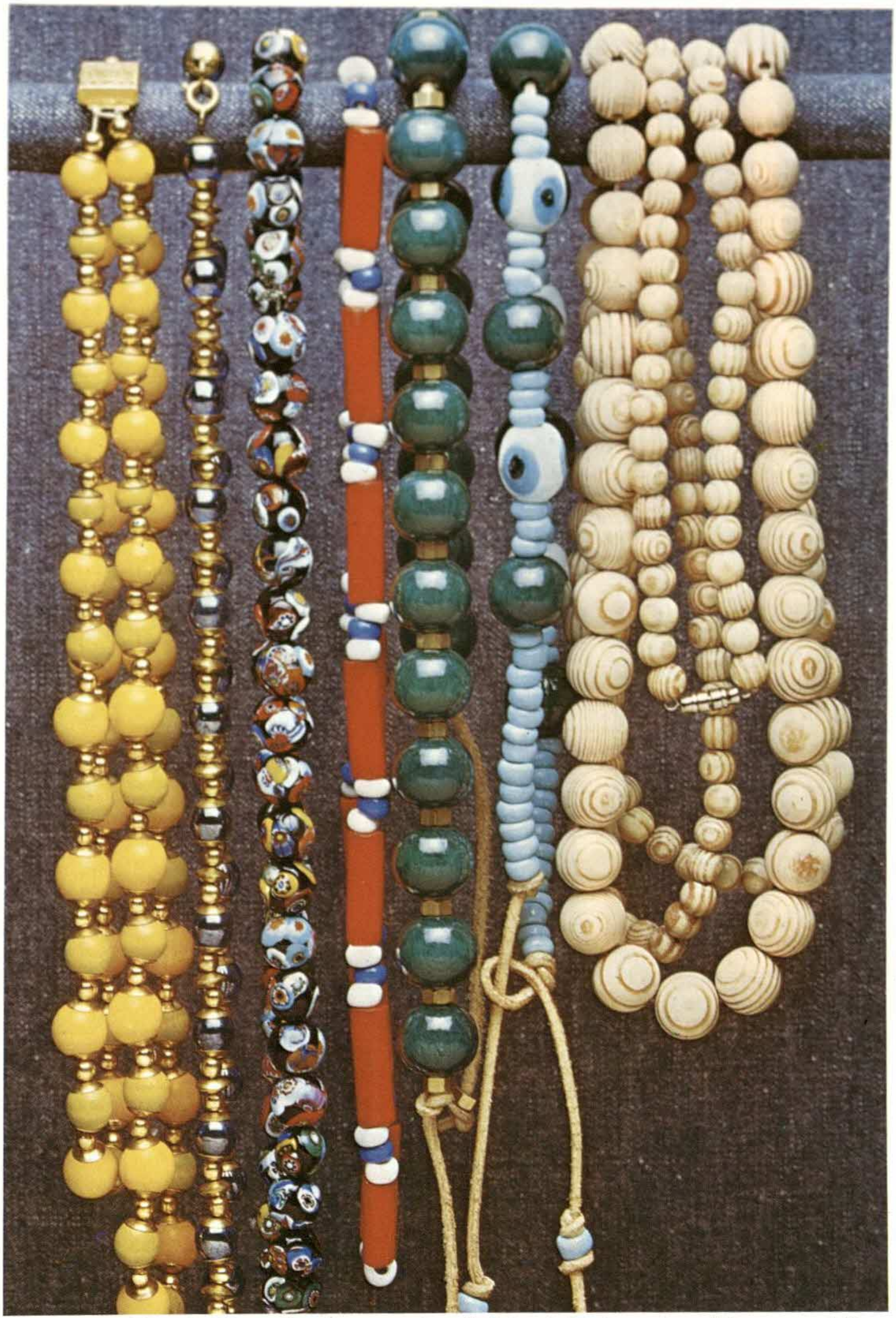
Lamb's eye necklace

You will need:

1m (1yd) natural, round leather thong
6x18mm ($\frac{3}{4}$″) shiny, large-holed wooden beads (dark green)
58 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) rotelles (light blue)
5 x 12mm ($\frac{1}{2}$″) lamb's eye beads

☐ Thread 13 rotelles, one dark green bead, 3 rotelles, a lamb's eye, 3 rotelles and a dark green bead. Continue this pattern until the last green bead, then thread 13 rotelles.

☐ Make sure the beads are in the centre of the thonging and knot close to each end bead. Leave 15cm (6″) free for tying, make a knot, thread the last rotelle at each end and knot again.



Left to right: two-strand lemon and lime necklace; blue glass lustres and brass necklace; Venetian glass beads; red, white and blue necklace; green bead and brass nut necklace; lamb's eye necklace; graduated wood-grain beads. Designed by Karina Sterry.

Long wood necklace

You will need:

3.5m (11′) linen thread (used double)
Blunt needle
Nickel screw clasp
80 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) wood grain beads
40 x 10mm ($\frac{3}{8}$″) wood grain beads
25 x 16mm ($\frac{5}{8}$″) wood grain beads

Attach the thread to the screw fastening and thread 40 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) beads, 20 x 10mm ($\frac{3}{8}$″), 25 x 16mm ($\frac{5}{8}$″), 20 x 10mm ($\frac{3}{8}$″) and 40 x 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) beads.

☐ Attach to other half of fastening.

Hard edge designing

Hard edge painting is one of the easiest and most effective techniques for decorative painting. It is achieved by painting against strips of masking tape. When the tape is removed, a perfectly straight, hard edge remains. This process is excellent for all kinds of striped or abstract patterns. It is primarily useful for decorating walls, but the same technique can be used for applying designs to furniture, floors — even on suitcases.

Preparing the surface. It is vital to have the right surface to work on — it must be smooth, free from old flaking paint and solid, not papered, as the tape might peel the paper when it is removed. It is best to cover the surface first with a good quality emulsion or latex paint.

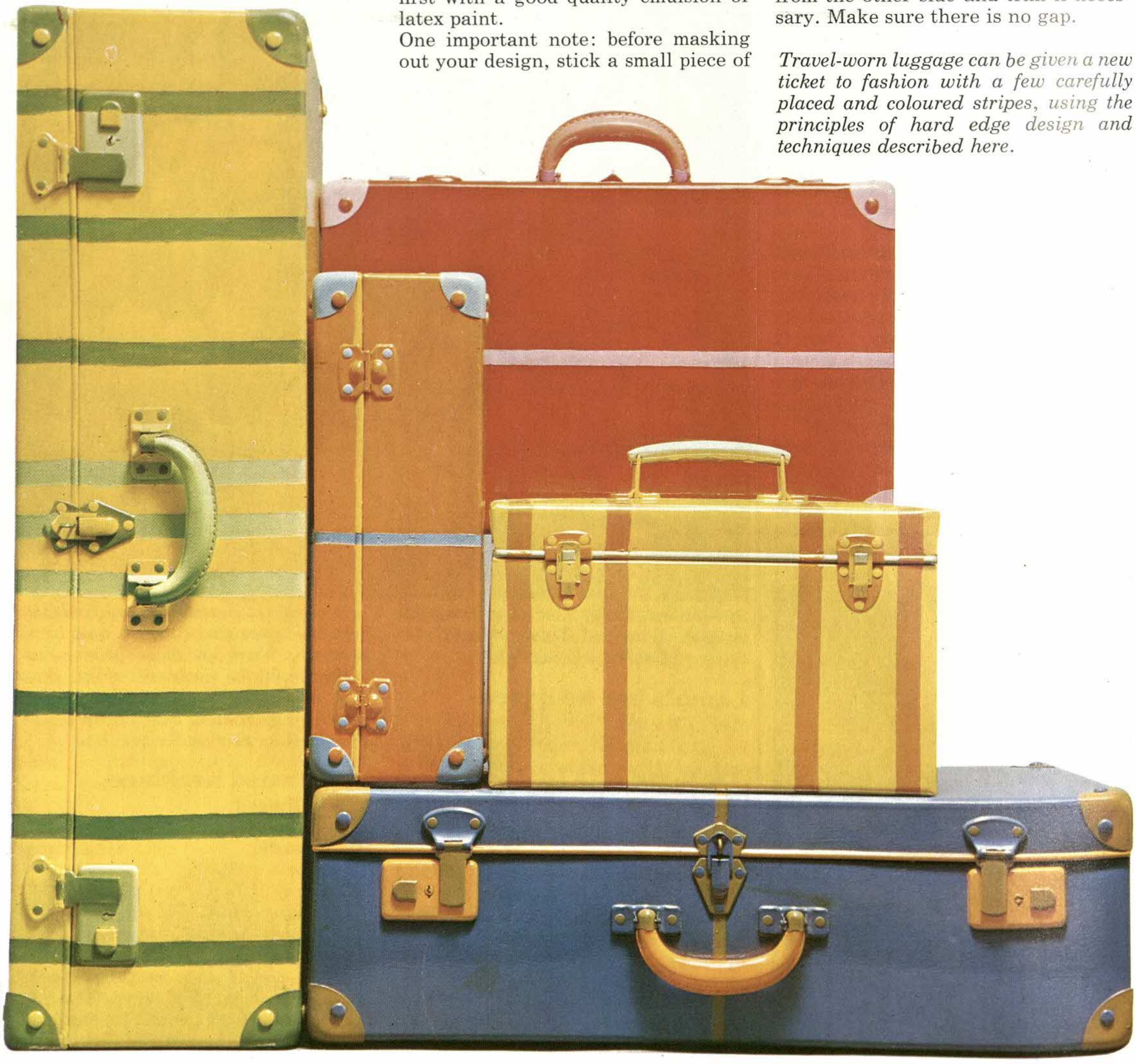
One important note: before masking out your design, stick a small piece of tape on to the surface in an inconspicuous place. Press it firmly, wait a moment, and peel it off. It should come away cleanly without ripping the paint. There are special low-tack tapes for paint masking which you should use. Ordinary masking tape is more likely to damage the paint. *Never use transparent tape:* it's particularly damaging to a painted surface.

Basic principles

Use a ruler and a pencil to mark all the design lines. A carpenter's square will be useful for marking right angles and a spirit level for horizontal lines.

Stick the masking tape carefully along these lines, leaving any areas of light colour unmasked so that they can be painted first.

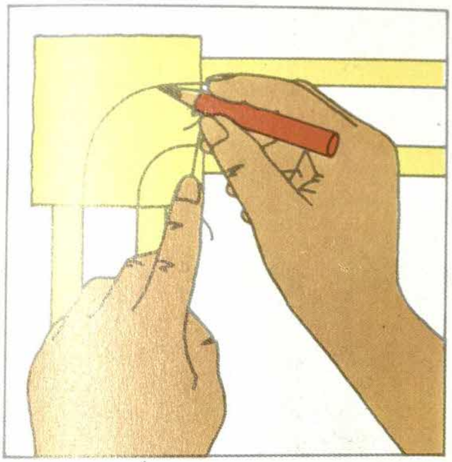
Angled corners. Lay the masking tape from one side of the corner over that from the other side and trim if necessary. Make sure there is no gap.



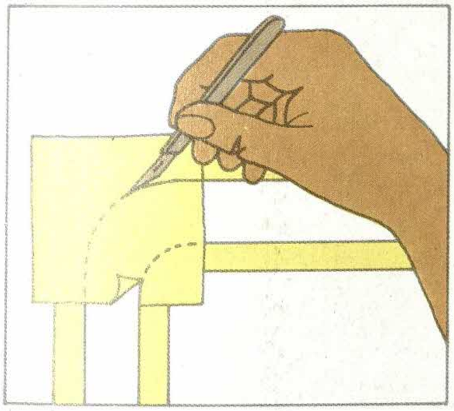
Travel-worn luggage can be given a new ticket to fashion with a few carefully placed and coloured stripes, using the principles of hard edge design and techniques described here.

Transworld

Rounded corners. Build up a solid square of tape over the whole corner. Using compasses, or string and pencil, draw the arc wanted (fig.1a). Cut carefully along this arc with a sharp blade and peel away the tape from the area you want to paint (fig.1b).

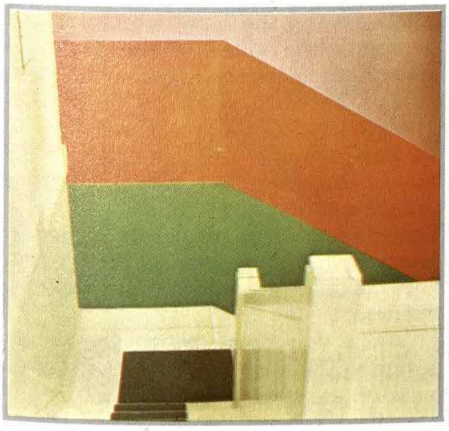


1a. *For rounded corners, draw an arc over the masking tape on either side of the stripe you are going to paint.*



1b. *Cut along each arc with a scalpel or sharp knife and peel off the tape covering where the stripe runs.*

From these basic principles you can create many different motifs. You can also use lines to accentuate an attractive window or break up a large wall.



Maison de Marie Claire/Reichle

Lighten your journey upstairs with broad bands of colour that follow each bend and curve of the way.

Jessica Strang/Pentagram Designs

A window that won't take curtains can be neatly covered in masked-off squares painted with gloss paint—and it won't cut off the daylight!

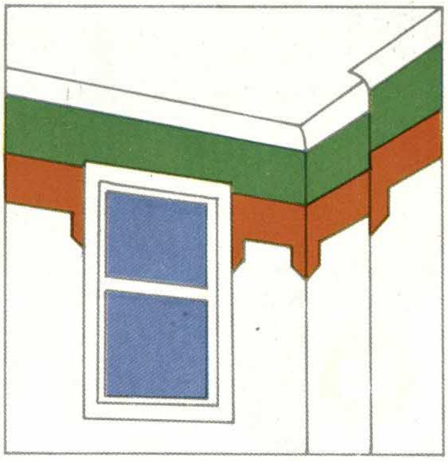
When you have finished masking, go over the whole area with a small wallpaper roller, or something similar, to make certain that the edges are firmly stuck so the paint cannot seep underneath. The longer you leave the tape the harder it sets, so paint as soon as you have fixed it. When the paint is touch-dry, carefully and slowly peel the tape off, lifting up the edge with a razor or sharp knife.

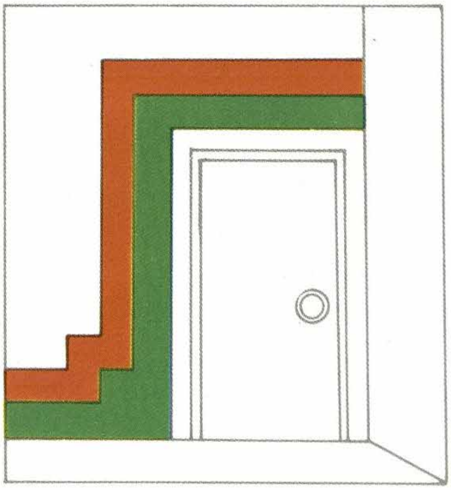
Suitable paints and brushes. If possible use sable brushes of a size appropriate to your design. For walls, a non-drip matt or eggshell emulsion paint is recommended as it should require only one coat. Use special floor paints, eg Liquid Lino, for floors.

Painting the design. Remember that you paint the areas between the strips of tape and that sometimes, as with checks, you may need to wait for certain areas to dry before you can continue taping and painting adjacent areas.

Now that you know the basics of hard edge painting you could go the whole way and paint a complete wall with a tartan pattern!

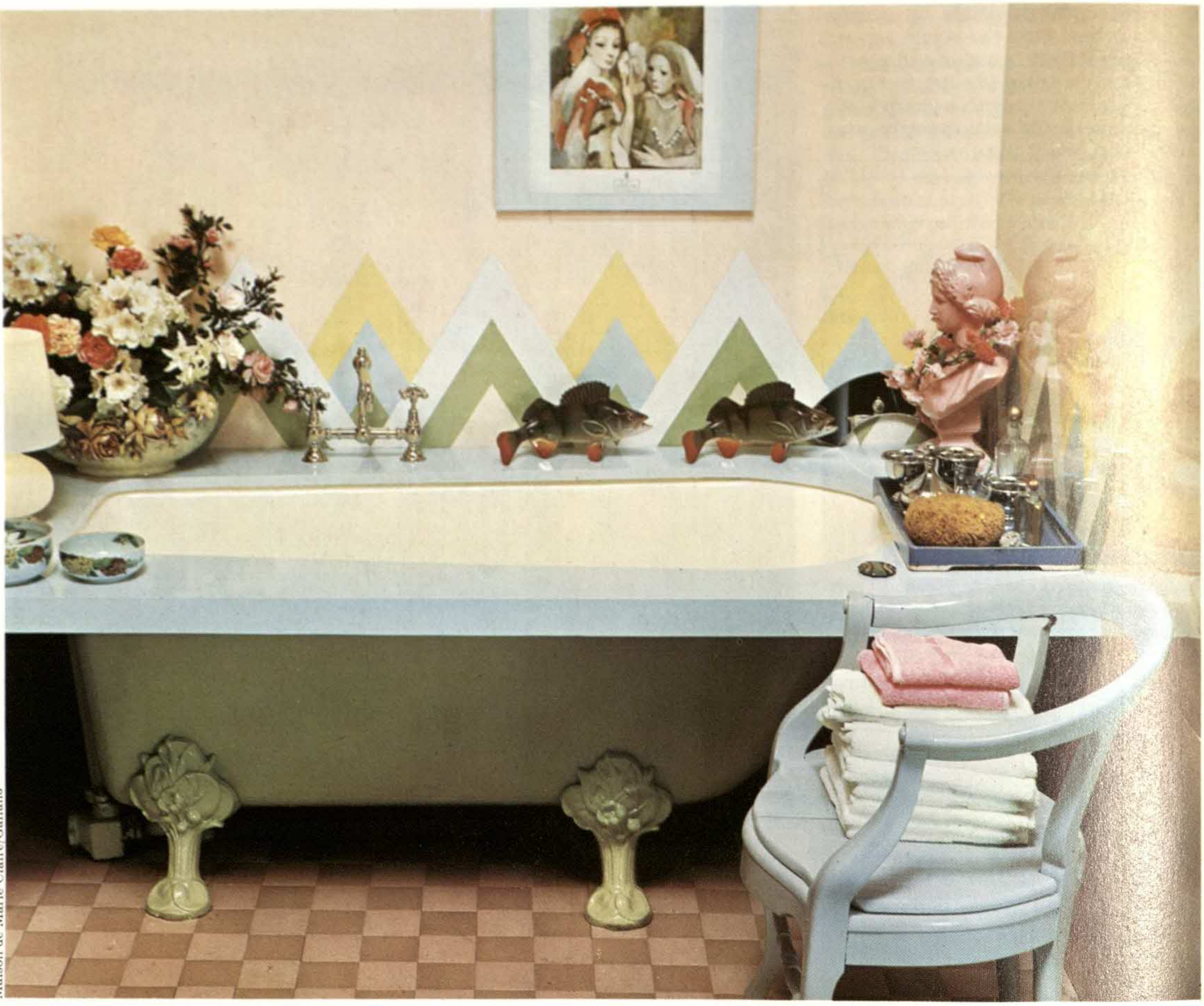
Paint any areas of light colour first and paint from top to bottom wherever possible. Make sure that this paint is absolutely dry before masking the edges to paint adjacent areas and always use fresh tape on a new area.





Victoria Drew

Lower a high ceiling and detail a door with hard edge stripes of colour that tone in with your decor.

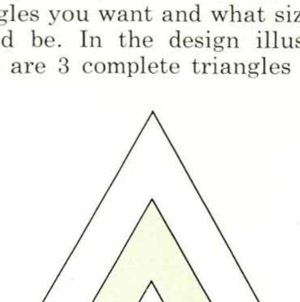


Maison de Marie Claire/Galland

Bathrooms need not be boring if there is a clever use of colour and shapes, not only in the ornaments you use but also in what you paint on the walls.

Pyramid frieze

Before starting to make this design based on an equilateral triangle (where each side is equal to the base), measure the width of your wall or the surface to be painted, and decide how many triangles you want and what size they should be. In the design illustrated there are 3 complete triangles across the width, with a $\frac{1}{2}$-triangle at each end. Each of their sides is $\frac{1}{4}$ the width of the wall. If you want 5 triangles, counting the 2 $\frac{1}{2}$-triangles as one, their sides should be 1/5 the width of the wall, and so on.

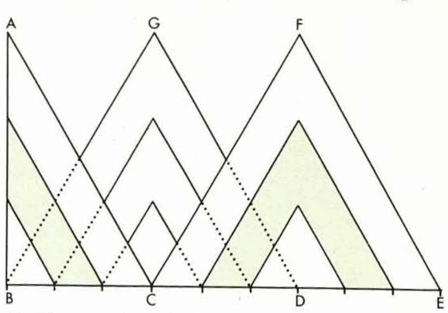


Trevor Lawrence

2. *The basic shape of this design is three equilateral triangles.*

☐ To make the basic shape of the design, draw an equilateral triangle whatever size you have decided. Do this on a piece of paper first before attempting to draw it on the wall.

☐ Divide the base of the triangle into 6 equal parts. Using these points, construct two more equilateral triangles as shown (fig.2).



3. *Draw the whole design with the triangular motif repeated.*

☐ Begin marking the front series of triangles on the wall, starting with the $\frac{1}{2}$-triangle at one end (fig.3 ABC). The bases of the triangles should just touch to form a straight line, ending with another $\frac{1}{2}$-triangle at the other end to complete the front row.

☐ To draw the back series of triangles follow exactly the same principle, only terminate the sides of the triangles where they meet the sides of the front series. Therefore, draw an equilateral triangle (fig.3 GBD), but don't draw in the dotted lines. The mid-point of the base of this triangle is where the front triangles touch.

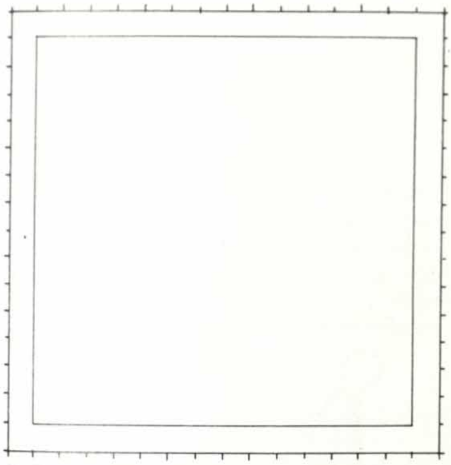
Continue marking off points along the bases of the triangles and drawing in lines as in Fig.2. Repeat throughout the design.

☐ When you have drawn the whole design in this way, use masking tape to mask off each area of colour in turn, as described above. Make sure when painting that each colour is completely dry before you start to paint the colour next to it.

Chevron design

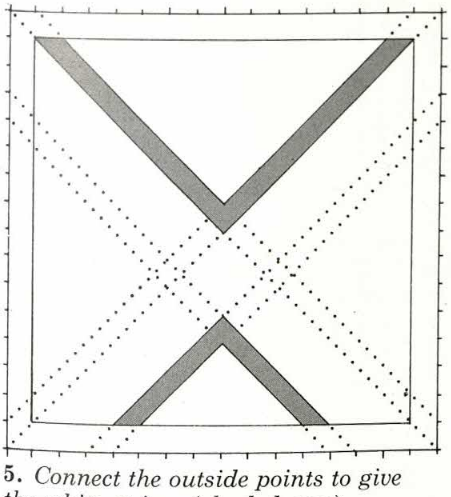
When painting patterns such as this, where bands of different colours overlap, arrange the work so that you begin by painting the lightest colours. Draw the design on paper first to decide on your colour scheme—experiment with different colours and shapes to make a variety of designs.

☐ To make the design illustrated, draw a square to the size required. This forms the outer boundary of the design. Divide each side into 16 equal segments. Draw an inner square as shown (fig.4). All the diagonal lines of this design stop at the inner square. As this boundary will be black, do not paint it yet—it will cover any imperfections at the ends of the coloured bands.



4. *Mark off the boundary square.*

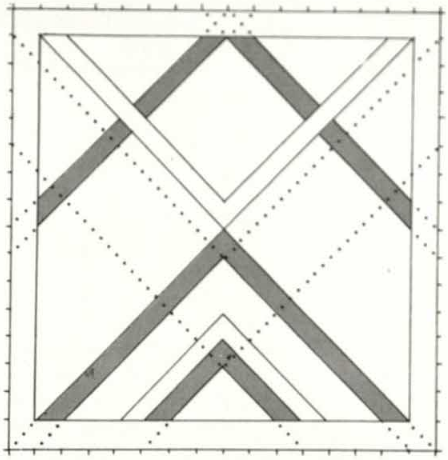
☐ To draw the white stripes, draw lines connecting the points marked on the outer square (fig.5). The dotted lines need not be drawn in.



5. *Connect the outside points to give the white stripes (shaded grey).*

☐ Paint the shaded areas in white at this stage. If you have a friend to help you, you can check the positions of the stripes with string held taut between the marked points, and then lay the masking tape straight down. Check the position of the tape before you start to paint—and remember to make sure that the edges are well stuck.

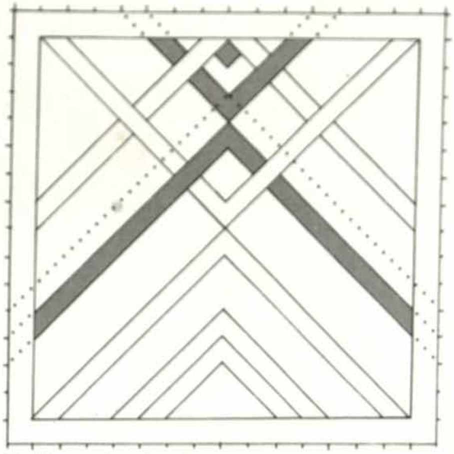
☐ To draw the light grey stripes, connect the points marked as before (fig.6). Where the lines intersect a stripe you have already painted, remember to lay masking tape over it. Paint in the shaded areas.



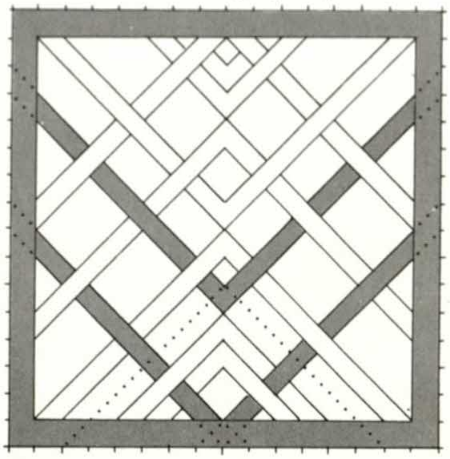
6. *Draw in the light grey stripes, which are shaded grey.*

☐ Draw the dark grey stripes following fig.7, and paint in the shaded areas. Where the stripes overlap a previously painted area, make sure you completely cover it. Use an extra coat of paint if necessary.

☐ Draw the black stripes following fig.8 and paint in the shaded areas.



7. *Draw in the dark grey stripes.*



8. *Black stripes complete the design.*

Paint a rug on your floor if you're not fond of carpets or plain boards.

Maison de Marie Claire/Galland

Dipped and rolled candles

Wax 1

The very first candles probably consisted of pine branches, saturated either naturally or artificially with resin or fat. Sketches on prehistoric cave walls and ancient Egyptian tombs illustrate the use of candles and Pliny, in the first century AD, reported that in his time candles in Greece and Rome were made from flax threads coated with pitch and wax. During the Middle Ages the poorer folk burnt tallow, the rich—beeswax. The Roman Catholic churches actually demanded that their candles be made with a very large percentage of beeswax and even today they must still contain 25% beeswax.

As well as providing light, another primary use for candles was to act as a clock. King Alfred the Great and his subjects were able to tell the time of day from candles that burnt a certain, marked-off section in an hour. And right up until this century, bidding times at auctions were limited by means of a pin stuck into the side of a candle; proceedings stopped as soon as the pin fell out.

Beeswax and tallow were the only solid materials used in candlemaking until the end of the 18th century when the Sperm Oil Fishery began producing spermaceti, which yielded candles of great beauty, light—and expense! However, with the large-scale discovery of crude petroleum in 1859, paraffin wax emerged as a candlemaking material and has prevailed ever since.

All the materials and equipment you will need to make the candles shown here are listed below. Collect together everything necessary before you start work. Some things you will already have around the house the rest are available from candlemakers' suppliers or pharmacists. Some suppliers produce a special beginner's kit to start you off.

Materials

Paraffin wax is available in solid blocks or in powdered form, ranging from pure white to cream. The grades vary widely but, for most candles, it is best to use a fully refined wax with a melting point of 57°C-60°C (135°F-140°F). The powdered paraffin wax is the simplest to use. You can also melt down old candle stubs and even your own failures. Plain-coloured pieces are easy to melt but if they are multi-coloured you will have to try to break up the component parts and melt them separately or you will end up with murky, brown candles.

Beeswax. You can buy this either in blocks or in honeycombed sheets of about 20cm x 40cm (8″x16″). Beeswax is expensive, so it's a luxury to use it alone—the best method is to add a little to paraffin wax. This will give your finished candle a superior gloss and will also make it burn longer.

The sheets come in natural and in several other colours and can be used alone to give rolled, honeycomb-effect candles. You will get about two large candles from each sheet. Any left-over scraps of beeswax sheet can be melted down and added to ordinary paraffin wax in the normal way.

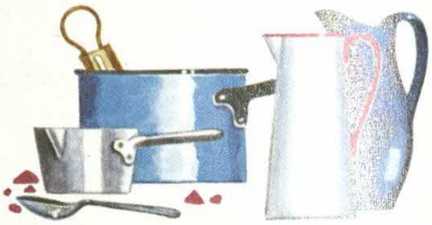
Beekeepers, after they have removed their honey, can melt down the rest in boiling water. When it cools, the dross will have settled on the underside of the resulting cake of beeswax and can be scraped off so that the wax can be used.

Stearin. This is a white, flaky type of wax which helps dye to dissolve easily and completely. Stearin makes candles opaque (both pure white as well as coloured ones) and it is the stearin which causes the wax mixture to shrink a little and slip out of its mould easily. Use it in the proportion of 10% stearin to 90% wax.

Wax dyes. It is best to use these special dyes for candlemaking as opposed to any other kind of colouring. They are available in either powder or solid disc form and it is essential to take care when adding them to the wax —too much dye will mean that your candle will not glow.

Test the strength of the dye by taking a spoonful of the coloured candle wax and dropping it into cold water; as it sets, you will get an idea of the depth of the colour. So start with a little dye and build up the strength if necessary. For most colours a tiny pinch of powdered dye will colour 0.5lit (1pt) of liquid wax. The solid discs will each colour 2kg (about 4½lb) of wax to a pure, strong shade. If you want a lighter colour, cut the disc to size; if you want it darker, use more dye. You can also mix the colours so that you can choose from a much greater range. Powdered dye is cheaper but the discs give you a greater degree of accuracy.

Wicks. Candle wicks are made of bleached, woven linen thread and are usually sold in packs, sized according to the diameter of candle they will successfully burn. A 2.5cm (1″) wick will burn a paraffin wax candle 2.5cm (1″) in diameter. It will also burn a 2.5cm (1″) diameter hole in a larger candle so it is essential to choose the correct size, otherwise your wick could drown in a pool of molten wax. Likewise, a 5cm (2″) wick in a 2.5cm (1″) candle will burn down in no time.



Barbara Firth

Equipment

Thermometer. A sugar thermometer with temperature readings up to 205°C (400°F) is essential. While there is very little danger of overheating wax to the point where it will burst into flames, it is impossible to judge when the wax is at the correct temperature without a thermometer. Also, each different type of candle—moulded, sand or dipped—requires a different working temperature.

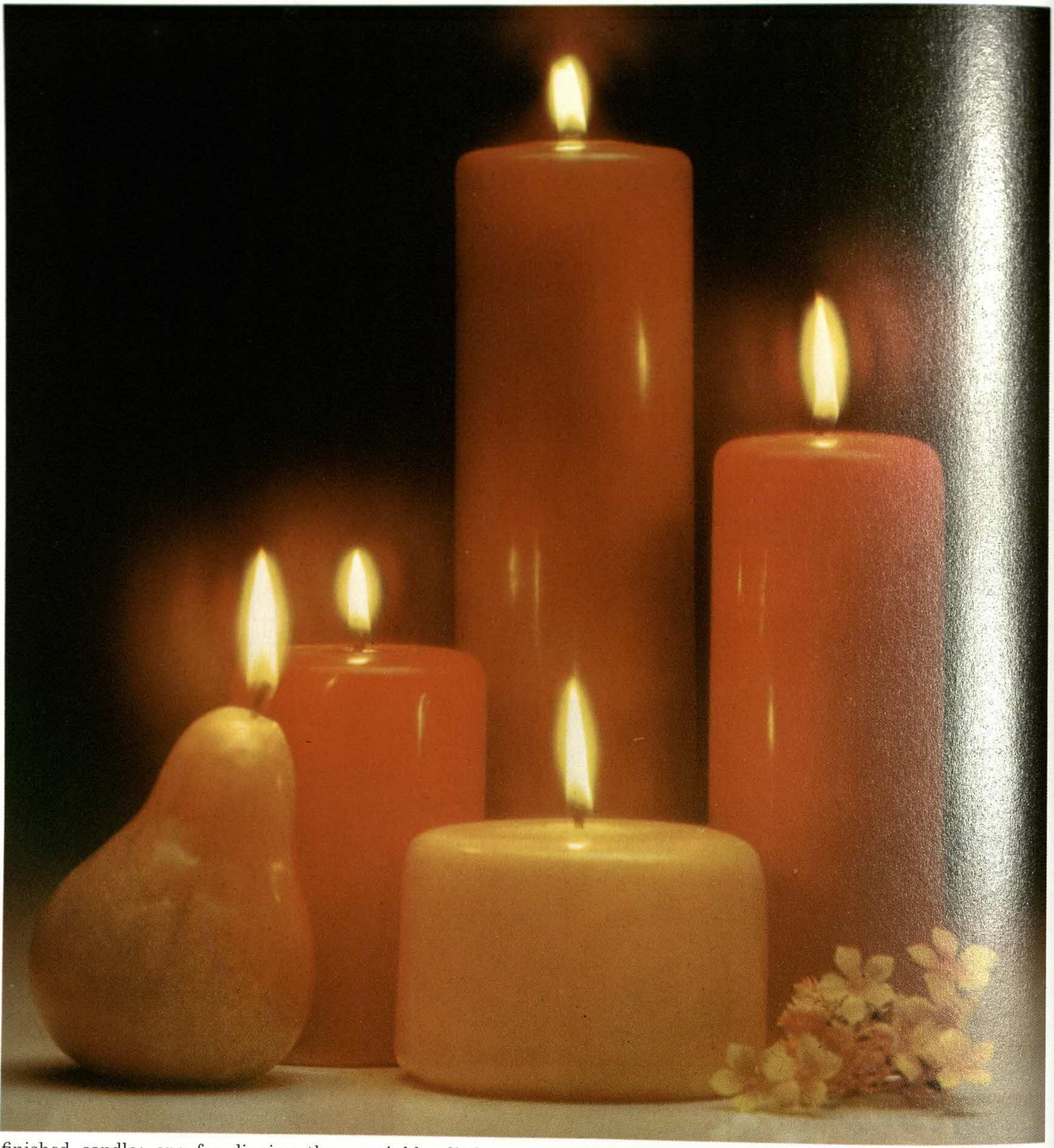
Don't leave your thermometer in setting wax and, if any wax sets hard, don't try and pick it off—you will break the thermometer; dip it in hot water and melt the wax off.

Saucepans and jugs. Large saucepans are essential. Although you can manage with one by melting the stearin and dye first, then adding the wax, it is easier to dissolve the stearin and dye in one saucepan and melt the wax in another, especially if the wax is in block form and not powdered.

You need two tall jugs (enamel is best), a little deeper than the length of the

Dipping can produce candles of varying thickness—tapers to chunky candles. Those shown here are 25mm (1″) in diameter—the standard size for most candlesticks and holders. Designed by David Constable.

Chris Lewis



Steve Bicknell

The pear was made by dipping progressively less and less of the candle so that it became fuller towards the bottom. It was then moulded by hand when a little cooler and, when hard, the characteristic brown shading was painted on. All the other candles were overdipped to a different colour, then plunged into cold water for a glossy shine. Designed by David Constable.

finished candle: one for dipping the candles and one for plunging them into cold water to harden.

Dipped candles

You will need:

1kg (2¼lb) paraffin wax
100gm (about ¼lb) stearin
Wax dye
Wick
Saucepan
2 tall jugs
Thermometer
Stick or pencil

☐ Melt 100gm (about ¼lb) stearin and sprinkle a little powdered dye or scrape some solid dye on to it. Keep on a gentle heat and stir until all the dye is completely dissolved.

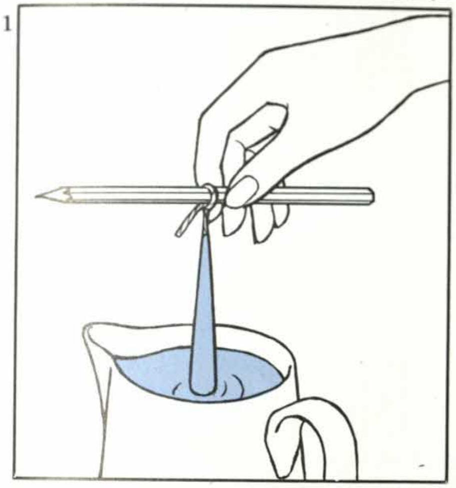
☐ In another saucepan melt 1kg (about 2¼lb) paraffin wax.

Never heat wax over a fierce flame and take care not to overheat, not to overfill the saucepan and not to splash hot wax either on yourself or the cooker—it will react in just the same way as hot fat. In the very unlikely event of your managing to overheat the wax beyond its flash point, turn off the flame and try to cover the pan (with its lid if possible)—don't attempt to carry it!

☐ Add the wax to the stearin/dye mixture and heat to 82°C (180F°).

☐ Fill a jug with wax. Tie one end of the chosen wick length to a small stick or pencil and dip the wick into the wax. Remove it, pull it straight and hold it in the air for about 30 seconds until the wax hardens.

☐ Dip again and again until the candle is the right thickness for the wick (fig.1). Then hang it up to harden naturally.



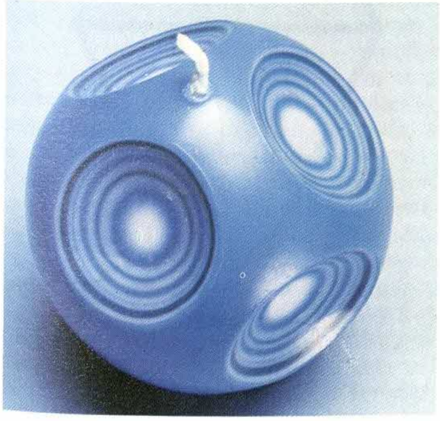
1. *Tie the end of the wick to a stick or pencil and dip it into the hot wax. Pull it so that the waxed wick hardens straight, then continue dipping until the candle is the required size.*

The wax in the jug may well cool before the desired thickness is reached; bubbles appearing on the surface of the wax or on the last layer on the candle show that the wax has cooled. When this happens, re-heat the wax to 82°C (180°F) before you dip again.

Depending on how wide a neck the jug has, you can dip more than one candle at the same time. Plunge the finished candle into a tall jug of cold water.

Variations

Shaping. Candles can be moulded to shape between dips. Build up the candle to about 12mm ($\frac{1}{2}''$) in diameter, then dip progressively less of the candle in the wax from a quarter of the way down the candle only, so that the lower part begins to thicken. At this stage roll the candle between your hands to the shape you want. A pear-shaped candle can be made in this way.

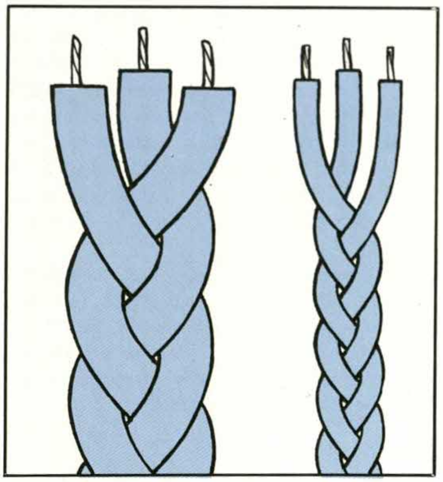


Candle dipped in layers, hand-moulded into a ball and sections carved out.

Carving. By dipping a length of wick into a succession of different colours and building each one up to about 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}''$) thick, you can form multi-coloured layers. For this process, the wax must be very strongly dyed or the layers of colour will show through each other. When the candle is quite cold, carve patterns in the wax to reveal the underlying colours.

Twisting. To twist a dipped candle, take one that is still soft, lay it on a clean, smooth surface and flatten it slightly with a rolling pin. If it sticks, slide a knife under it and turn it over. Tap the base gently to square it off, then turn one end one way and the other end in the opposite direction at the same time to make the twist along the entire length of the candle. Cool it immediately in cold water.

Leave the candle in cold water until it is completely hard. Wax takes a long time to cool and if you take it out before it is really cold, the candle will distort.



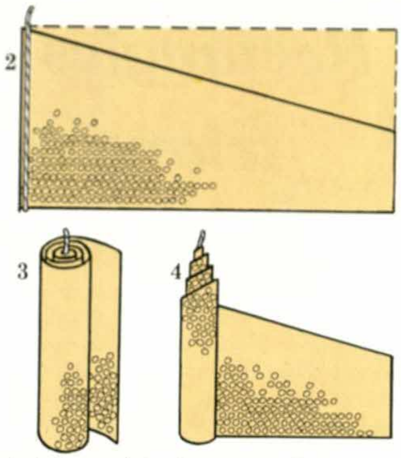
Plaiting a candle.

Plaiting. A plait of three different coloured dipped candles can be made very simply if you have someone to help you. Get them to hold the three ends as you plait while they are still soft and pliable. Cool at once in cold water.

Rolled beeswax

This traditional method of candle-making uses sheets of pure beeswax, honeycomb-textured and smelling delightfully of honey. As the sheets are usually workable at room temperature, you can roll a candle quite easily in a few minutes without heating. In colder weather you may have to soften the sheets slightly by warming them by a heater for a few minutes.

Choose a suitable wick for the finished diameter of the candle and cut it to the required candle length, plus a little extra. Lay the wick along one edge of the sheet (fig.2) and fold the wax over to cover it. Roll up the candles gently and evenly, making sure that the base of the candle is level (fig.3). Press the edge gently against the rolled candle to prevent it unrolling. Trim the wick to 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}''$) and dip the end of it in molten beeswax to prime it.



2,3,4. *Lay wick along one edge of beeswax sheet (the longer edge if you taper sheet) and roll up as shown.*

Barbara Firth

A variation can be made by trimming off the top end of the beeswax sheet at an angle (fig.2). Beginning at the longest side of the remaining section, lay the wick and roll up as before (fig.4).

Pieces of left-over beeswax can be used to decorate rolled candles. You can use two tapered sheets of different colours to give a two-tone effect.

Left to right: twisted dipped candle; squat bought candle, overdipped in yellow; red overdipped candle; brown overdipped candle; rolled beeswax.

Rectangles and triangles

Design know-how 2

There are several short-cuts to drawing approximate geometrical shapes by tracing around objects. You can, for example, use books to make quick rectangles, or use a set-square for standard triangles. You will, however, often need to make exact geometrical figures. Here is a reminder of some ways to draw accurate squares, rectangles, triangles and diamonds.

Squares and rectangles

To make a square, draw a right angle (Design Know-how 1, page 28) with arms longer than the sides of the square (fig.1). Set the span of your compasses to the length of the side of the square, put the pin at the right angle and draw arcs to cut both arms of the right angle. With the same span, put the pin at the points where the arcs cut the lines and draw two more arcs. Where these arcs intersect is the fourth corner of the square.

To make a rectangle, mark off the two sides of the rectangle along the arms of a right angle. Draw arcs from the end of each side marked, setting the span of the compasses to the length of the other side. Where these arcs intersect is the fourth corner of the rectangle (fig.2).

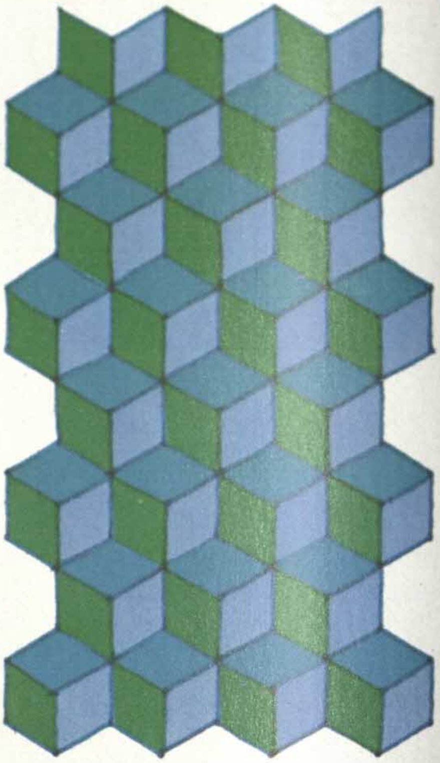
Triangles

Triangles are useful for patchwork, for geometric designs in jewelry and hard edge painting. A triangle with all sides equal is an equilateral triangle and one with 2 sides equal is an isosceles triangle. A right angled triangle has one angle of 90°.

Make a right angled triangle by measuring off the required length of two sides of the triangle along the arms of the right angle (Design Know-how 1, page 28), then join these two points to create the third side of the triangle (fig.3).

For an isosceles triangle use a pair of compasses or the string and drawing pin or thumb tack method used in Design Know-how 1. Draw a straight line AB, which will be the base, and set the span of the compasses or string to the length you want the two equal sides to be. With the pin at A and B in turn, draw two arcs to intersect at C. Join AC and BC to give the triangle (fig.4).

An equilateral triangle is a special kind of isosceles triangle, in which you set the span of the compasses or string to the measurement AB when drawing the arcs. Construct in the same way as for an isosceles triangle (fig.5).

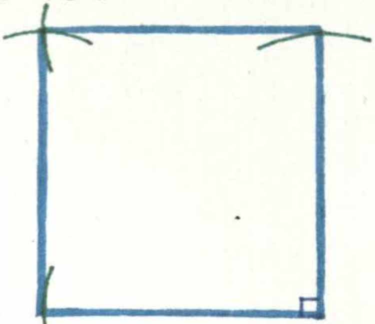


Diamonds made up from equilateral triangles fit neatly together to form patterns suitable for patchwork.

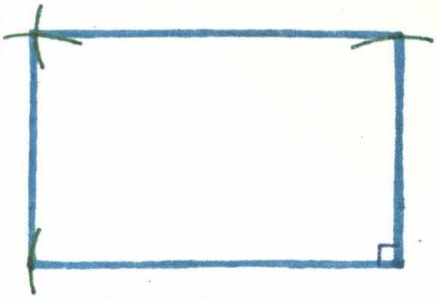
Diamonds

You can use two isosceles triangles to make diamond shapes. Place the triangles base to base: the resulting diamond shapes will vary according to the shapes of the triangles you use (fig.6).

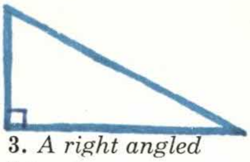
Victoria Drew



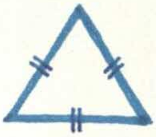
1. *Constructing a square.*



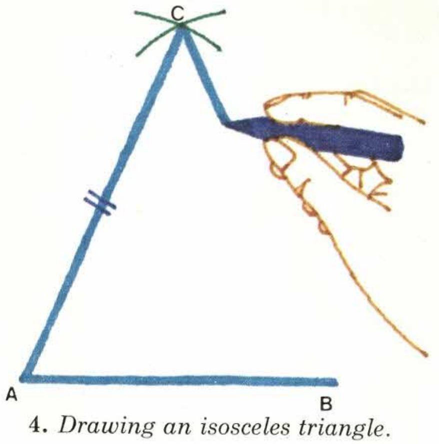
2. *Constructing a rectangle.*



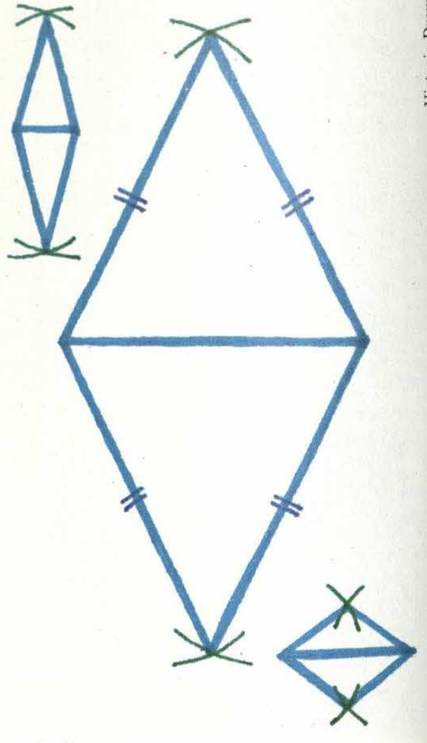
3. *A right angled triangle.*



5. *An equilateral triangle.*



4. *Drawing an isosceles triangle.*



6. *Two isosceles triangles, base to base, make a diamond shape.*

Creative ideas 2

Chris Lewis

Above: brighten up your desk with colourful pencils, pots and mugs.

Left: cover cosmetic pots, glass jars, scent bottles—store things in style.

Below: put appropriate fruits on jam pots; decorate a set of storage jars or re-use discarded glass jars.

Although decorating things with soak-on transfers is not exactly a craft, it is an entertaining and artful way of making everyday objects more attractive. We buy a great many products in plastic or glass containers that are used regularly for months—and it is a lot more pleasing to eat jam or honey out of a pretty jar, or to keep bath oil or salts in a flowery bottle, than it is to face impersonal mass-produced packages every day.

Most adhesive brand labels can be removed by soaking the container in warm water until the paper lifts off, or they can be peeled off like transparent sticky tape.

Some cartons have the brand name printed directly on to plastic and this can usually be rubbed off with a cloth or paper towel dipped in nail polish remover. This treatment also helps to remove the sticky film left by adhesive labels. Before applying a transfer make quite sure that the surface is clean and free from grease.

Transfers usually come in sheets, so cut out the transfer you wish to use and soak it in warm water until the design loosens on the backing paper. Place the paper in position and, holding the design in place with one hand, gently pull the backing sheet downwards leaving the design in position.

At this stage the transfer is still wet enough to slide around if you have to adjust the position. Smooth out any water or air bubbles with a tissue or soft cloth and allow to dry in position.

If you want to change the design, the transfer can be removed by soaking in warm water until it lifts off. If you wish to make the design more permanent (and waterproof), allow the transfer to dry and then paint over the surface with a thin coat of clear polyurethane varnish. But remember that you should not eat or drink from a polyurethane varnished surface.

Transfers can be applied to almost any smooth surface and can be smoothed around corners and curves as long as you treat them carefully. In fact it is easy to become carried away with the speed and simplicity of the whole operation and cover every available surface with transfers. So plan your scheme in advance—pink roses for cosmetics and fruits for jam jars.

Paper 3

Pop-up cards using cut-outs

The cards shown here are a more sophisticated version of the pop-up principle described in Paper chapters 1 and 2. The pop-up shape is fixed by two tabs to the body of the card and folded away from the card. The pop-up can be any shape you wish—it can be an illustration cut from a magazine or book, or your own painting or drawing.

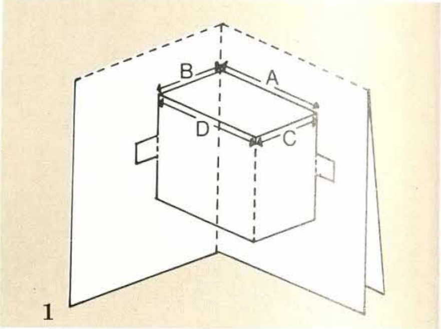
To make the basic pop-up

Using the same paper as the main card, cut out two tabs and stick them to the sides of the pop-up, as near to half way up as possible. If the tabs are placed too low, the pop-up will tilt forward, and if too high it will tilt backwards. The tabs should also hinge as near as possible to the widest points of the pop-up; if they are not hinged from the widest point they should extend past it. So positioning them correctly is a question of balancing these requirements.

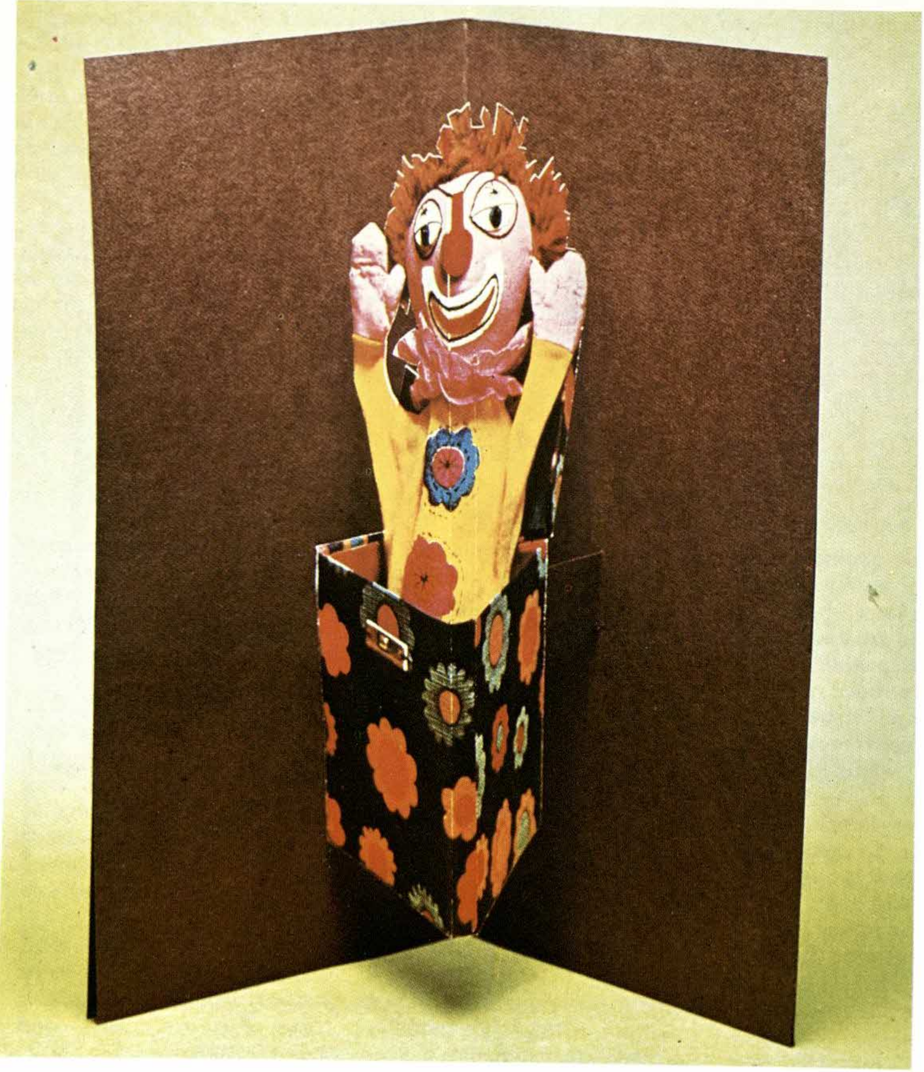
Fix the pop-up in position by slipping the tabs through two vertical slits cut in the card and taping or gluing them at the back. The position of the vertical slits can be determined by measuring the pop-up—the distance between the inside crease and the vertical slit should be the same as the corresponding opposite side of the pop-up (fig.1 where A=D and B=C).

If the cut-out shape is from a magazine or newspaper and is rather flimsy, it may be necessary to glue it first to a piece of paper to give it body. The paper needs to be dark so that the print on the other side of the pop-up does not show through. Use rubber-based glue rather than a water paste as it will not smudge the type.

All the cuts made here can be done with scissors, but the vertical slits are most easily made with an artists' scalpel and metal ruler.



1



Chris Lewis

To make the jack-in-the-box card

You will need:

Dark brown cover or Ingres paper, measuring 24cm x 52cm (9½″ x 20″)
Magazine picture of jack-in-the-box, or similar, measuring about 22cm x 10cm (8½″ x 4″)
Scissors, ruler
Rubber-based glue

☐ Fold the brown paper in half and in half again to make 26cm x 12cm (10″x 4¾″). Crease the pop-up shape sharply

2

in half. Find a point half way up the card and decide on the relation between this point and where the pop-up shape is widest. In the case of the card shown here, the central point on the left side of the card coincides with the widest point of the pop-up at the top edge of the box, so the pop-up hinge is flush with the edge of the pop-up itself.

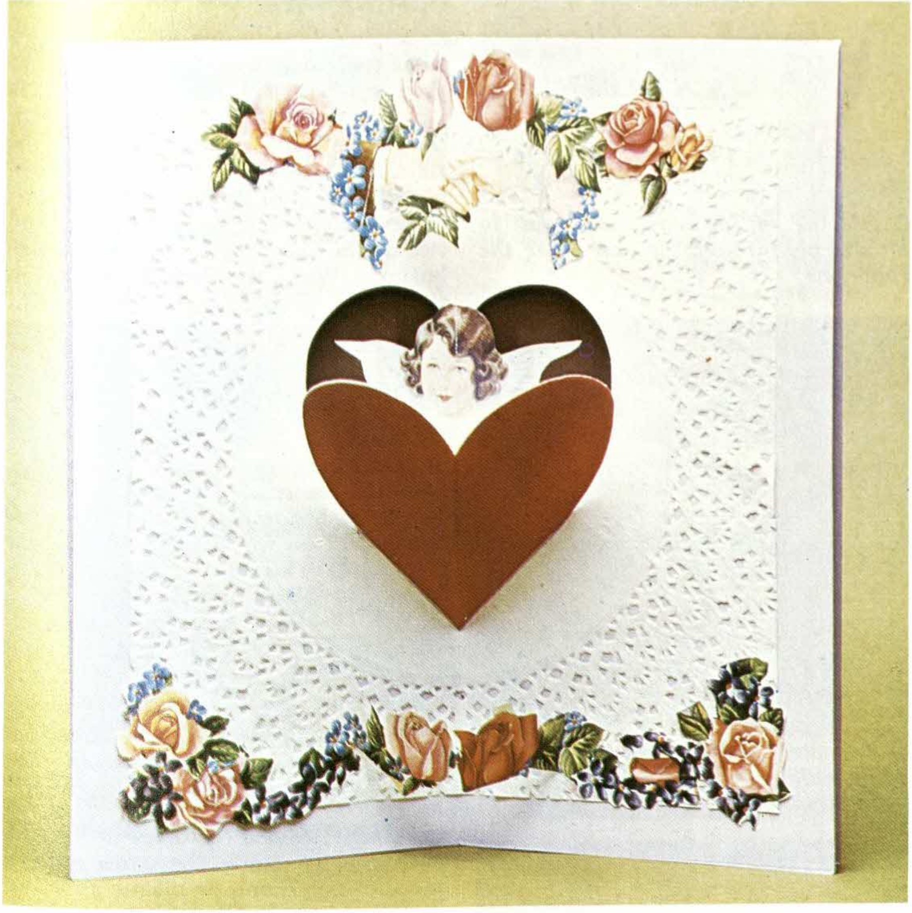
☐ On the right hand side, the widest point of the pop-up is the tip of the fingers, so the tab extends to this width before being inserted into the slit (fig.2).

☐ Cut two tabs from dark brown paper, 6cm (2½") long and 2cm (¾") wide. Glue or tape them to the back of the pop-up shape. Measure side C of the pop-up, from centre crease to tab hinge. Mark a point on side B this distance from the centre crease. Repeat with sides A and D, remembering in this case that the tab hinge is parallel with the widest point of the pop-up, the fingers.

☐ Open up the card and cut two vertical slits at these points, to the same depth as the width of the tabs. These slits can be cut with small, pointed scissors.

☐ Carefully slide the tabs through the slits, and glue or tape them to the back of the card.

Right: a cut-out butterfly is another variation on the pop-up theme. Add some flower transfers to complete.
All cards designed by Joanna Ball.



To make the heart card

You will need:

Lilac cover or Ingres paper measuring 35cm x 18cm (14"x7")

Paper doily, with a solid centre 10cm (4") in diameter

10cm (4") squares of red and brown gummed paper

Cut-outs such as cupid, hands and flowers, all with tabs added to the sides

Pair of compasses, scissors, ruler

Rubber-based glue

☐ Fold the lilac paper in half and in half again to make 17.5cm x 9cm (7"x3½").

☐ Keeping the solid circle at the centre, cut a rectangle 14cm x 15cm (5½"x6") from the doily. Spread glue over the centre circle and dot it over odd points on the paper lace, paying particular attention to the edges. Stick the doily centrally inside the card as shown (fig.3).

☐ Open out the card and, on the reverse of the side with the doily on it, mark a point on the crease line 4.5cm (1⅞") up from the lower edge.

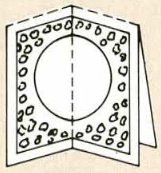
☐ With this point as the base and with the centre crease as the centre line draw a heart 7.5cm (3") deep (fig.4).

☐ Refold the card in half lengthways and cut round the top end of the heart through both thicknesses, to the point where the arc joins the tangent.

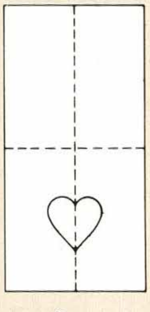
Fold the heart over from this point to the base of the heart (figs.5a,b). Work crease to and fro several times.

☐ Refold the card, and ease the pop-up into position. Stick the square of brown gummed paper behind the heart on the inside of the card and cover the heart with red gummed paper.

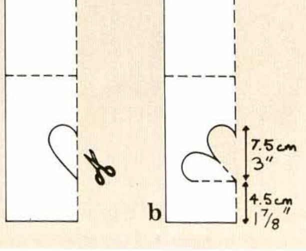
☐ Fold the cupid shape in half vertically. Open up, and dab the side edges with glue. Lay the card flat and position the centre crease of the cupid over the centre crease of the card, inside the area covered by the heart but high enough for the cupid to be seen when the card is opened up. Stick down. Repeat this process with the cut-out joined hands and flowers shapes to complete the card.



3



4



5a

b

Joanna Ball

Surface designs on clay blocks

The block is one of the simplest shapes that can be made in clay. Both natural and self-hardening clays can be either pressed and patted into shape using a flat piece of wood or an old butter pat, or sliced with a cutting wire. Using a wire gives accurate shapes for jewelry, models and larger objects.

Simple blocks

Dice can be made very simply by pinching off lumps of clay about the size of a pingpong ball, rolling them into a smooth ball in the palms of the hands, then patting them into a cube shape against a flat surface (fig.1). The shape is finished off with a ruler or butter pat (fig.2). Once the block is complete, impress the groups of numbers with the end of a ball-point pen cap.

Cutting wire

A cutting wire is one of the potter's basic tools: the wire slices the clay to give a neat, straight edge, so it is particularly useful when working with the essentially geometric block or slab. To make a cutting wire, you will need a length of nylon bead thread or fishing line, about 33cm (13″) long and two duffle coat toggles or medium size buttons. Wind the end of the nylon thread round each toggle and tie with a slip knot, or secure a button at each end.

Decorating blocks

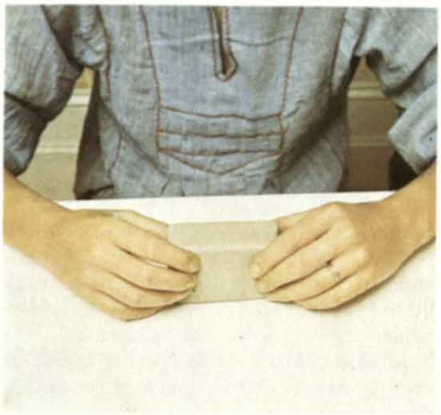
Once shaped, the block has great decorative potential—it can be impressed into, painted or modelled upon.

Impressed patterns. Impressed designs must be worked before the clay dries out. The decorating on these houses is done with a selection of 'tools'. Potters' wooden tools are cheap to buy, but it is just as simple to improvise with objects such as nails, sticks and knives, or whatever is at hand in the kitchen or workroom.

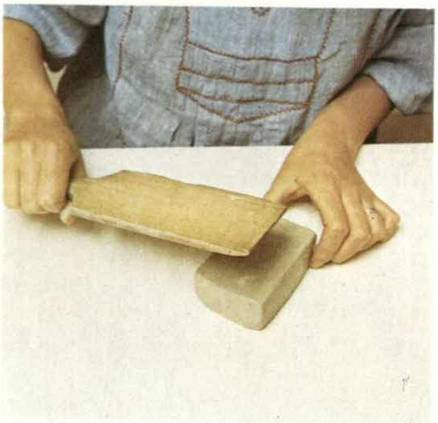
Using paint. Once the piece is complete, the clay must be left to dry out very slowly. Self-hardening clays, in particular, have a tendency to warp as they dry, so cover the work with a piece of polythene or plastic sheeting and expose it to the air very slowly.

When the clay is completely dry, it can be painted with poster paints, gouache, or Indian inks. Apply a base coat of colour and let it dry very thoroughly before applying the contrasting decorative colours.

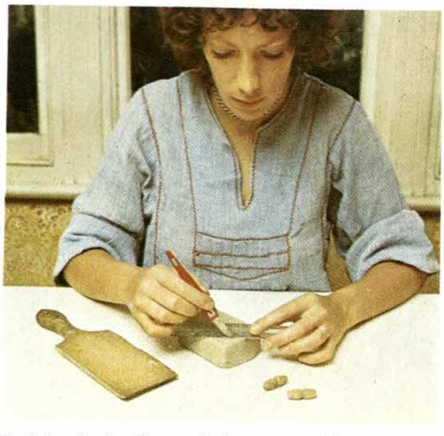
Modelling. Relief decoration can be added by rolling out a long, thin coil which is then stuck to the object to be decorated. If you are using natural clay, use a mixture of clay and water as the 'glue'. For self-hardening clay, thoroughly moisten the back of the coil and the tile surface and press the two together with the fingertips.



1. *Pat the clay into a rounded rectangular shape by tapping all the sides in turn against a flat surface.*

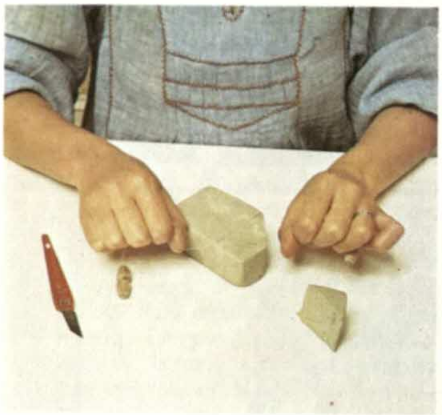


2. *Finish the squaring off process by tapping all the sides with a flat piece of wood or a butter pat.*

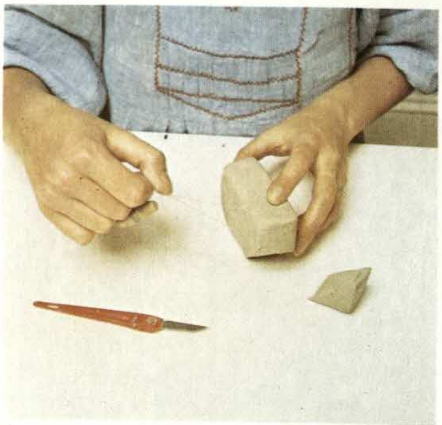


3. *Mark the line of the cut with a sharp knife or scalpel and a ruler.*

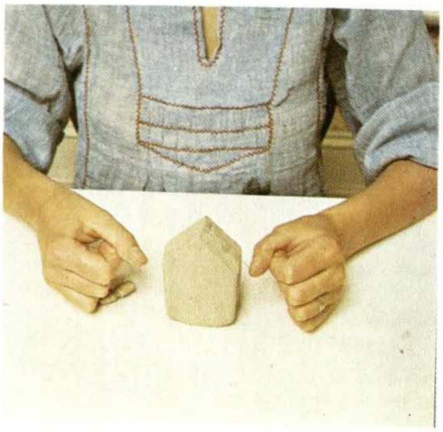
Nelson Hargreaves



4. *Use the cutting wire, held taut, to cut sharply through the clay along the guide line.*



5. *You may need to turn the block over when making the cut in order to draw the cutting wire cleanly through.*



6. *The clay block should not be too thick or it will warp when drying.*

To make the houses

The houses shown are about 8cm x 5cm (3″x2″). To make 2 houses:

You will need:

About 250gm (½lb) clay
Cutting wire
Tools for impressing
Poster paints and brush for decorating
Varnish if required

☐ Make a rectangular block shaped in the same way as the dice, then slice it with the cutting wire. Use a ruler and sharp knife to mark the lines to be cut (fig.3), in this case the gable ends of the house.

☐ Hold the wire very taut between the thumb and fingers of both hands and draw it down firmly through the clay to make the cut (figs.4,5).

☐ Check that the bottom is straight so that the house will eventually stand on end. If it is not straight, tap the base of the house against a flat surface until the bottom is levelled off.

☐ The finished clay piece should not be too thick or it will not dry satisfactorily, so cut in half any piece more than 4cm (1½″) thick (fig.6).

☐ Either impress patterns before the clay dries or paint and varnish when completely dry.

The blue houses are painted with a base coat of strong colour, after which the contrasting windows and other decorations are applied.

Modelled brooches

To make a brooch about 5cm (2″) wide

You will need:

Lump of clay about the size of a ping-pong ball
Poster paints and brush for decorating
Varnish if required
2.5cm (1″) brooch finding

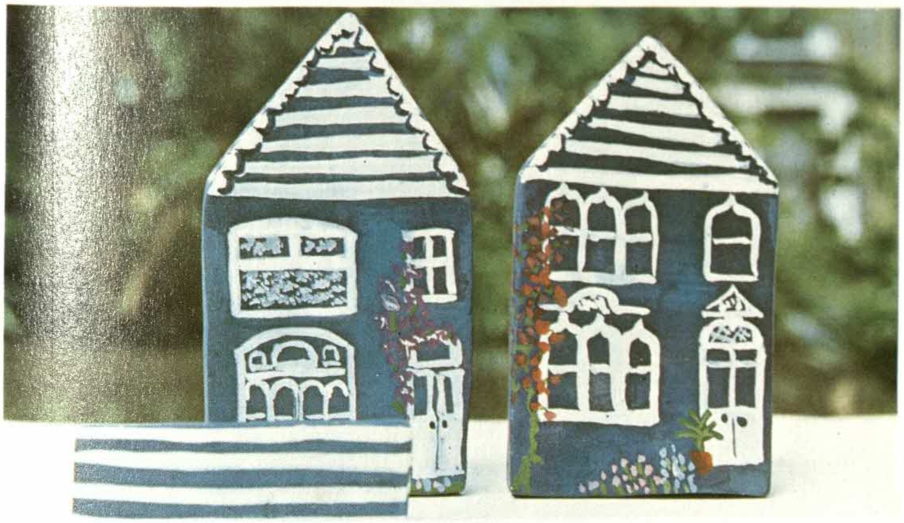
☐ The hexagonal shape is made in the same way as the dice and houses, first roughly shaped in the fingers, then squared off by tapping against a flat surface. Finish off with a flat piece of wood.

☐ The coil is twisted into the flower shape as it is applied to the brooch.

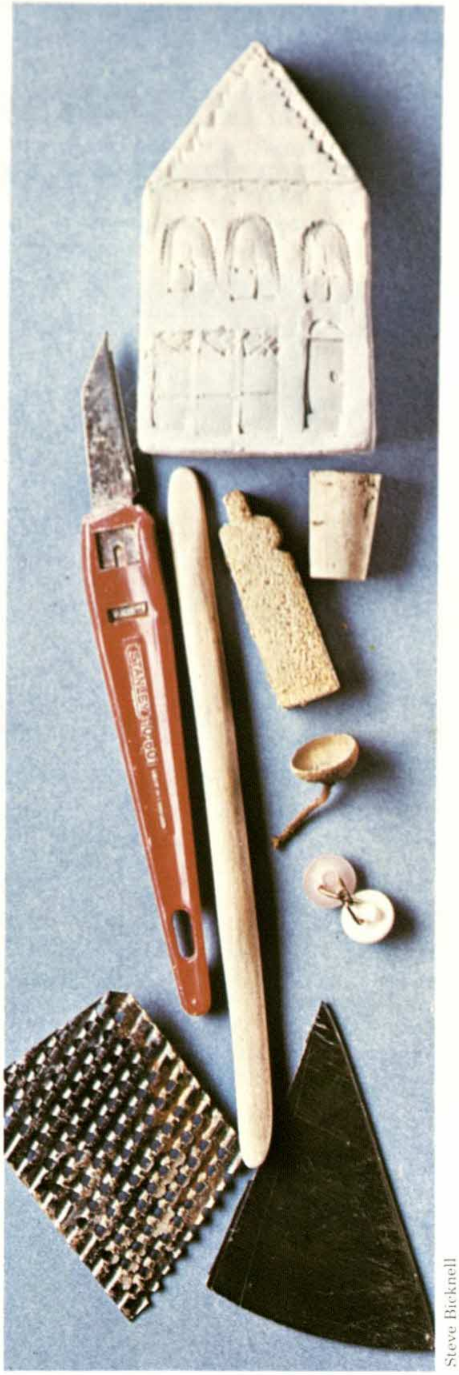
☐ When thoroughly dry, paint and varnish to finish. Glue a brooch finding to the back.

Alternative ideas

Model tiny blocks for original buttons. Model smaller versions of the brooches for ear-rings and pendants. Make larger ones to stick on the lids of jars, or use them as repeat motifs to stick on as relief decorations—as tiles round the sink or bathroom, for example.

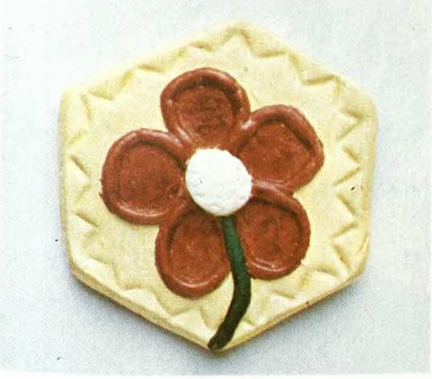


Make a miniature of your own house— just follow the step-by-step instructions.



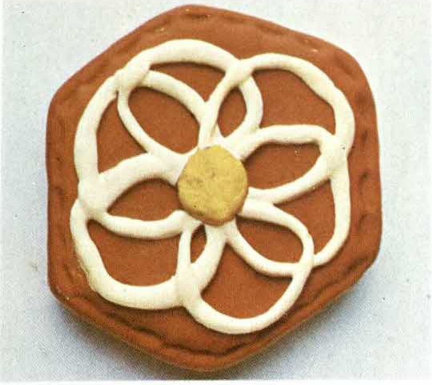
Steve Bicknell

Objects for impressing patterns.

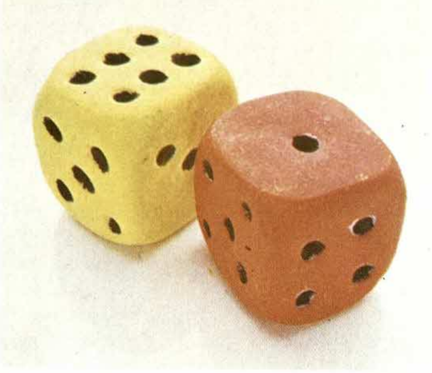


Nelson Hargreaves

Combine impressed and relief patterns.



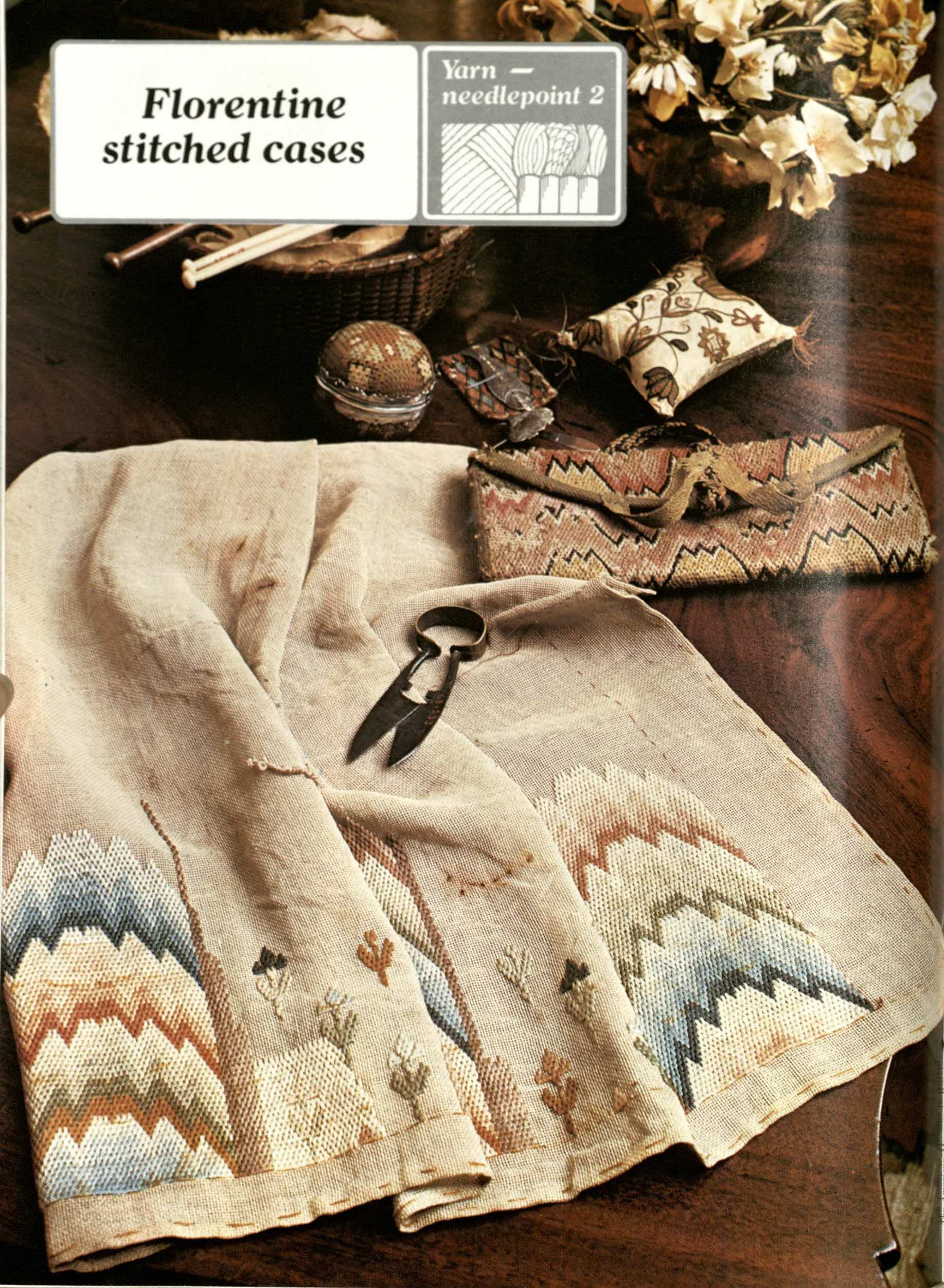
Add a flower in relief for a brooch.



Chris Lewis

Clay dice are decorative and useful.

Florentine stitched cases



Yarn	Length per skein or ball	Canvas size	Needle size
Anchor Tapisserie Wool DMC Laine Tapisserie Appleton's Tapestry Wool Appleton's Crewel Wool (4 strands)	13.7m (15yd) 8m (8yd) 13.7m (15yd) 27.5m (30yd)	14 threads per 2.5cm (1") single canvas	18
Anchor Tapisserie Wool DMC Laine Tapisserie Appleton's Tapestry Wool Appleton's Crewel Wool (3 strands)	13.7m (15yd) 8m (8yd) 13.7m (15yd) 27.5m (30yd)	16 threads per 2.5cm (1") single canvas	18
DMC Retors à Broder Coton du Pinguin	10m (11yd) 160m (175yd)	16 threads per 2.5m (1") single canvas	18
Appleton's Crewel Wool (2 strands) Clarks Linen Embroidery Anchor Stranded Cotton	27.5m (30yd) 15.5m (17yd) 8m (8yd)	24 threads per 2.5cm (1") single canvas	22

Florentine embroidery is the name applied to a whole range of needlepoint designs which are worked in straight stitch. Also known as Hungarian Point or Bargello, most forms of Florentine stitch are worked over four or six threads in a variety of patterns, creating strong, geometrical shapes and striking visual effects. As straight stitch does not distort the canvas unduly, you will not require a frame when making small objects.

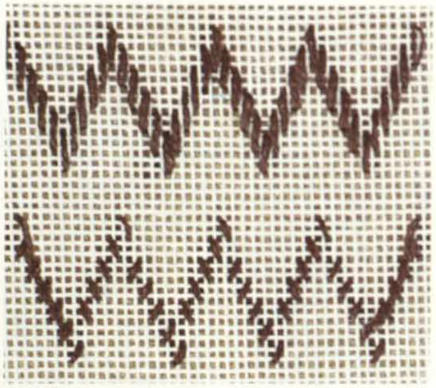
Although Florentine stitches can be used to create very elaborate and complicated designs, the simplest and two of the most characteristic patterns, zigzag and flame, look impressive but are very straightforward and quick to work. Each row of a separate colour is worked horizontally across the canvas, with either a step up or down from stitch to stitch. Once one line of colour has been worked, all the others will follow suit. If you have to join the yarn midway across a row, finish off the old thread by threading it through the back of the stitches and begin a new thread in the same way.

Zigzag is the simplest pattern of all. The zigzag base line forms regular peaks, which can be either very deep or fairly shallow. For small objects, a pattern that repeats about every ten stitches is suitable (fig.1). The stitches are usually worked over four threads and back two, which gives a pleasing regular pattern.

Zigzag stitch looks good either in subtly shaded colours, or in vivid, contrasting colours.

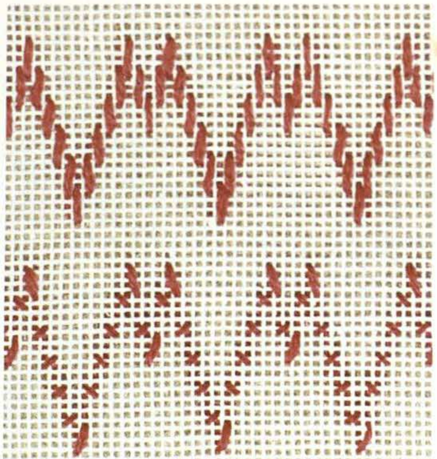
Left: 18th-century American silk needlepoint shows the subtle shading of flame stitch. Also used here (section with flowers) is bricking stitch; this is very similar to Florentine but is worked horizontally instead of in a zigzag.

The American Museum in Britain


Steve Bicknell

1. *Zigzag stitch, shown from the front (top) and the back (lower row).*

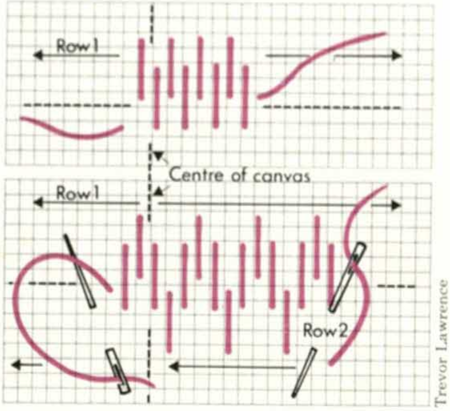
Flame patterns are slightly more complicated, forming steep peaks of varying heights to give a variety of designs. This stitch is usually worked over four threads and back one (fig.2). Flame stitch looks best when worked in a range of toning colours for a subtly shaded effect.



2. *This sample of flame stitch shows how economical the use of yarn is.*

Stitching notes. The easiest way to stitch Florentine is in two movements—put the needle in at the front and take it out from the back, putting it into the next position from the back. Repeat from the front. Working in this way it is easier to see the threads for counting. If you do make a mistake, cut it out rather than unpick it—the yarn gets so worn with unpicking it is impossible to use it again.

Base line. Most Florentine designs are begun with one row worked right across the width of the design—called the base line, although it is often worked in the centre of the canvas to keep the pattern symmetrical. Zigzag and flame can be started with a base line anywhere on the canvas and all other rows will follow automatically above and below.



Trevor Lawrence

3. *Above: the base line for bricking stitch, which is a very simplified version of Florentine stitch. Below: the base line for a simple zigzag pattern, showing how to start the second line.*

Pattern repeats. An important aspect of all Florentine designs is to make sure that the base line consists of a complete number of pattern repeats and that each side of the design is symmetrical. Both zigzag and flame stitch build up their patterns from one base line in such a way that they can be started at any point on the canvas. Once the first row has been worked, the others follow almost automatically. The pattern is repeated above and below the base line. Where necessary, work $\frac{1}{2}$-stitches at the edges to fill in the finished square or rectangle.

Estimating yarn length

As zigzag and flame stitch are always worked in horizontal rows, by calculating the amount of yarn needed to work one complete row it then becomes easy to estimate the total amount of yarn required to work a design of a given size. Working with a 46cm (18") length of yarn, stitch as much of the pattern repeat as this will work. Count the number of lengths needed to fill the row. Multiply again by the number of rows to be worked in each separate colour—each stitch covers four horizontal threads, so divide the total number of horizontal threads by four to get the number of complete rows. This gives the total amount of yarn required. The chart shown here gives the lengths of different manufacturers' skeins, so you can work out how many skeins you need.

Varying canvas sizes

A basic stitch like zigzag or flame can easily be translated on to larger or smaller canvas, using the appropriate yarn (see chart).

The base line is worked as before, but the number of pattern repeats will be different if covering the same area on larger or smaller canvas. However, if working a pair of objects, one larger and one small, then the smaller object can be worked on a smaller size canvas with exactly the same design reduced in scale.

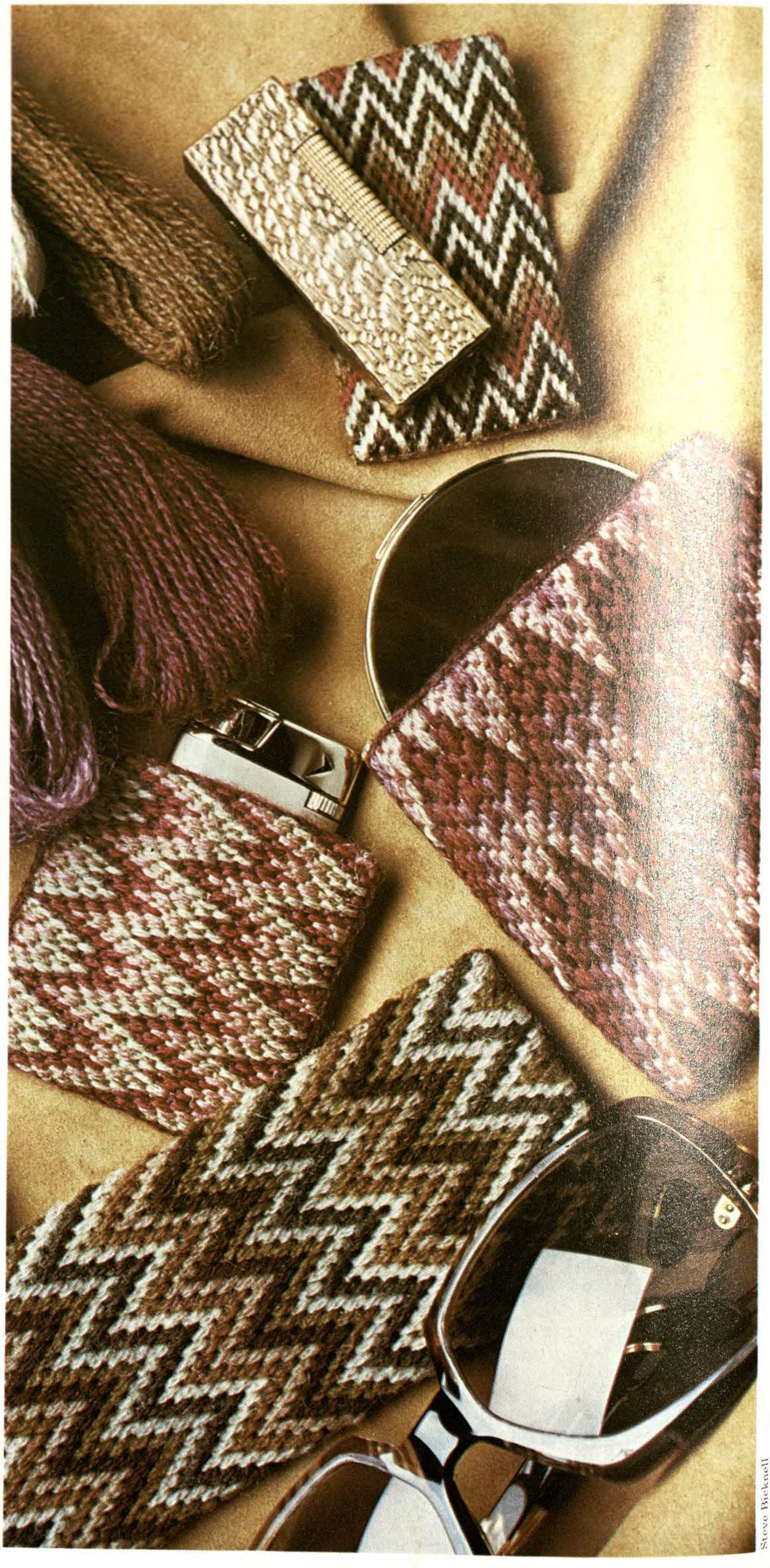
To calculate the pattern size on different sizes of canvas, count the number of threads covered by one pattern repeat. For example, in the patterns shown here the zigzag covers 10 threads and flame covers 14.

All canvas is measured by the number of threads per 2.5cm (1″), so divide the number of threads across the width you want to work by the number of threads covered by one pattern repeat. This will give the number of pattern repeats you can work in the base line. Remember to work an exact number of pattern repeats and to keep the base line symmetrical.

Pattern symmetry. If you are making a small object like a spectacles case, you can achieve stitch symmetry by counting how many pattern repeats can be worked in the base line, as described above. You can start at one side of the canvas and work in horizontal rows straight across. However, for larger objects like cushions this system is unsuitable because of the number of threads to be counted. So, for larger embroideries which need to be symmetrical, begin stitching at the marked centre lines of the canvas. Stitch the first row only from the centre outwards. Subsequent rows can be stitched straight across the whole width of the design, beginning at the point where the first row ends (fig.3).

Check carefully the number of stitches in the base line. A mistake is hard to spot in the early stages, but will ruin the completed embroidery.

If your base line is accurate there is no need to count stitches again.



Steve Bicknell

Pretty presents to brighten any handbag — lighter and specs case in zigzag stitch, lighter and compact set in flame.

Florentine designs

As an introduction to Florentine stitch these designs are small and manageable and can be made up in no time at all. Yet they show off well the characteristically subtle shading of Florentine embroidery. This stitch shows results quickly and you can produce a great variety of beautiful and practical objects—excellent for gifts. In the designs shown here the spectacles case and the compact case are worked on a medium canvas, while the two lighter cases show exactly the same designs scaled down on a fine canvas.

All these designs make excellent ways of using up scraps of yarn left over from other projects.

Zigzag specs case

Completed size: 15cm x 6.5cm (6″x2$\frac{1}{2}$″)

You will need:

Canvas 16 threads per 2.5cm (1″), measuring 20cm x 13cm (8″x5″).

Yarn (see chart) 24 pieces each 46cm (18″) long. Shown here are 7 shades of browns and beiges — 3 pieces each of 4 shades and 4 pieces of the other 3 shades.

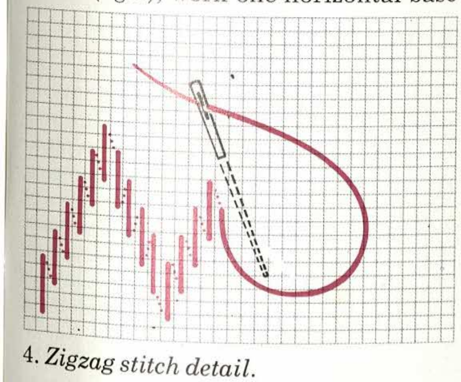
Lining fabric, 17.5cm x 9cm (7″x3$\frac{1}{2}$″)

For back of case, 15cm x 6.5cm (6″x2$\frac{1}{2}$″) of suede, leather or felt

Matching sewing thread and needle

☐ Mark the centre of the canvas horizontally and vertically and mark in the dimensions of the specs case. Either fold masking tape over the edges of the canvas, or oversew with wool. Trim away when making up.

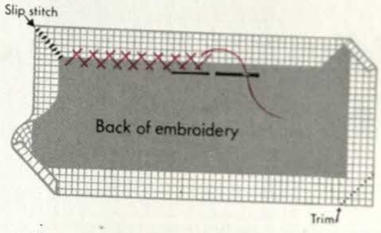
☐ Following the diagram for zigzag stitch (fig.4), work one horizontal base line anywhere across the narrow canvas width. This will comprise 4 zigzag pattern repeats and will use one 46cm (18″) length of yarn.



4. *Zigzag stitch detail.*

☐ Using a different colour yarn for each row, build up the pattern in toning shades of brown.

To make up. Pin the canvas to shape on an ironing board and press under a damp cloth. Leave to dry thoroughly. Trim the canvas to within 1.5cm ($\frac{1}{2}$″) of the worked area. Trim the lining fabric to the same size. Fold the canvas seam allowance to the back of the work, mitring the corners. Herringbone to the back of the embroidery (fig.5).



5. *Mitre corners and herringbone canvas to back of embroidery.*

☐ Turn under the lining fabric seam allowance and mitre the corners in the same way as the canvas. Slip stitch the lining to the back of the embroidery, wrong sides facing.

☐ Cut the back of the case to the completed size of the case and oversew neatly to the canvas around 3 sides.

Zigzag lighter case

Completed size: 7.5cm x 4.5cm (3″x1$\frac{3}{4}$″)

You will need:

Canvas, 24 threads per 2.5cm (1″), measuring 13cm x 10cm (5″x4″).

Yarn (see chart) 19 pieces each 30cm (12″) long. Shown here are 7 shades of browns, beiges and pinks — 3 pieces each of 5 colours, 2 pieces of 2 colours.

Lining fabric, 10cm x 7cm (4″x2$\frac{3}{4}$″)

For back of case, 7.5cm x 4.5cm (3″x1$\frac{3}{4}$″) of suede, leather or felt

Matching sewing thread and needle

☐ Mark the centre of the canvas horizontally and vertically and mark in the dimensions of the lighter case. Either fold masking tape over the edges of the canvas, or oversew with wool. Trim away when making up.

☐ Following the diagram for zigzag stitch (fig.4), work one horizontal base line anywhere across the narrow canvas width. This will comprise 4 zigzag pattern repeats.

☐ Continue to build up the pattern in rows of different coloured yarns.

☐ Make up the lighter case in the same way as for the specs case above.

Flame compact case

Completed size: 9.5cm x 9.5cm (3$\frac{3}{4}$″x3$\frac{3}{4}$″)

You will need:

Canvas, 16 threads per 2.5cm (1″), measuring 14cm x 14cm (5$\frac{1}{2}$″x5$\frac{1}{2}$″).

Yarn (see chart) 16 pieces each 46cm (18″) long. Shown here are 6 shades of pink — 3 pieces each of 5 shades and one strand of the sixth shade.

Lining fabric, 12cm x 12cm (4$\frac{3}{4}$″x4$\frac{3}{4}$″)

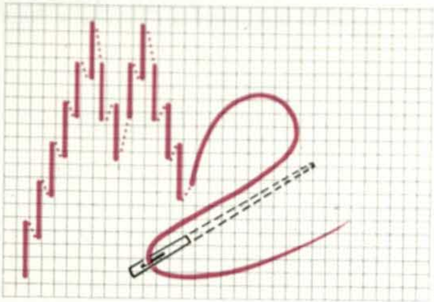
For back of case 9.5cm x 9.5cm (3$\frac{3}{4}$″x3$\frac{3}{4}$″) of suede, leather or felt

Matching sewing thread and needle

46cm ($\frac{1}{2}$yd) matching cord or braid (you can make handmade cords by plaiting together one or more of the yarns used in the embroidery)

☐ Mark the centre of the canvas horizontally and vertically and mark in the dimensions of the compact case. Either fold masking tape over the edges of the canvas, or oversew with wool. Trim away when making up.

☐ Following the diagram for flame stitch (fig.6), work one horizontal base line anywhere within the marked outline. This will comprise 4 pattern repeats.



6. *Flame stitch detail.*

Trevor Lawrence

Victoria Drew

☐ Using a different shade of yarn for each row, build up the pattern in toning shades of pink.

☐ Make up the compact case in the same way as for the specs case above but, when attaching the back, leave 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) open at one lower corner.

☐ Slip stitch the cord all round the edge of the canvas. Tuck in the ends and close the opening neatly.

Flame lighter case

Completed size: 6.5cm x 6.5cm (2$\frac{1}{2}$″x 2$\frac{1}{2}$″)

You will need:

Canvas 24 threads per 2.5cm (1″), measuring 11.5cm x 11.5cm (4$\frac{1}{2}$″x4$\frac{1}{2}$″).

Yarn (see chart) 15 pieces each 30cm (12″) long. Shown here are 5 shades of pinks and beiges — 3 pieces of each shade.

Lining fabric, 9cm x 9cm (3$\frac{1}{2}$″x3$\frac{1}{2}$″)

For back of case 6.5cm x 6.5cm (2$\frac{1}{2}$″x2$\frac{1}{2}$″) of suede, leather or felt

30cm (12″) matching cord or braid (bought or handmade from wool plaited by hand)

☐ Mark the centre of the canvas horizontally and vertically and mark in the dimensions of the lighter case. Either fold masking tape over the edges of the canvas, or oversew with wool. Trim away when making up.

☐ Following the diagram for flame stitch (fig.6), work one horizontal base line anywhere within the marked outline. This will comprise 4 pattern repeats.

☐ Using a different shade of yarn for each row, build up the pattern in toning shades.

☐ Make up in the same way as for the specs case above but, when attaching the back, leave 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) open at the lower corner.

☐ Slip stitch the cord all round the edge of the canvas. Tuck in the ends and close the opening neatly.

Finger weaving peasant braids

Yarn – weaving 3

Weaving terms

Warp—a set of vertical yarns through which the weft is passed when forming a fabric.

Warp end—each warp length is called an end.

Weft—the yarn that is passed through the warp ends in a horizontal direction.

Finger weaving is a process of making woven cloth by using your fingers to guide the wefts through the warp ends. As well as being the simplest form of weaving it is also thought to be the oldest. Examples of ancient braids woven by this method have been found in almost every part of the world. People in places as far apart as Peru, Egypt and Scandinavia worked out patterns by manipulating various colours of yarn with their fingers.

Finger weaving travels well! Because you need no tools, it is the ideal pastime while travelling or sitting in the garden or on the beach.

The easiest patterns to make in finger weaving are diagonal bands of colour. From this basic method wavy lines of colour can be woven as illustrated. Once the principle of separating the warp ends and inserting the wefts has been achieved, chevron and diamond patterns can be worked by grouping the yarn differently and weaving it in two directions. And so the progression, towards the complex grouping of yarns to produce double woven braids, is easy.

Uses for bands of finger weaving

Use the braids for decorating sweaters and woollen dresses, for making into belts, book markers, cuffs, napkin rings, watchstraps, chokers, bracelets, hatbands and sashes.

Braid widths

Although finger weaving is primarily useful for weaving narrow bands using about 16 strands, wider pieces can be made—with practice. The maximum number of strands which can be handled comfortably is about 48, however the width of the finished braid will depend on the thickness of the yarn. Narrow bands may be sewn together to make either wide bands of colour, wall hangings, place mats, cushions, holdalls, shoulder- or handbags. Braids can also be joined by working several braids simultaneously and intertwining the outside strands of each set.

Materials

The materials needed for finger weaving are simple and inexpensive. All you need is yarn—rug wool, knitting wool or cotton or synthetic yarn—and a pencil to which to attach the yarn. Use double knitting yarn to begin with as this is the simplest to use. After learning the skill of finger weaving, interesting effects can be produced by using heavy wools and string or fine silks and cottons.

Colour

Colour is fundamental to weaving and the choice of colour combinations should be given some thought before a project is started. When choosing colour schemes for braids to decorate clothes, choose one colour which picks up or matches the colour of the garment. Experiment with colours and combinations of colour because the play of colour can be one of the most exciting parts of your work.

Finger weaving relies heavily on the use of colour contrasts. Strong contrasts produce a bold effect and accentuate the pattern, while subtle combinations create a softer mood and give a more subtle pattern which can be equally effective. Alternatively, use a small amount of a neutral colour to 'break up' bands of primary colours. Sections of 3 or 4 colours containing 6,7 or 8 strands give an effective result although more or less can be used.

To make a belt or anything else which needs to have a fringe at either end, set up as follows:

Steve Bicknell

An assortment of colourful braids.

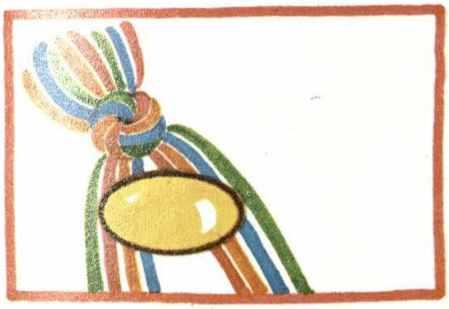
Chris Lewis

Bright hatband which is easy to make.

Preparation

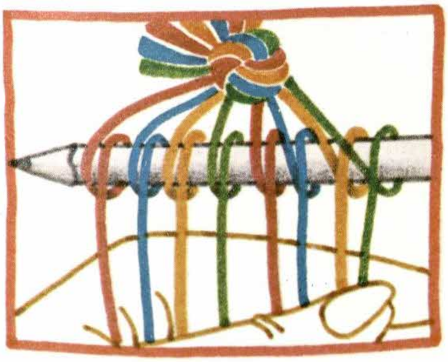
Cutting the yarn. Cut the various coloured yarns into the required number of lengths. Each length of yarn should be two or three times as long as the finished length of the article, depending on how long you wish the fringe to be. If you wish to hem the ends, then twice the length is ample. For example, if you are weaving something 15cm (6″) long, cut the yarn 30cm (12″) long. The width of the finished braid will be about $\frac{1}{2}$-$\frac{3}{4}$ of the width of the yarn wound round the pencil and squeezed together.

First of all anchor the yarn firmly to some immovable object by tying an overhand knot at one end of the bunch of yarns and looping over a hook, door knob, chair or drawer handle (fig.1), or by pinning them securely to a cork board.



1. *Loop yarn over an immovable object.*

Wind each strand in turn around a pencil, about 5cm (2″) below the knot, (fig.2).

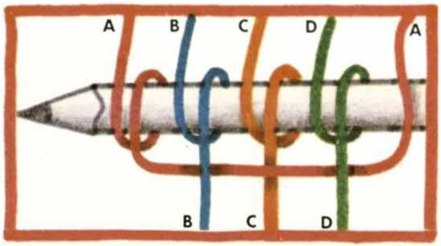


2. *Winding strands round pencil.*

Weaving

Set the strands on to the pencil in groups of colour, arranging them side by side. Hold the strands towards you about 8cm (3″) below the pencil in the right hand. (These lengths of yarn are called the warp ends.) As the threads are used, pass them to your left hand and hold taut.

☐ Working from left to right, pick up strand A and weave it under strand B, over strand C, under strand D and so on across all the strands (fig.3).



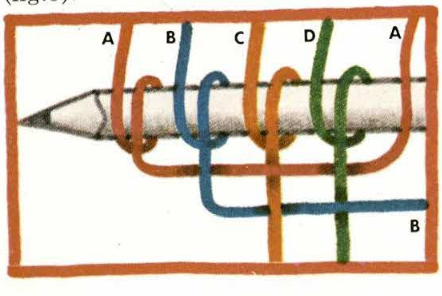
3. *Weave A from left to right.*

☐ Pull strand A parallel to the pencil and, using the forefinger of the left hand, push it up close to the pencil. Tuck strand A over the right end of the pencil.

☐ Pick up strand B and weave it under strand C, over strand D, under the next and so on across all the strands. (You may find it easier to think of the weaving movement as plaiting the travelling strand across.) (fig.4).

☐ Pull strand B parallel to the pencil and push it against the pencil. Remember to push up the strands after they have been carried through the warp ends. The pattern and tension can then be checked for evenness and corrected before the pattern has progressed too far.

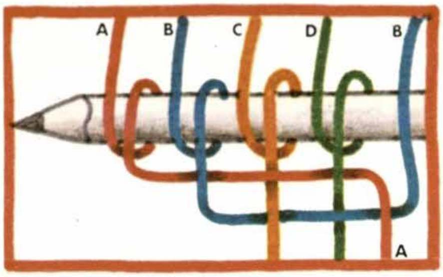
To make a selvedge on the right hand side, bring strand A either under or over strand B (whichever completes the weaving sequence) and place it parallel to the other warp ends. Tuck strand B over the pencil. The method of making the selvedge is the same for whatever pattern you are weaving (fig.5).



4. *Weave B from left to right.*

☐ Pick up strand C and weave it under the second warp end, over the third, under the fourth and so on across the warp ends.

☐ Continue weaving each warp end on the far left, using it as a weft, through the warp ends, always reversing the sequence of the previous row and bringing every weft down over or under the lower one to complete the selvedge on the right hand side (fig.5).



Victoria Drew

5. *Bring A over B to make a selvedge.*

Make sure the strands aren't getting tangled—sort them out as you go along. Pull each horizontal strand firmly but not too tightly and give the warp ends a gentle straightening pull after each movement. The horizontal strands should be completely covered by the warp ends.

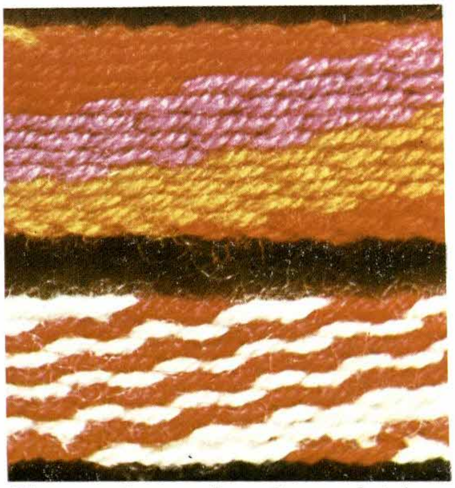
For the first 5 or 10 minutes it will probably seem like an awful lot of strands and nothing effective happening. Then suddenly you begin to build up rhythm to achieve an even tension and the diagonal pattern starts to grow under your fingers. From that moment on you'll be hooked!

Make sure that you pull the right selvedge firmly, in a straight line. Otherwise the band will begin to curve. (Of course, you can turn this into a virtue when you are making a collar or a hatband.)

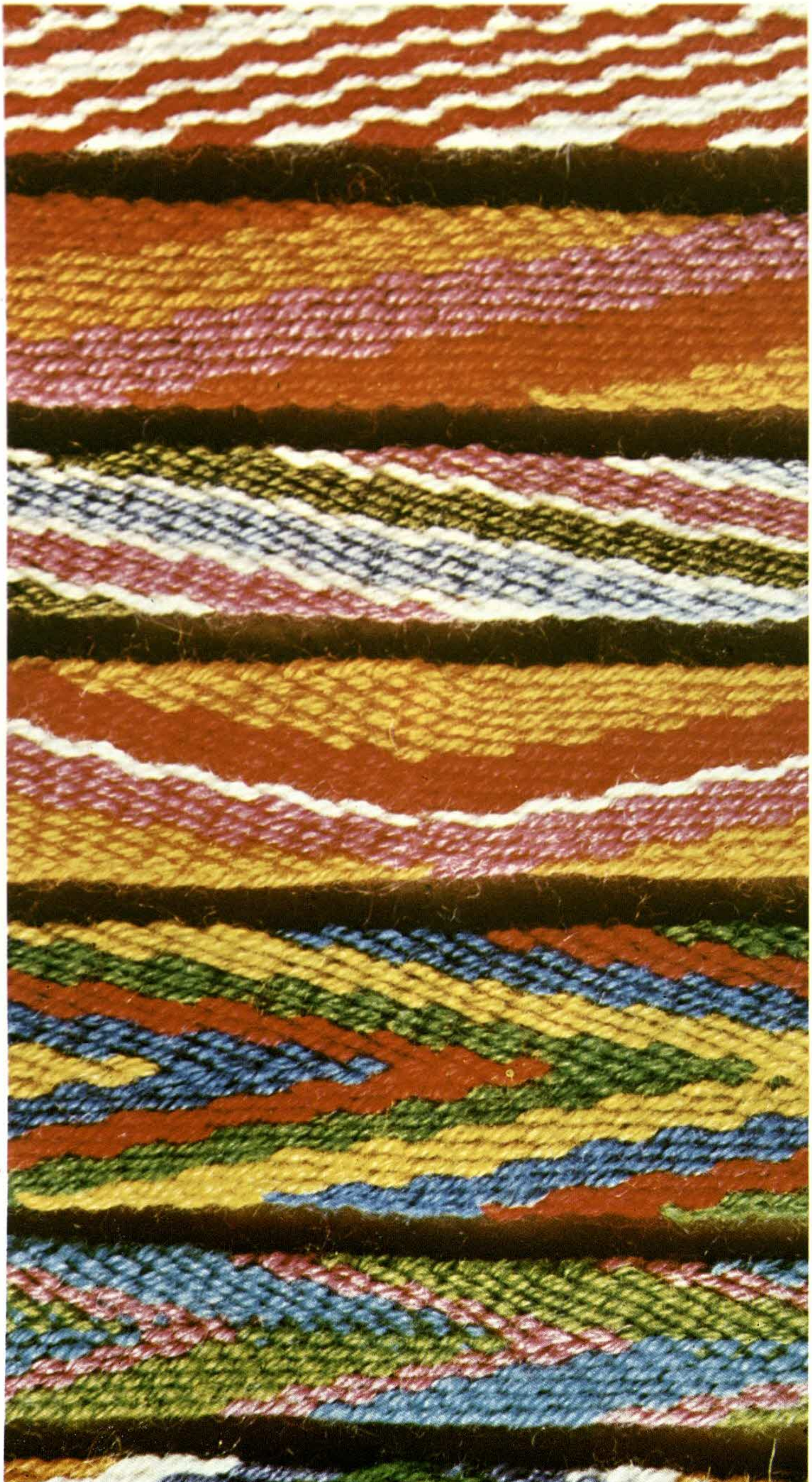
If you want a fringe at the end of the braid leave 20cm-25cm (8″-10″) of warp ends for finishing.

Diagonal stripes

For diagonal stripes, set the threads in groups. The 3-colour sample below has 8 orange, 8 pink and 8 yellow. Follow the weaving process, working always from left to right.

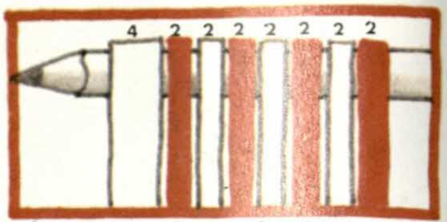


Three- and two-colour diagonal stripes.

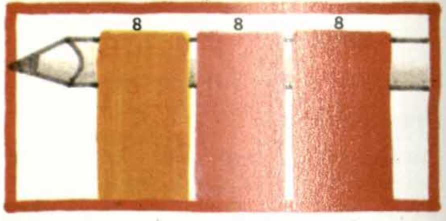


Melvin Grey

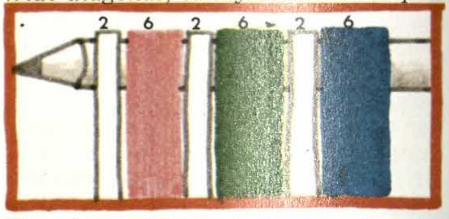
Numerals on diagrams indicate number of strands needed to give patterns shown on left.



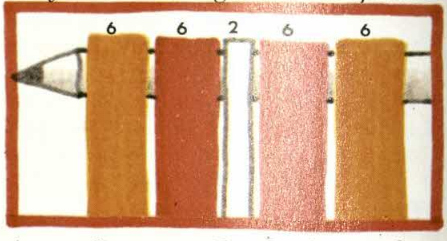
Red and white diagonal stripes.



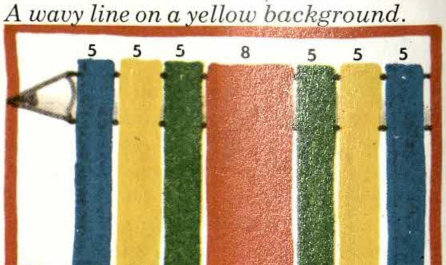
Wide diagonal, candy-coloured stripes.



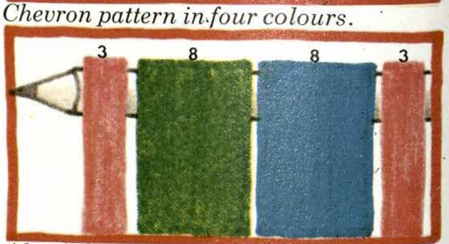
Wavy lines with single strands of white.



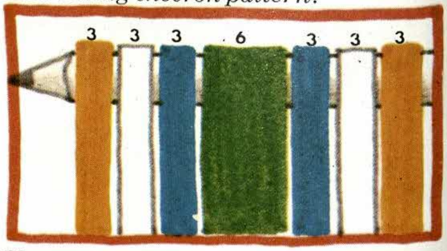
A wavy line on a yellow background.



Chevron pattern in four colours.



Alternating chevron pattern.



Chevrons make diamond patterns too.

Wavy line stripes

Arrange the strands as for diagonal stripes and follow the weaving process. The same method is followed as given for diagonal stripes, until all the warp ends have been used once as a weft.

☐ Then complete the selvedge on the right hand side and, with the last weft that you used, weave it in and out of the warp ends from right to left.

☐ Pick up the far right warp end and weave it in and out, working from right to left also.

☐ To make the selvedge on the left hand side, bring the upper weft either under or over the lower weft (whichever completes the sequence) and place it parallel to the warp ends.

☐ Continue in this way, working from right to left, until you want the bands of colour to curve in the reverse direction. If you wish, the change in direction may be made at any point, but the largest curves are achieved by using all the warp ends as wefts before changing direction.

Chevron pattern

Choose an even number of colours and strands. Divide each pile into two groups, with the same sequence of colours, and mount them on a pencil so that when the warp ends are divided in the middle the colour sequence of one group is reflected exactly in the other group (see opposite).

☐ Grip the left group of warp ends in your left hand and the right group in your right hand.

☐ Then, using the forefinger and thumb of your right hand, pick up the first warp end at the right edge of the left group.

☐ Weave this warp end (which is now the weft) over, under, over the warp ends in the right hand.

☐ Pull the weft parallel to the pencil. Grasp all the warp ends in the right group in your right hand except the one on the far left of this group.

☐ Pass this warp end (now the weft) over, under, over, working from right to left through the warp ends held in the left hand.

☐ Return to the right group of warp ends and pass the far right warp end from the left group over, under, over the warp ends held in the right hand.

☐ Repeat this movement with the left group, by passing the far left warp end from the right group over, under, over through the left group of warp ends.

☐ Form a selvedge on the right and left sides (fig.5) as you go.

☐ Continue weaving from the centre to the edges until the colour you started with on the far left and far right is positioned in the centre of the warp ends. You have now worked one chevron pattern. Continue in this way until you have worked the required length.

Chevron pattern with diamond shape

☐ Mount the strands of yarn on a pencil by tying them halfway along their length in the same sequence as for chevron pattern, (see opposite).

☐ Tie one lot of warp ends in a loose knot—to keep them out of the way while you are weaving the others.

☐ Using the free strands, work the required length in the chevron pattern. Untie the loose knot and the knots around the pencil. Turn the work around, but not over, so the unworked ends are towards you and weave chevron patterns as before. Because you are working in the opposite direction, a diamond shape is formed in the centre.

Finishing

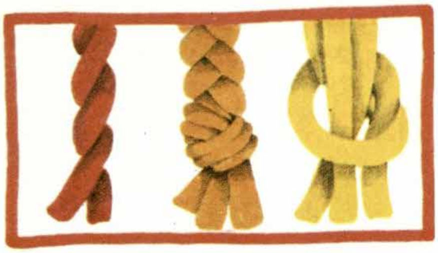
A neat finish enhances any braid, so either knot, turn under and neatly hem or finish in one of the following ways to give a 'fringe' effect.

Even if you want a simple fringe, it will lie better if you start with a small amount of plaiting or ply before knotting. Knots straight after finger weaving tend to splay and look untidy.

Plaits. If the number of warp ends are multiples of three, plait sets of three warp ends. Knot the ends and trim them level or at an angle.

With a little practice even numbers of warps, if they are multiples of four, may be plaited using four strands.

Ply. Take a pair of warp ends. Twist one warp end between your thumb and forefinger to the right until it is very tightly twisted and begins to kink even when held fairly taut. Secure the end with a pin to a cushion or stick it to a table with sticky tape so that it can't unwind. Repeat the twisting with the other warp end and hold it firmly. Pick up the first twisted warp end and hold it firmly too. Hold both warp ends together between your thumb and forefinger and tug firmly while rolling the warp ends towards the left. Release the warp ends. They should twist together, that is, form a ply. Knot the ends and trim them. Repeat with the remaining warp ends.



Finishes: ply, plait and small knot.

Knots. Finish plaits and ply by tying knots across the bottom of the sets of plaited and plied strands. To make a small knot, take only one of the strands, wrap it round 2 strands, make a single knot and pull tight. Trim the strands either just below the knots, or leave a little tassel.

Hems. Tie strands in pairs with a double knot and trim ends as close as possible to the knots without weakening them. Turn the knotted ends in 6mm (¼″) to the wrong side and fold again 2cm (¾″) from the edge. Using the same coloured yarn, make neat stab stitches through the braid to prevent the ends from unfolding.

Steve Bicknell

Decorative choker in diamond pattern.

To make the choker

The choker shown is about 2cm (¾″) wide and 38cm (15″) long, including 5cm (2″) for finishing. Adjust the length according to your requirements by working a little more or a little less.

☐ Choose yarn in four colours and cut into 76cm (30″) lengths, in the quantities given in the diagram at the bottom of the opposite page.

☐ Mount the centre of each length of yarn on a pencil in the sequence indicated and tie the warp ends that you are not working with in a loose knot. Work 19cm (7½″) in a chevron pattern. Untie the loose knot and the knots around the pencil. Turn the unworked warp ends around, but not over, and continue with the chevron pattern until the length is 38cm (15″).

☐ Arrange warp ends at each end of the band in pairs and knot them. This prevents the work from unravelling.

☐ Turn each knotted end of the band 6mm (¼″) to the wrong side. Turn each end 2cm (¾″) under again and stitch the folded edges to the wrong side.

☐ Make a fastening by sewing a 12mm (½″) button to the right side of the band near one edge. Make a loop at the other edge by passing a 10cm (4″) strand of yarn through the folded hem. Knot the two ends together, adjusting to the right length. Trim the ends and thread the knot inside the hem so that it is hidden. The loop will then fasten over the button and secure the band.

Make a warm padded quilt

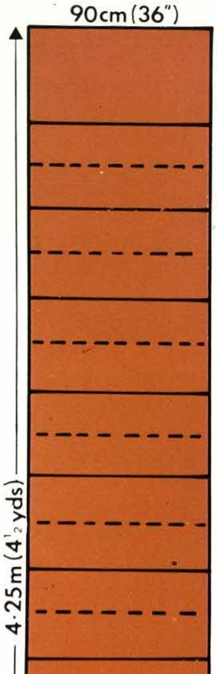
Cloth — sewing 2

Making a conventional quilt on an ordinary sewing machine is often impossible because there's a limit to the amount of bulk you can feed through. This woven quilt does not involve machining through wadding and is simply made up from lots of separate tubes, filled with strips of wadding and woven together to give a luxuriously padded quilt.

Choose two colourways of the same print to accentuate the texture of the unusual giant-size weave, or use remnants of several different fabrics to create a patchwork effect. You need a minimum of 45cm (½yd) for each crosswise tube and 1.8m (2yd) for each lengthwise tube.

Single bed quilt

For a quilt 87cm x 177cm (35"x71")
You will need: Using 90cm (36") wide fabric (dress cotton)
For crosswise tubes (red), 4.25m (4½yd)
For lengthwise tubes (blue), 3.6m (4yd)
95cm (38") wide Terylene or Dacron wadding, 4m (4¾yd)
Matching sewing thread
Long glass-headed pins



FigI

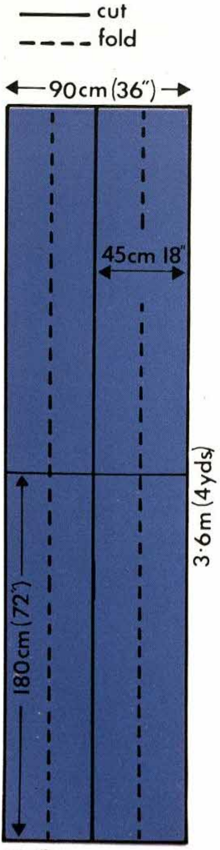


Fig2

To make 9 crosswise (red) tubes. Following the cutting layout (fig.1) cut the 4.25m (4½yd) length of fabric into 9 strips each 90cm x 45cm (36"x18").

☐ With right sides facing, fold each 45cm (18") wide strip in half along the length and machine down long sides, taking a 1.5cm (½") seam allowance which is given throughout. Be sure to fold strips along straight of grain.

☐ You now have 9 tubes 90cm (36") long and 21cm (8½") wide. Press the seams open and, with the seam along one side, close one end of each tube by machine. Turn the tubes to the right side and press again.

To make 4 lengthwise (blue) tubes. Following the cutting layout (fig.2) cut the fabric into 2 equal lengths and cut each piece in half lengthwise to give 4 strips 180cm (72") by 45cm (18").

Fold along the length and make up as crosswise (red) tubes.

Making up the quilt. Cut a length of wadding 180cm x 95cm (72"x38"). Cut this into 4 strips 180cm x 23cm (72"x9½"). Cut the remaining wadding into 9 strips 90cm x 23cm (36"x9½").

☐ Insert a length of wadding into each tube, feeding it in carefully so as not to pull it apart. Turn in the raw edges of each tube and close either with slip stitching or machine. If machining, stitch very close to the edge to give a neat finish.

Weaving together involves assembling the quilt on the floor, so start by marking out a right angle.

☐ First lay a lengthwise (blue) tube and then a crosswise (red) tube on top of it, following the lines of the right angle.

☐ Pin down the ends of each tube securely using long glass-headed pins (fig.3).

☐ Line up the other 3 lengthwise tubes side by side, going over and under the crosswise strip alternately. Pin down in position.

☐ Take each remaining crosswise tube and weave it in and out of the long tubes, overlapping the edges very slightly so no gaps appear (fig.4). Secure at each end to a lengthwise tube.

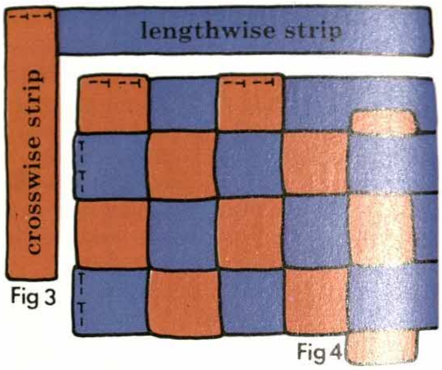


Fig 3

Fig 4

☐ To complete, overcast (oversew) tubes together all round the outside.

Double bed quilt

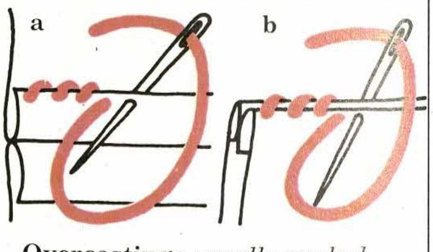
For a quilt 177cm x 177cm (71"x71")
You will need: Using 90cm (36") wide fabric (dress cotton)
For crosswise tubes, 9m (10yd)
For lengthwise tubes, 7.2m (8yd)
95cm (38") wide Terylene or Dacron wadding, 9m (10yd)

Cutting 9 crosswise tubes. Cut the fabric into five 180cm (2yd) lengths and cut each piece lengthwise to give 9 strips 45cm x 180cm (18"x72").

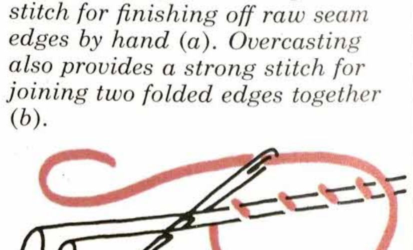
Cutting 8 lengthwise tubes. Cut the fabric into four 180cm (2yd) lengths and cut each piece lengthwise to make 8 strips 45cm x 180cm (18"x72").

Making up. Cut the wadding into 17 strips each 180cm x 23cm (72"x9½"). Make up into tubes, fill and weave together as single bed quilt.

Basic sewing Know-how



Overcasting: *usually worked from left to right. It is a good stitch for finishing off raw seam edges by hand (a). Overcasting also provides a strong stitch for joining two folded edges together (b).*



Slip stitch: *worked from right to left to give an invisible finish and used here to sew two folded edges together invisibly.*

Victoria Drew

Jerry Tubby

Applying a finish to wood

Wood — finishes 1

All woodwork needs finishing. When it has lost the natural protection of its coat of bark, the timber inside, however attractive it looks in its raw state, will soon lose its appeal and become warped and dirty. As well as looking unattractive, this will harm the wood and shorten its life.

Craftsmen of old spent years learning to create and apply delicate finishes, such as French polish. Nowadays, however, there is a wide choice of finishes which are easy to apply. These range from virtually transparent ones, which will complement and preserve the wood without changing its appearance much, to finishes that will darken the wood or add a bright, modern colour, which will nonetheless let the grain show through.

Modern finishes have largely superseded many older and more fragile ones, such as French or Button polish and varnishes based on shellac or cellulose. French polish is still used occasionally on new work because it gives a superb, mirror-like finish. But it needs skilful application and should be left to an expert. French polish also has very little resistance to heat or water, while polyurethanes, which give almost as good a finish, are easier to apply and much more hardwearing.

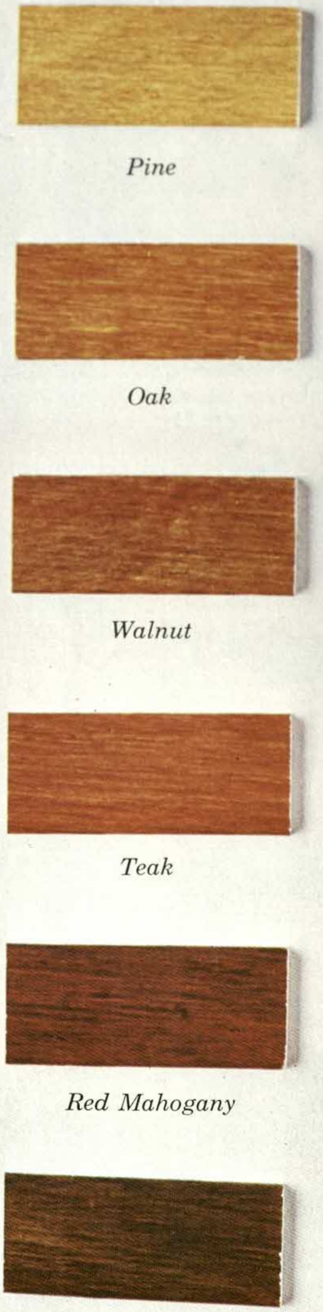
There are several modern commercial substitutes for French polish which are less difficult to apply and rather more resistant to water and alcohol. But these still need very careful application and have almost no resistance to heat.

Wax polish

This is one of the easiest finishes to apply and produces a lovely soft sheen, with a slightly yellowish tinge. But it does show up fingerprints and other marks and has very little resistance to heat. It is best used, therefore, on decorative surfaces or on any piece that is not likely to be handled.

Wax polish was originally based on beeswax, often in combination with carnauba wax, which is derived from the leaves of a plant found in Brazil.

Wax polish is obtainable in a large number of commercial brands or you can make it yourself (see below). The commercial brands will usually have silicone ingredients and additives to improve their protective qualities or to add a pleasant smell.



Pine

Oak

Walnut

Teak

Red Mahogany

Dark oak

Polyurethane finishes in wood tones, shown on whitewood.

Steve Bicknell

One of the best ways of finishing raw wood is to seal it with one or two coats of clear polyurethane and then wax on top, although you can wax without pre-sealing. Apply the wax with a cloth, sparingly, and then buff it up with a clean cloth or a very soft brush. Re-coat with wax and buff up again. Repeat this process, allowing a day or two in between for the wax to harden, until you have a good, deep gloss. Rubbing down with very fine (000 or 0000 grade) steel wool gives a smooth, hardwearing but less glossy surface.

To make beeswax polish

You will need:

Beeswax
Turpentine

☐ Shred beeswax into a vessel standing in hot water. Add barely enough turpentine to cover it and stir thoroughly until a paste is formed.

You can do this without standing the vessel in hot water; it will just take a little longer to break down the beeswax. Do *not* allow a naked flame near the mixture, since turpentine is highly inflammable and so is its vapour. *Never* warm it over a stove.

☐ You can use powdered earth colours, obtainable from suppliers of artists' materials, or lamp black to colour the polish. If you experiment like this, do try it on a piece of scrap wood or an inconspicuous area first—this is always a good idea when handling a process you have not tried before.

☐ Stir the paste well and store it in an airtight container.

Linseed oil

This gives a good, traditional finish which improves with age and repeated applications. It darkens the wood and tends to collect dirt and rub off on clothing in its early days. It is most suitable for dark woods such as teak, but should not be used on food containers since it is liable to leave a taste on food.

Linseed oil is obtainable at any hardware store, under many brand names. It can be bought boiled or raw. The boiled form (which has, in fact, been heated carefully until it thickens, rather than boiled) is preferable, as it dries quicker, having been partially oxidized before application.

The oil is applied by rubbing in with a rag. If you want to minimize discolouration, dilute the linseed oil with an equal part of turpentine. Use it sparingly, rub on a very thin coat and leave it for a couple of hours. There should be no surplus; if there is some, wipe it off. Let the wood dry thoroughly before applying any more oil.

Repeat the operation every day for two

Chris Lewis

Shelves made from whitewood (see Carpentry, chapter 2) can be finished in the colour of a darker wood.

or three weeks, until the wood will accept no more. Rub hard with a soft cloth to bring up the finish. You may use a final coat of wax polish to improve the shine.

Teak oil

A modern alternative to linseed oil is teak oil, which is quicker-drying and tends to colour the wood rather more. It is, as its name suggests, best on teak but it is suitable for any dark, coarse-textured hardwood. It can be used on softwoods but these usually benefit from a tougher finish.

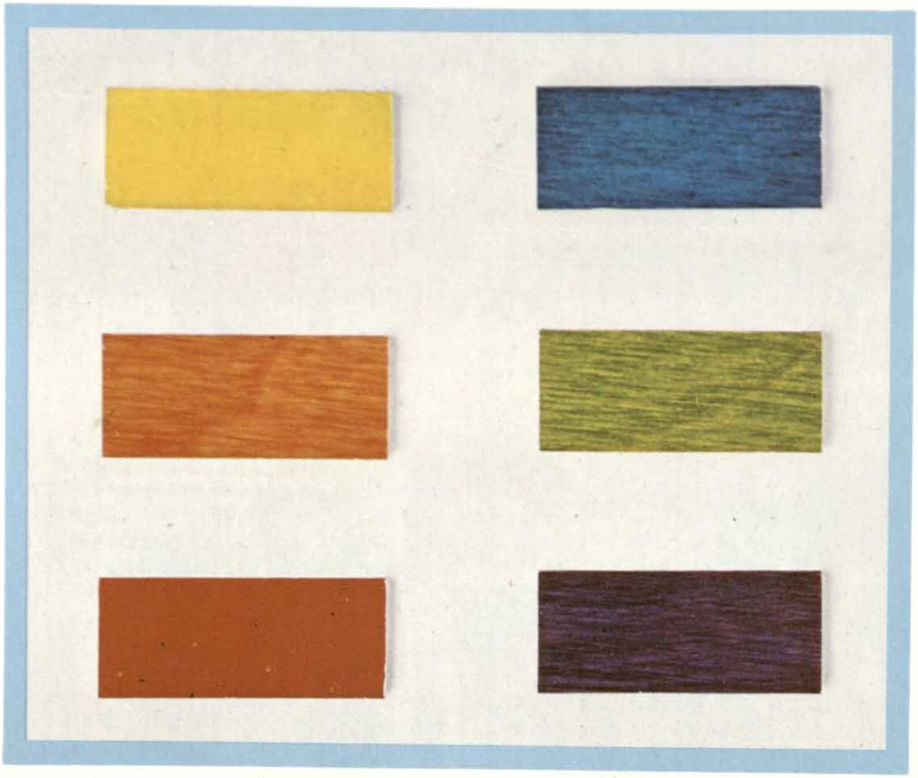
Teak oil is applied in the same way as linseed oil.

Vegetable oil

You can use olive oil to finish salad bowls or any wooden food container. Any corn oil, as sold for cooking, will also do. Rub it in with a rag, as for linseed oil. The finish will be a soft sheen rather than a high polish.

Polyurethane wood finishes

These are the results of modern technological developments which have produced an extremely tough, translucent finish. It can be obtained either clear or in a wide range of colours



Steve Bicknell

from natural wood shades to bright reds and greens. Whatever colour you use, it will not obscure the grain of the wood, which can be seen through the finish. The clear varieties, which, like all finishes, give some discolouration, are available in both matt and gloss, or these can be mixed for an intermediate effect.

The principal advantage of polyurethanes is their durability—they will withstand almost any damage once they have set, even boiling water; though heat, transmitted through a polyurethaned surface, may eventually damage the wood underneath. You must, however, take care when applying them, especially as some varieties may take two weeks to achieve maximum hardness.

The water-resistant properties of polyurethanes make them especially suitable for kitchens and bathrooms, but they can be used anywhere.

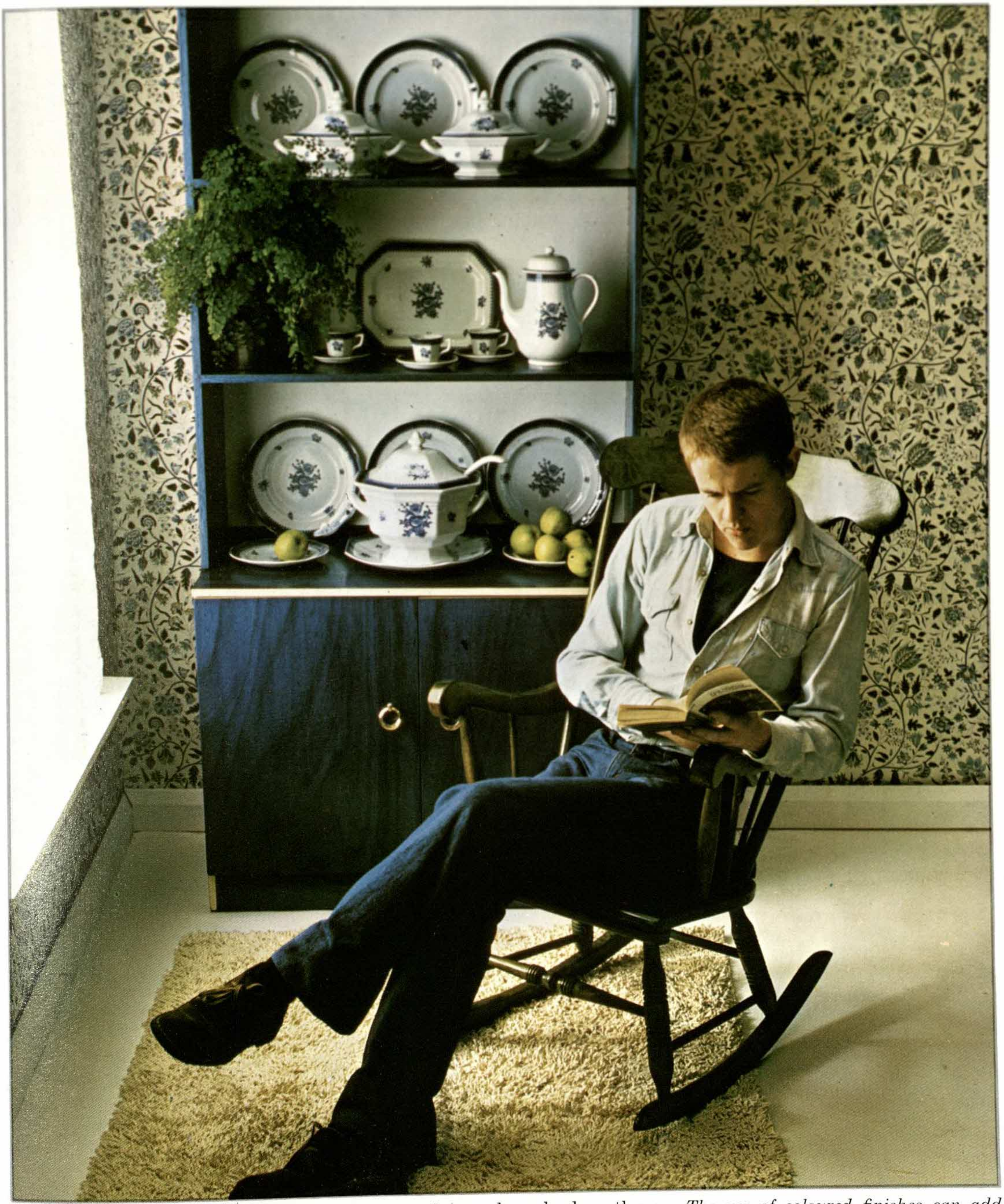
Commercial brands are available at any hardware store, in either one- or two-pack varieties. It is most important to follow the manufacturer's instructions, especially for the two-pack varieties which have to be mixed before application. These are generally quicker-drying but you must be careful to get the proportions right (these vary between makes) and not to mix too much, since the mixture will not keep longer than a day. The one-pack types can be used straight from the can, which should be re-closed tightly after use.

Polyurethane finishes should be applied directly to the sanded wood, which must be clean and dry. Avoid working in humid atmospheres. For best results, dilute the first coat with an equal amount of white spirit, to help it soak in and seal the wood, and apply it with a cloth pad. When the first coat is dry, sand it down lightly before applying another. Subsequent coats may be diluted in the proportion of one part white spirit to three parts polyurethane to give thinner coats which will brush on more easily.

For a clear finish, two coats may be sufficient; if you anticipate very hard wear, then use more. The thicker the coats you use, the tougher the finish will be—but a thinner finish will look more attractive.

Coloured polyurethanes can be used to add interest to whitewood or other light-wood furniture. You can either use the colour of a darker wood or a

Polyurethane wood finishes are available in a wide variety of colours, as shown in the samples (above left). The exact shade of the finish will depend on the colour of the wood and the number of coats used. By mixing different colours and varying the number of coats, you can achieve different shades.



John Cook

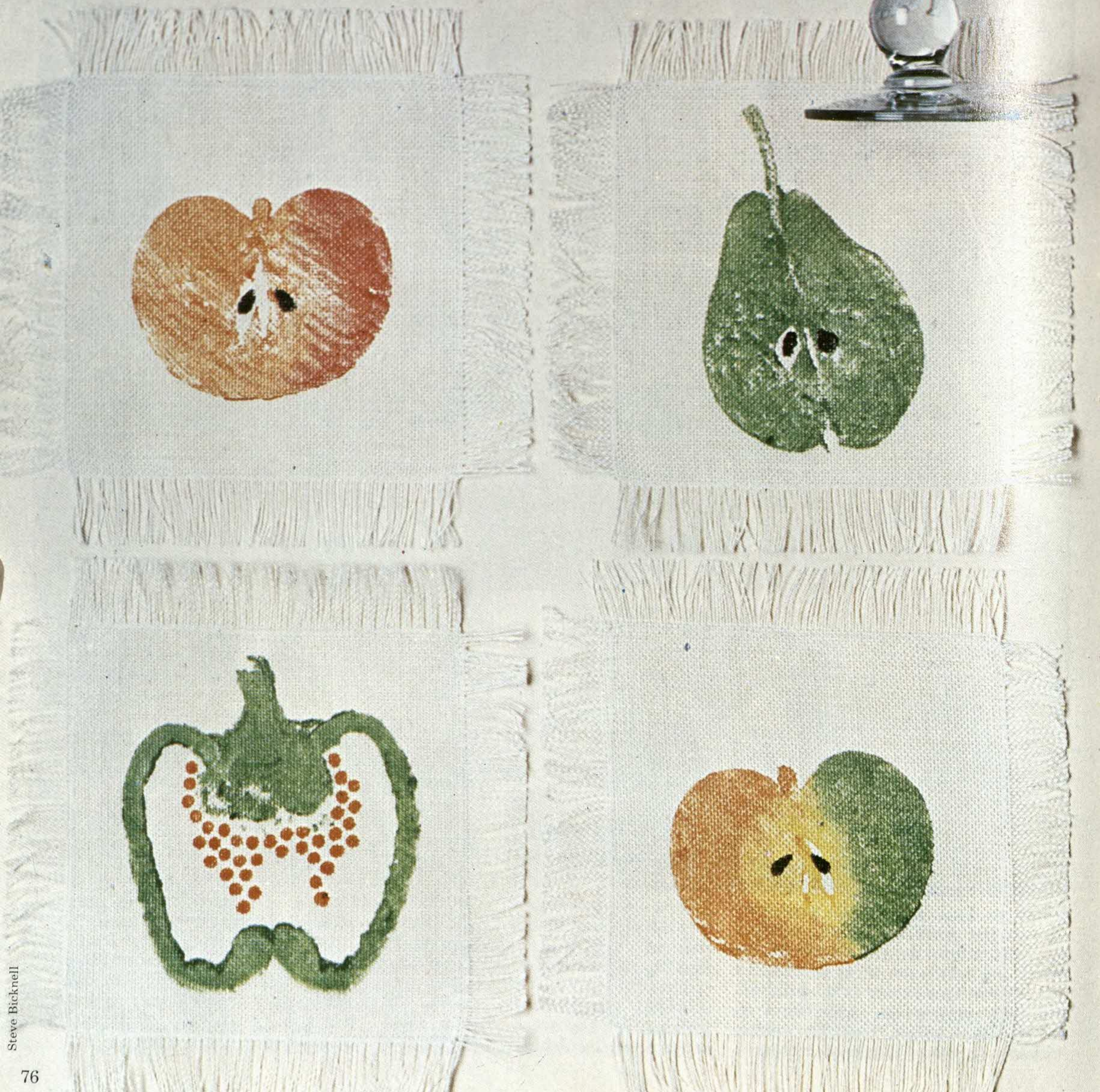
bright, modern colour. Whichever you choose, the grain will still be visible: the more pronounced the grain of the wood, the better the effect is likely to be. Beware of using the brighter colours on dark wood, as the colour of the wood will affect them. The colour will also deepen with repeated coats. Before applying coloured polyurethane it is advisable to seal the wood with a coat of clear polyurethane, bought from the same manufacturer to ensure compatability. This will forestall any problems arising from varying absorbency of the wood, which could cause a patchy result if the coloured finish is absorbed in different amounts. Thereafter, apply in the same way as clear polyurethane. If you want a matt finish, a final coat of clear, matt polyurethane is the answer.

The use of coloured finishes can add interest to inexpensive furniture.

Vegetable and fruit blocking

Colour — printing 1

Relief printing using fruit and vegetables is a basic printing technique, making use of the intrinsic designs of nature and simple printing procedures. Try your hand at relief printing with these glass mats which, together with the shopping bag overleaf, were designed by Janet Allen.



Steve Bicknell

To put it at its simplest, relief printing usually involves applying colour to one surface and pressing the colour on to another surface. You can print on to all sorts of surfaces including paper, cloth and walls: the type of paint or ink you choose will depend on what you are printing.

Most relief printing methods involve the making of a printing block, but there are some objects—such as fruits—which in themselves are ready-made printing blocks.

Numerous fruits and vegetables have attractive shapes and inherent patterns. If, for example, you cut horizontally across an onion you reveal an eminently printable pattern of rings. Cut it vertically and you have another kind of pattern. The fruits or vegetables need to be fairly hard and firm—a tomato, for instance, is far too squashy—but apples, pears, cabbages, leeks and celery are a few of the suitable types.

Paints, inks and dyes

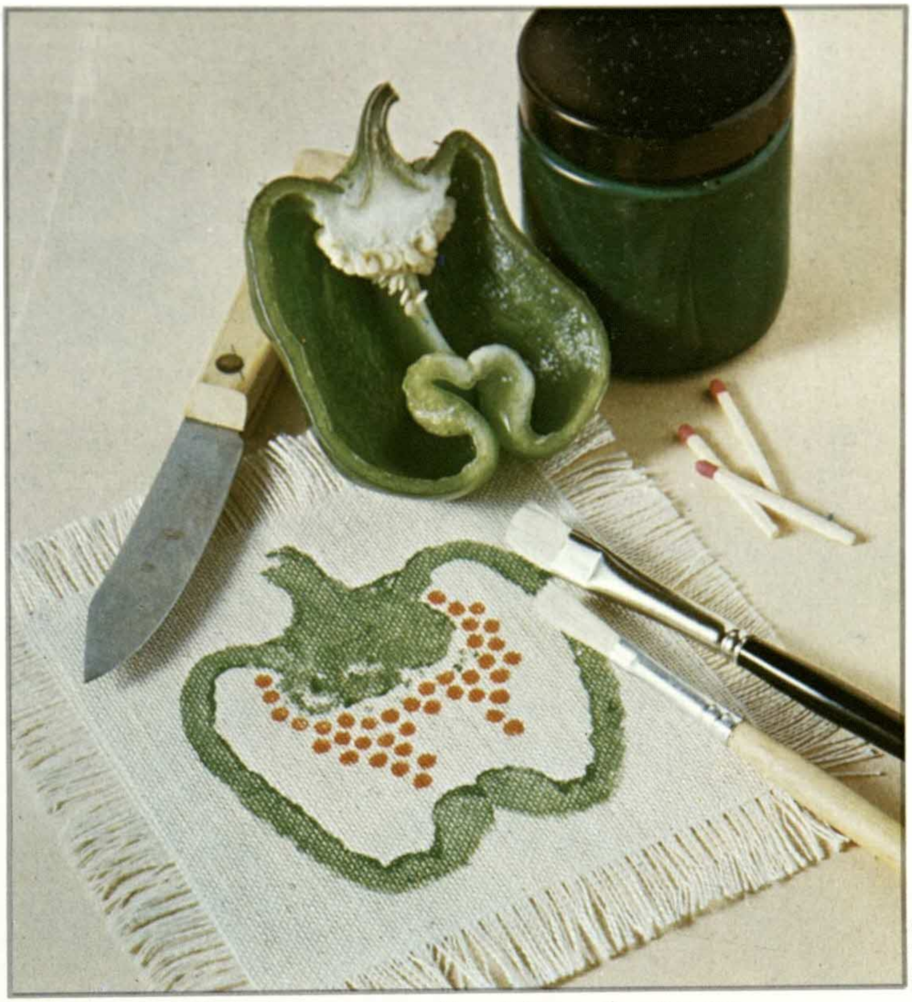
Water-solvent paints. For relief printing poster paint or powder colours should be of a thick consistency. Block printing watercolours may be used undiluted. You only require water for cleaning up afterwards. The colour can be applied with a stiff brush or you can use a sponge pad which is impregnated with colour and used as a stamping pad. These paints are not washable and are therefore really only suitable for paper. Paper printed with water-solvent colour may be varnished (when the print is absolutely dry) with paper varnish. This prolongs its life and makes it waterproof.

Oil-bound printing ink and fabric printing colours work best on fruit and vegetables if diluted with a very little white spirit. These inks are waterproof and fabric printing colours are washable. They require white spirit for cleaning up afterwards.

Fabric printing dyes are suitable for large, broad shapes but are slightly too liquid to pick up intricate patterns with this kind of printing. These dyes are washable and can be fixed by ironing the fabric. Use a temperature suitable for the type of fabric. Manufacturers give details of fixing procedures for their particular dyes.

Papers and fabrics

Do not use a non-absorbent, glossy paper because your printing object will tend to slide when you press it down. Newsprint is ideal for trial prints but it is inclined to become yellow within a short time and is easily torn. After first experimenting on cheap newsprint or newspaper, use a cartridge type of paper. Coloured papers can add interest to the design.



Melvin Grey

This method of relief printing requires the minimum of equipment.

The fabric printing colours and dyes work best on natural fibre fabrics. Some man-made fibre fabrics are not fast to washing or cleaning when printed. If in doubt, test a piece of printed fabric first. Cloth with a heavy starch dressing should first be washed and ironed before printing.

Preparing the fruit and vegetables

Have ready plenty of table space, a chopping board, a selection of sharp kitchen knives and some rags.

Experiment by cutting your fruits and vegetables in half, into quarters, diagonally across and at different points. Do not remove any peel or skin as it both defines the shape and helps to hold the cut piece together.

Most fruits and vegetables are rather wet when cut so it is advisable to dry them first gently with a rag.

To make the glass mats

You will need:

Firm pear and apple and a green pepper, all with good, clear shapes
Sharp knife
Fabric printing dyes
Stiff brush (eg small house-painting brush); small artist's paintbrush
Suitable fabric such as linen (enough for 4 squares, allowing an extra 5cm (2″) all round each one)
Scraps of fabric for trial prints
Rags and old blanket or piece of felt
Needle and thread

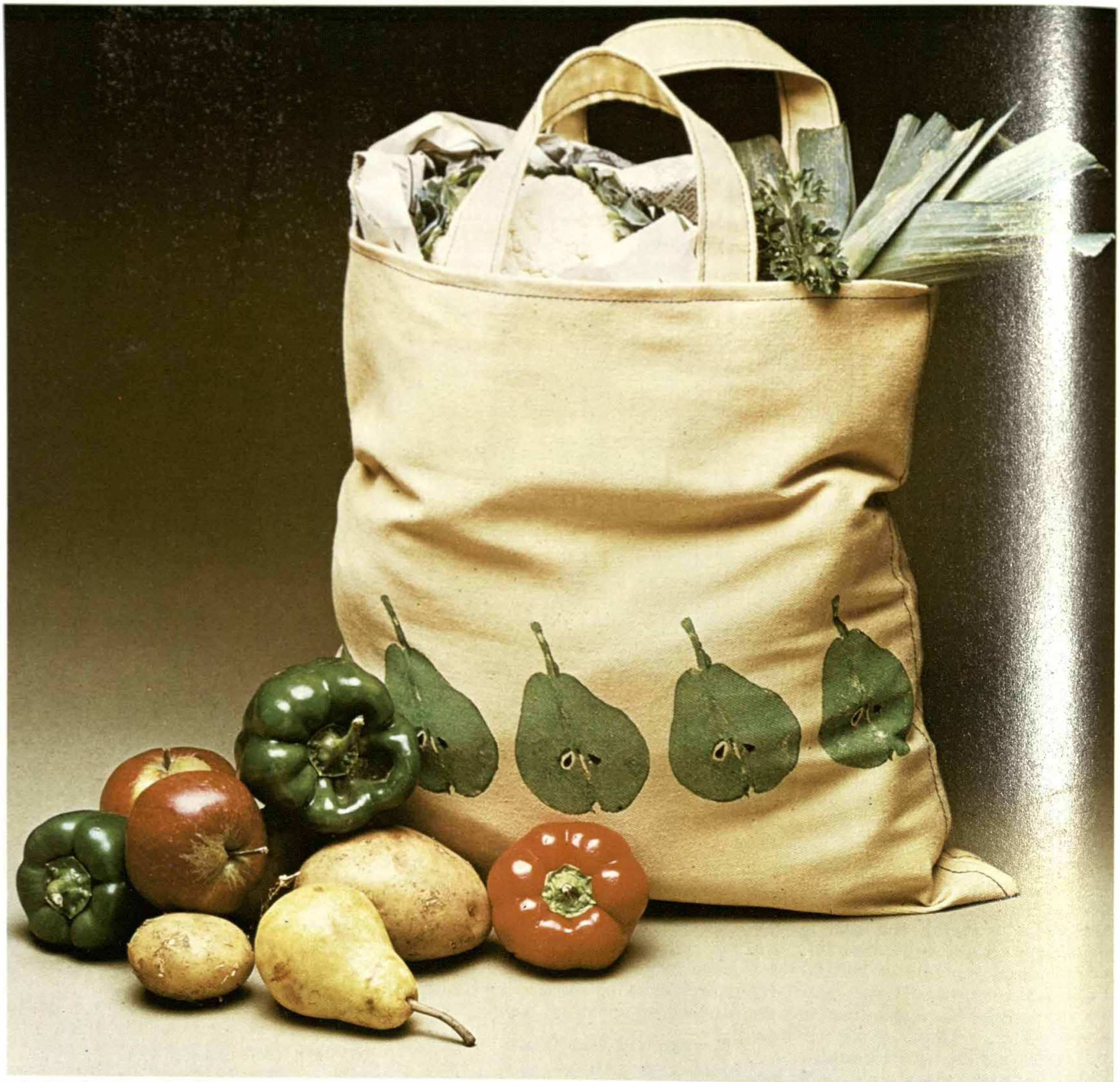
☐ Determine how large you want the mats to be and cut the linen into squares 5cm (2″) larger all round than final size—you will trim them down after printing. This makes it easier to centre the motif accurately. The mats shown here are 15cm (6″) square, including a 2cm (¾″) fringe.

☐ Place a piece of felt or blanket on a table to give some softness underneath the fabric being printed. Place your fabric on top of this.

☐ Slice the fruit or vegetable in half and carefully dry the cut surface.

☐ Apply the dye fairly liberally with the stiff brush and do a test print first on a scrap of fabric.

You may want to apply more than one colour, as shown on the apple prints. To do this, simply apply your chosen colours next to each other and gently blend the edges where they meet, using light, even strokes. The colours will merge into each other and you will ob-



Steve Bicknell

Eyecatching shopping bag—printed with halved fruits or vegetables—makes plain denim look really special.

tain the best results if you use colours which, when mixed, produce an intermediate colour which suits your print. For instance, on one of the apple prints red merges into orange via a reddish-orange. On the other apple print orange merges through yellow to green; both the mixture of orange and yellow and that of yellow and green produce acceptable intermediate colours. If you apply orange immediately next to green, the area where they mix will become brown and rather dark.

You can experiment with blending colour with dyes on paper. You may become interested in the whole fascinating subject of colour theory. If so, your local library should be able to provide some useful reading on the subject.

When printing, do not bang the fruit down as it may slide around, but carefully place it and apply gentle, even pressure. Some parts such as stalks will need to be pressed down with the end of a pencil. Lift the fruit away from the fabric very carefully.

☐ When you are confident of how much dye to apply and how hard to press to get an even print, go on to make your final prints.

☐ Paint the seeds in afterwards with a paintbrush or, as with the green pepper, with the end of a matchstick.

☐ When the prints are completely dry, iron the fabric to fix the dye.

☐ With a pencil dot at each corner mark the size of square required, excluding the fringe (11cm (4½″) square in the mats illustrated). You may find it easier to cut a square of cardboard to the size required: slide it under the fabric and centre your motif. Mark each corner of the square with a dot.

☐ Machine stitch from dot to dot, outlining the inner square.

☐ Mark another square, 2cm (¾″) larger all round, and cut the mats to this size.

☐ Now fray the cloth from the cut edge to the line of stitching to make a fringe all round.

To make a shopping bag

You will need:

53cm (21″) of 90cm (36″) wide denim,

linen, thick calico or other similar light-coloured material.

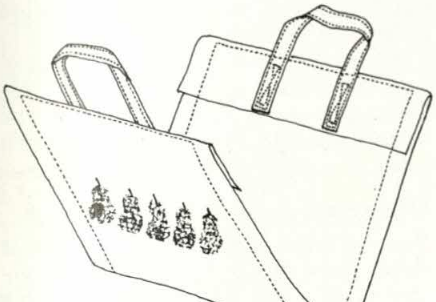
☐ Cut a piece of fabric 90cm x 45cm (36″x18″) for the body of the bag and reserve the strip left over for the handles.

The selvedges or 45cm (18″) edges form the top edges of the bag.

☐ To find the position for the base of the pears, measure 38cm (15″) down from one top edge at each side and mark with a pin. As a guide line pin a strip of paper from side to side at position of pins, to mark the base line of the pears. There is no need for a pencil line which might be difficult to erase later. Print the pears as described for the glass mats.

☐ Mark a 10cm (4″) turning along each top edge with a line of running stitches. Take the long strip of fabric and fold in half lengthwise, right sides together. Stitch down long edge, turn right side out and press. Topstitch along sides about 6mm ($\frac{1}{4}$″) in from the edge. Cut the strip in half.

☐ Stitch handles to bag as shown, turning raw ends under (fig.1).



1

Work topstitching round edges of bag.

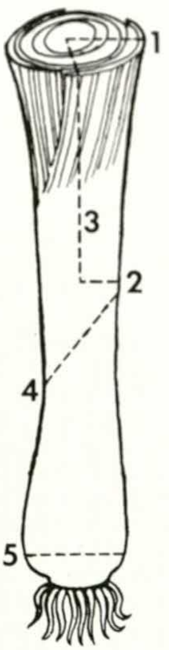
☐ Turn under top edges of bag along marked line. Pin in place and press along fold edge.

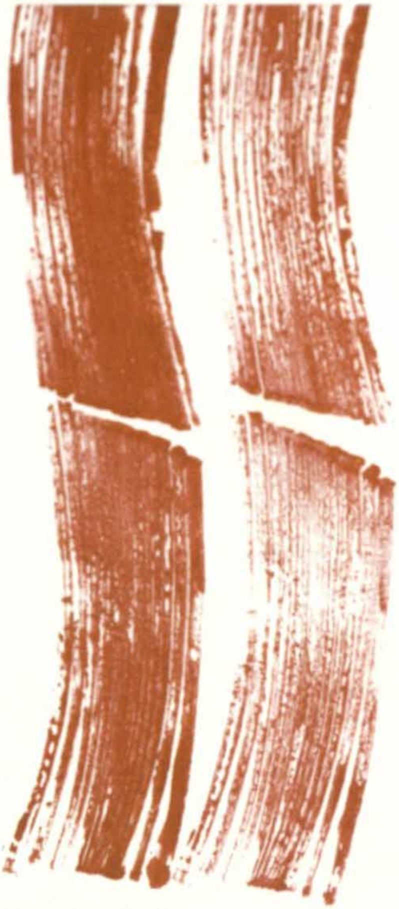
☐ Work lines of topstitching along the top of the bag edges close to the fold, and down the sides 2.5cm (1″) in from the edge.

☐ Fold the bag in half, right sides together, and stitch sides closed taking a 12mm ($\frac{1}{2}$″) seam allowance. Press seams open and turn right sides out.

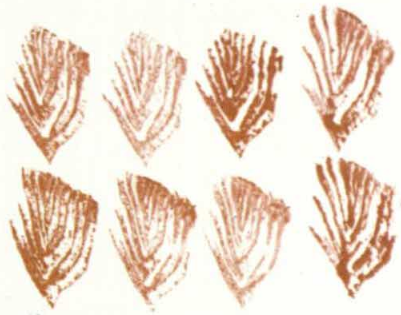
Positioning prints with paper strip.

You can quite simply obtain beautiful printed patterns from most fruit and vegetables. Look closely at those you use everyday and, as you cut them up, think of how they would print and the way colour could be used to heighten the effect. The diagram below shows the various cuts and their respective printed effects, all from one leek. Try an onion cut across the middle or even walnut shells or mushrooms.

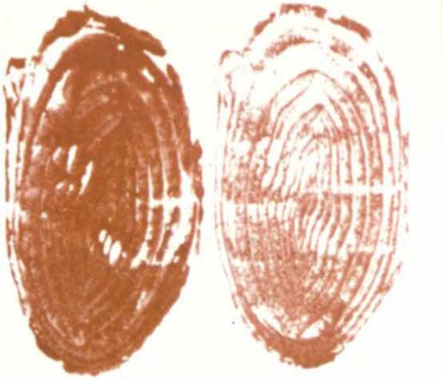




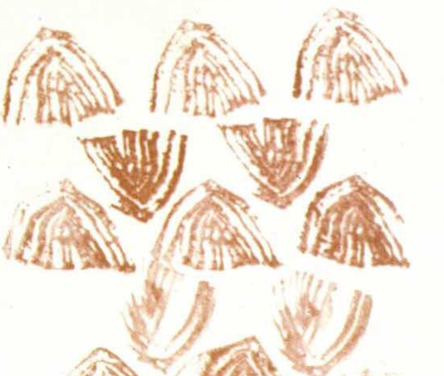
Cut 3: lengthwise



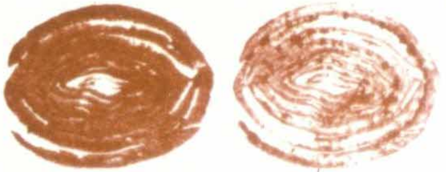
Cut 1: the tips of the leaves



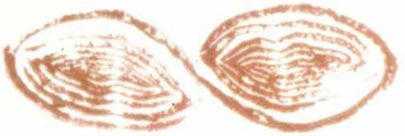
Cut 4: on the diagonal



Cut 2: across the middle



Cut 5: across the base



Cut 5 printed side-by-side

Janet Allen

Door curtain from jump rings

Metal 2

Jump rings can be used in dozens of ways. As shown in Metal Chapter 1, they provide the simplest way to join various sections of jewelry. But they can also be used to join other materials, such as squares of sheet acetate, sheet vinyl, linoleum or foil-covered cardboard, to make decorative hangings.

Making a door curtain

This attractive door curtain is ideal to keep a room cool in hot weather and to keep flies and insects out. It can hang from any door as a room divider and is especially useful if you have limited space and don't want a door closed all the time—you could even remove the door itself. It is also useful hanging between the kitchen and the pantry or to camouflage a long passage in a hall.

The door curtain is both inexpensive and easy to make and a good way of using up a spare piece of sheet vinyl flooring or linoleum. Simply cut the flooring into strips and join them together with a series of jump rings. You could improvise by substituting curtain rings for the jump rings.

The lengths given easily cover an average door, but the exact amount of floor covering needed will depend on the size you want to cut the strips and the spacing between the rows. Make the last piece of each strip slightly longer, so that when you hang the strips you can adjust the length by cutting off the excess.

The size of the jump rings will also affect the size of the curtain, as will the position of the holes through which you slip the jump rings. These holes should not be less than 5mm (¼") from the edge of the rectangles.

You will need:

1.25sq m (1½sq yd) sheet vinyl flooring or linoleum

37m (40yd) tinned copper wire 1.6mm diameter (gauge 14)

One dowel, 12mm-15mm (½"-¾") diameter, long enough to fit the doorway

Tools. Hammer, pair of wire cutters, pliers. For vinyl flooring, heavy scissors and leather punch. For linoleum, trimming knife, and bradawl or large nail

☐ From the linoleum cut strips 12.5cm x 2.5cm (5"x1"). Cut vinyl floor covering with scissors, linoleum with trimming knife. For an average door you will need 392 pieces to make 28 strips each with 14 pieces of linoleum.

☐ Make a hole for the jump rings in the centre of each end of the rectangles about 5mm (¼") from the edge. Set aside 28 strips with only one hole for the last piece of each strip. If using vinyl flooring make small holes with punch. If using linoleum, support it on a piece of wood and pierce it with a bradawl or nail with a blow from the hammer.

☐ To make the jump rings coil the wire around a tubular shape with a diameter of about 2.5cm (1")—a broom handle will do. (See Metal 1 p25).

☐ Remove the coil of wire from the tube and, using the cutters, cut along the length of the coil to separate the rings. You will need 364 jump rings of 2.5cm (1") diameter and 28 of 4cm (1½") diameter to thread on to the dowel rod.

☐ To link the rectangles slip the jump rings through the holes and close them with the pliers. Each completed strip should start with a large jump ring and finish with a rectangle which has only one hole in it.

As the size of the curtain will vary according to the size of the door you want to cover, you can do the work in stages until you have enough strips to cover the required size.

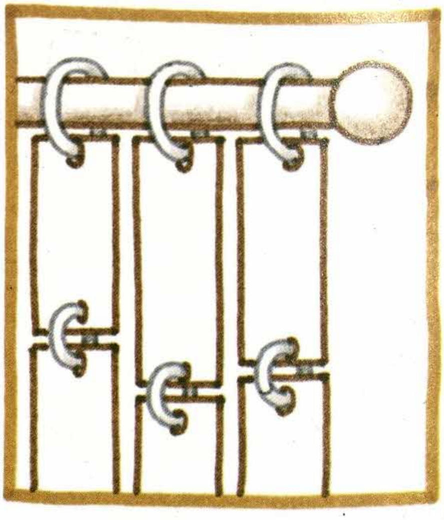
☐ Slip the dowel through the large jump rings and fix the curtain above the door in the same way as you would an ordinary curtain (fig. 1).

☐ If using linoleum or vinyl flooring, you can either paint the rough side before cutting or glue tin foil to it. The curtain then looks attractive on both sides.

Other ways to use jump rings

You can link a series of jump rings or metal discs to form a chain-mail firescreen or a deep fringe round a big metal lampshade. If the jump rings are neat enough they can be joined to make a belt or even a purse.

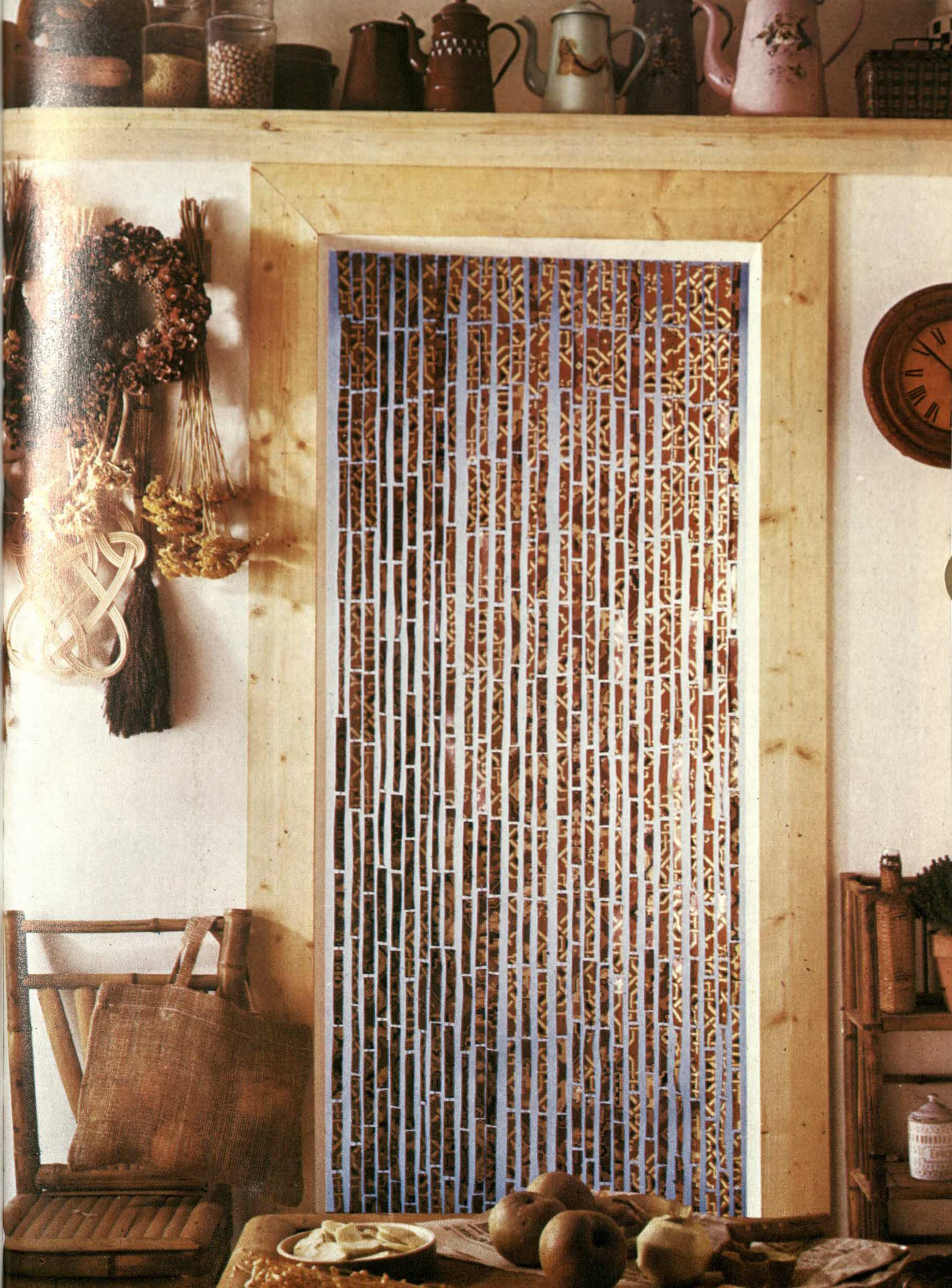
100 Idées de Marie Claire/Mirand



Victoria Drew

1. *Slip dowel through large jump rings.*

Left: assembling tools and equipment. Right: the completed door curtain is light and airy.



Sand candles and garden flares

Make evening garden parties glow with flares, stabbed firmly into grass or earth. They are made by building up a candle on a wick by pouring molten wax down the wick—the same process used for making long church candles.

To make a flare

For one flare
You will need:
A 45cm (18″) length of 2.5cm (1″) wick
200 gm (½lb) powdered paraffin wax
25 gm (1oz) stearin
A piece of cotton cloth, 50cm x 12.5 cm (20″x5″)
A 45cm (18″) length of bamboo cane, 1.25cm (½″) in diameter
Adhesive tape
Wax dye if required

☐ Melt stearin with dye (if you want a coloured candle) and add paraffin wax. When it has melted, put the wick into the molten wax, then remove it, allowing the drips to fall back into the pan. When the wick has cooled a little, pull it taut, allowing it to stiffen.

☐ Heat the wax to 71°C (160°F) then, using a tablespoon and holding the wick over the pan, spoon the molten wax down the wick. Don't have the wax too hot as it will re-melt the wax already built up on the candle and so will take longer to make.

☐ Spoon the wax around the wick about once a minute, rotating the wick between forefinger and thumb so that you get an even coat all over the wick. You may have to reheat the wax about every 10 minutes — remember to keep it on a low flame.

☐ You can run the candle under the cold tap to speed up the process but wipe the candle well with a tissue, as water trapped in the candle will make it splutter when burning.

☐ As the candle gets bigger it may require 3 or more spoonfuls in one go. Build it up to about 2cm (¾″) thick. If it is knobbly, lightly roll it out on a clean, smooth, cool surface while it is still warm to get rid of uneveness. Leave it flat to cool and harden.

☐ Split the bamboo into 4 for about 12cm (5″) down from one end. Holding it open, push the candle base in, taking care not to cut your hands on the sharp edges of the bamboo; stick the candle to the bamboo with adhesive tape.

☐ Put the cotton cloth into the remainder of the wax in the pot and heat slowly. When the cloth has absorbed the wax, unfold it over the pan, allowing the drips to fall back into the pan. When it has stopped dripping, wrap the cloth tightly around the candle, and lay it on its side to dry.

Dick Miller

Flare candles on bamboo stalks to light gardens or patios. Designed by David Constable.

Like dipped candles and rolled beeswax candles, sand candles do not require a mould. All that's necessary is an object that can make a clear-cut hole in sand. An ash-tray, ornament, jelly mould, the bottom of a bottle, jar or bowl — any of these will do.

You will need:
Paraffin wax
Stearin
Dye (optional)
Thermometer
Sand
A bucket or box for the sand
An object to make the shape
Wick: choose one that leaves at least 2.5cm (1″) of wax unburned. For instance, if the candle is 7.5cm (3″) in diameter, put in a 5cm (2″) wick
A wicking needle: this is for making the hole for the wick through the partially set wax in the sand

☐ Fill a bucket or box with clean, damp sand and smooth off the surface to make it absolutely level without packing it down. Don't have a little bit of sand in the bottom of a deep box as you will not be able to impress the mould firmly enough.

☐ Dig a hole in the centre of the sand, push your mould into it, then remove the mould. If the sand is too wet the hole will not keep its shape, nor will enough sand cling to the wax.

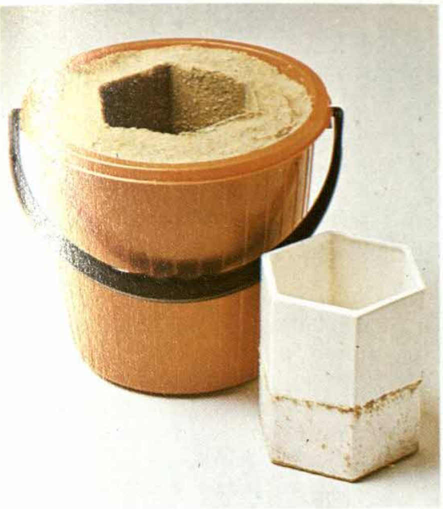
Melvin Grey

Pushing the mould into the sand.

☐ Add stearin and dye to the paraffin wax and heat it in a saucepan to 250°F (121°C).

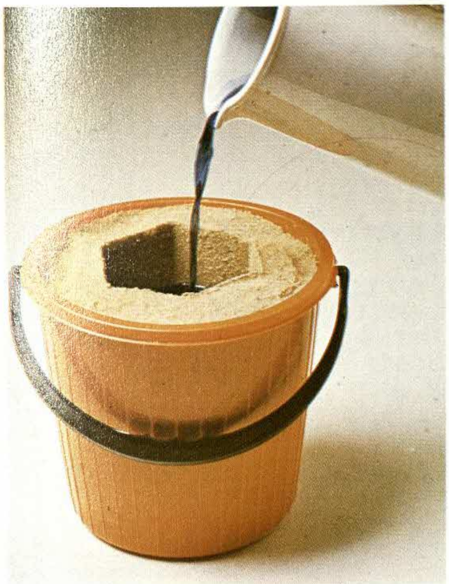
☐ Cut a length of wick to the depth of the candle; prime it by dipping it into the wax and pulling it straight.

☐ Pour the wax carefully into the shape in the sand. You may find it easier at first to pour the wax into a jug and from there into the hole. But remember that the hotter the wax the more sand is picked up; at 250°F (121°C) between 1.5cm (½″) and 2.5cm (1″) is picked up. If a thicker sand wall is required, the wax should be even hotter. As the wax cools, the level in the sand will drop; refill the hole as necessary, keeping the temperature of the new wax high.



Remove the mould carefully.

☐ Allow the sand candle to harden in a cold place for one or two hours. After this time, push the wicking needle down the centre and leave it standing upright.



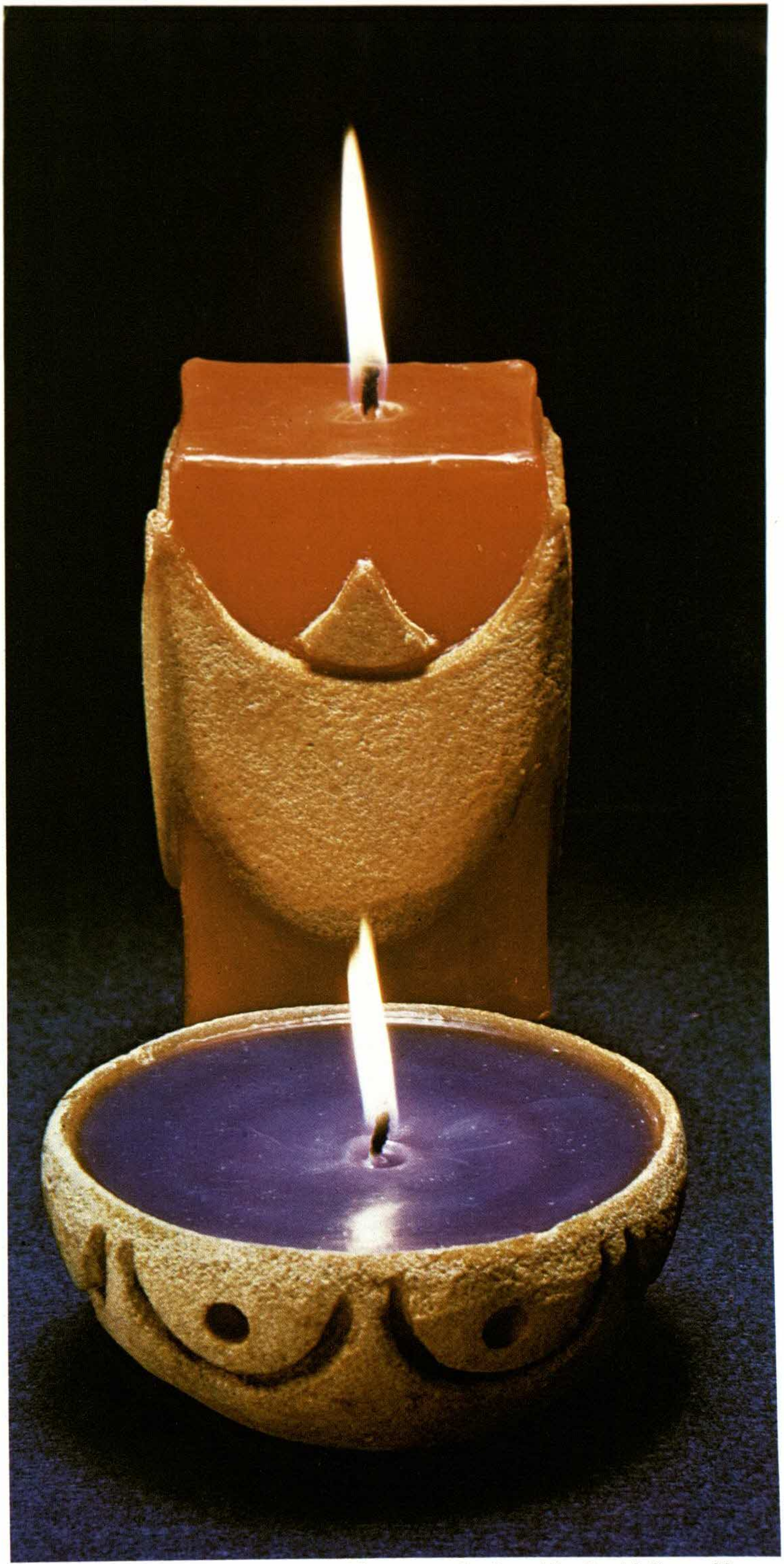
Pouring the wax into the sand mould.

☐ Leave the candle overnight and dig it out the next day, loosening the sand around it carefully and brushing away any loose sand.

☐ Remove the needle and insert the already waxed wick into the hole.

☐ Top up around the wick hole with melted wax at 220°F (104°C) and allow it to set.

☐ Carve away areas of sand to make a design, taking care not to dig too deeply into the wax. If the right wick is chosen, the sand shell will remain intact after the candle has burned out and can be refilled with new wax.



Dick Miller

Colourful sand candles have biscuit-like crusts. Designed by David Constable.

Drawing a heart accurately

Design know-how 3

A heart is one of the most difficult shapes to draw freehand, since it must be symmetrical or it will look unbalanced. If you use the following methods, however, you will be able to draw the heart illustrated accurately in any size you want—and we have included hints on how, with a little practice, you can make other hearts with different proportions.

You will need:
Compasses, or string and pencil
Ruler and pencil

☐ First you must decide what size you want the heart to be. The instructions refer to 'units', which are $\frac{1}{12}$ of the total height. Decide what size a unit should be and use the same proportions as given here. The heart will be fractionally taller than it is wide, but when deciding what size it should be, you can consider the height and width to be the same.

☐ Draw a vertical line (AB) 12 units long, which will run up the middle of the heart. Mark off a point C, 2 units from A, and a point D, 3 units from A. Make a right angle at D and extend this line so you now have a cross.

☐ Set the span of your compasses to 3 units, put the pin at C and draw 2 small arcs to cut the cross-line at E and F. Now put the pin at E and F in turn and draw 2 arcs to connect C and the cross-line (fig.1).

☐ Set the span of your compasses to 8 units, place the pin on the cross-line, 8 units in from where one of the first arcs cuts it, and draw an arc. Repeat on the other side (fig.2).

☐ Finally, draw 2 lines from B as tangents to the last 2 arcs, ie so that they will touch the arcs but will not cut them even if extended (fig.3). These lines complete the heart with a point at the bottom.

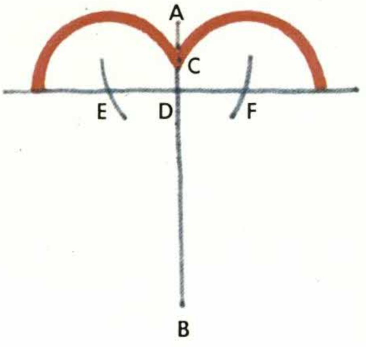
Other heart shapes

You can make lots of different hearts with the same basic method. For a thinner shape, you can make the radius of the top arcs smaller (fig.4). Or you could draw the cross-line further down, so that AD becomes, say, 4 units instead of 3. Or make the radius of the top arcs bigger for a plumper heart.

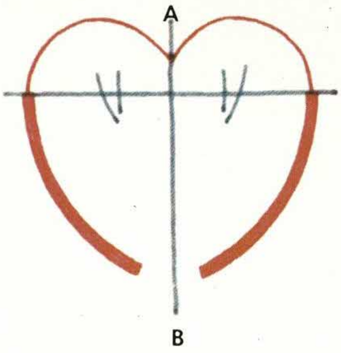
If you want to avoid the straight lines, you should draw curves instead of the bottom tangents, using 2 more arcs with a radius of, say, 14 units (fig.5).

If you decide to use another pair of arcs—or even more—be careful to align them to make a smooth join. You should be able to draw a straight line connecting the centres from which you drew each arc and the point where they meet (fig.6).

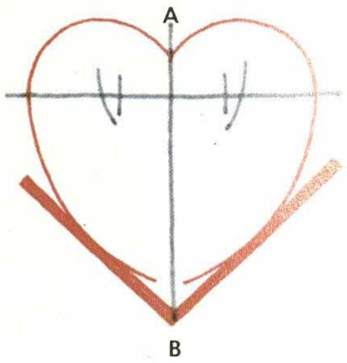
Trial and error is the best way of 'personalizing' your hearts—draw some hearts freehand to see what shape you prefer and then adjust the method accordingly.



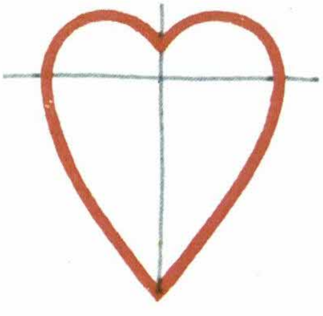
1. *The cross and top pair of arcs.*



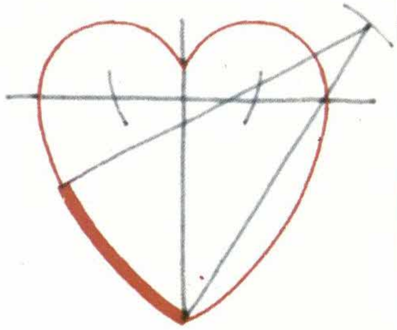
2. *The second pair of arcs.*



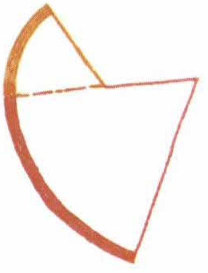
3. *The final lines.*



4. *A slimmer heart; the top pair of arcs have a radius of $2\frac{1}{2}$ units.*



5. *A heart using three pairs of arcs and no straight lines.*

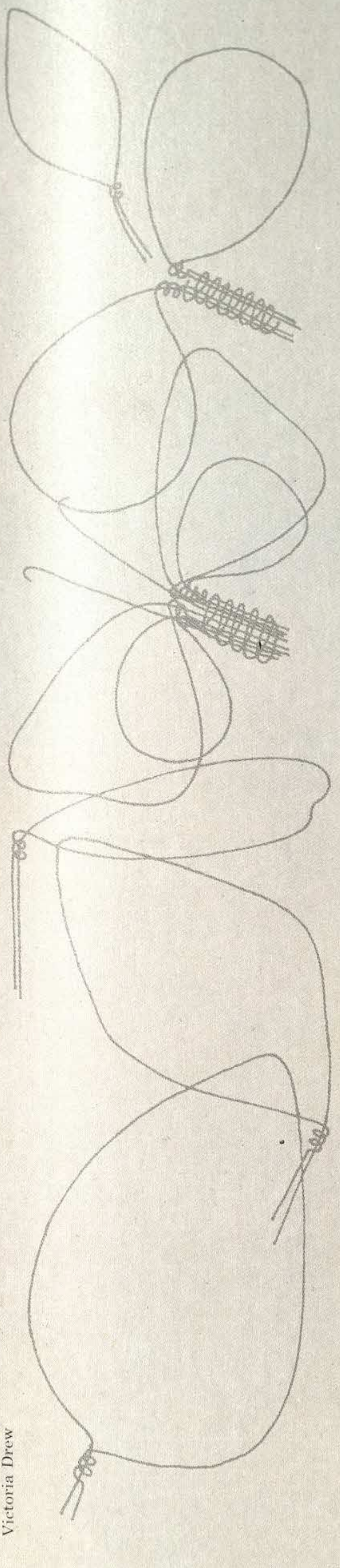


6. *Join arcs smoothly, aligning centres from which you draw them and point where they join.*

Victoria Drew

INSTITUTE … FOR WOMEN.
Deptt of Extension Services.
CALCUTTA-27

Creative ideas 3



Victoria Drew

Cut lengths of wire and bend into a variety of shapes—petals, leaves and butterflies are all simple to make. Add chenille-covered wire for bodies and flower centres.

Take a lucky dip

Working with resin film is one of the simplest and most economical crafts; all you need is some copper or galvanized wire and a tin of resin film. Optional extras: scraps of chenille-covered wire or coloured pipe cleaners for stamens or insect bodies; green plastic or crepe paper for covering stems.

How it's done. Cut a length of wire and bend it into shape. A clematis petal, for example, will take about 25cm (10″) of wire but allow a little more than the finished circumference so that you have a stem to hold the flower by when dipping and then drying.

Twist the ends of the wire together or cross them to form a closed shape. Holding the shape by this stem, dip it quickly in and out of the resin (not too quickly or bubbles will appear on the surface of the film). Turn it up immediately so that the resin flows back towards the stem. This forms a barely visible vein down the centre—just right for leaves or butterflies' wings.

Draw the edge of the shape across the tin to wipe off the excess resin, then jab the stem into a potato or a polystyrene tile to dry; this will take only a few minutes.

For a flower, make a number of petals in the same way and twist their stems together at the back.

To form the crinkly edge of leaves or petals, curl the centre of the piece of wire round and round a knitting or darning needle.

Mix colours to make different shades. For a lighter tone, add a little clear resin to the chosen colour; for a darker shade, dip several times.

Variegated leaves and wings can be made by dripping a little of one colour on top of another and then dipping through both layers.

To dip something that is taller than the depth of the tin, pour the resin into a tall vessel and tilt it. You can pour the excess resin back into the tins but it will thicken. Peel off any resin clinging to the vessel—or yourself—when it has dried. A tin will last a long time if you remember to replace the lid tightly. If the resin hardens add a teaspoonful of thinner.

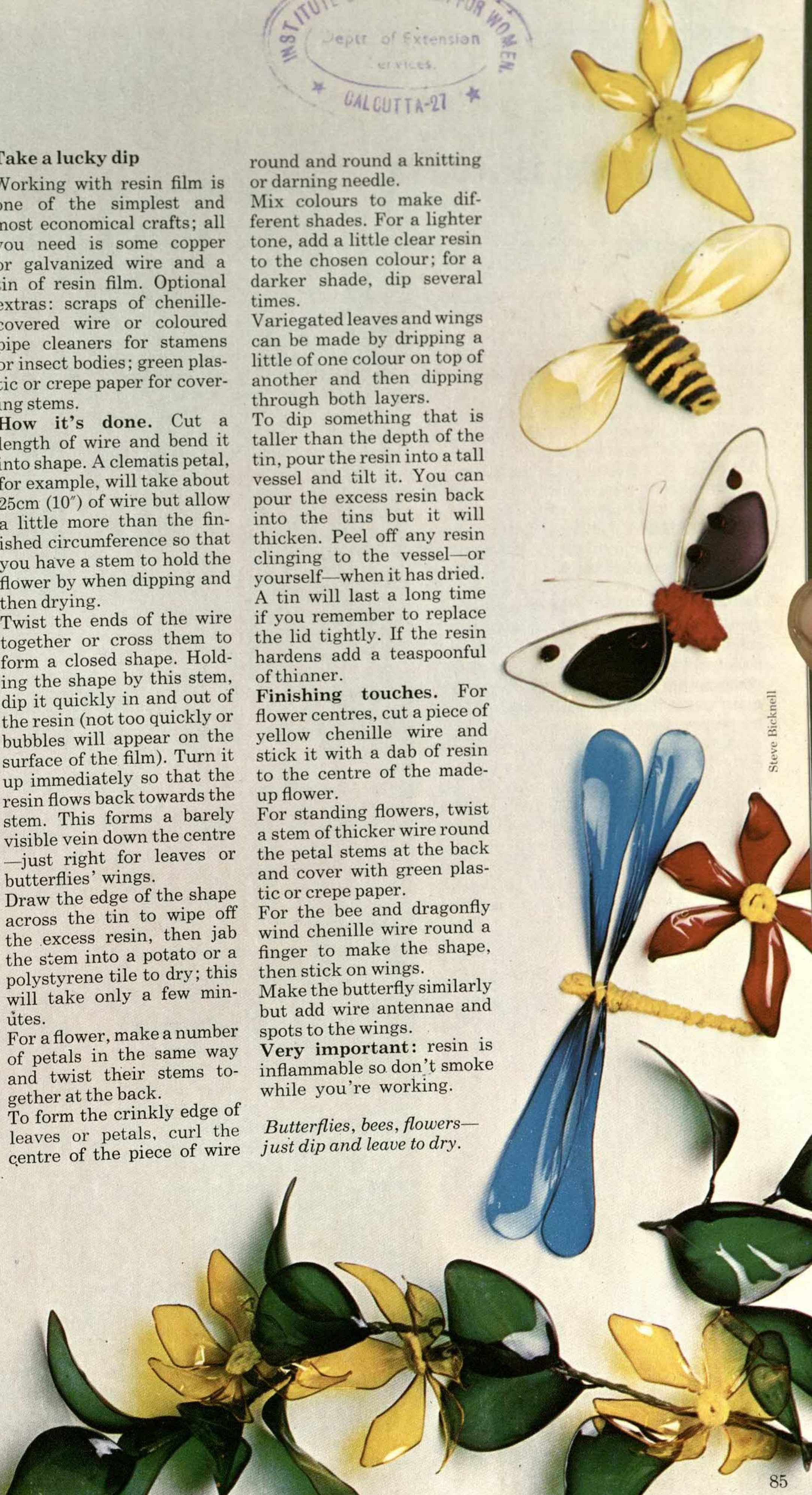
Finishing touches. For flower centres, cut a piece of yellow chenille wire and stick it with a dab of resin to the centre of the made-up flower.

For standing flowers, twist a stem of thicker wire round the petal stems at the back and cover with green plastic or crepe paper.

For the bee and dragonfly wind chenille wire round a finger to make the shape, then stick on wings.

Make the butterfly similarly but add wire antennae and spots to the wings.

Very important: resin is inflammable so don't smoke while you're working.



Steve Bicknell

Butterflies, bees, flowers—just dip and leave to dry.

Making tissue paper flowers

Paper 4

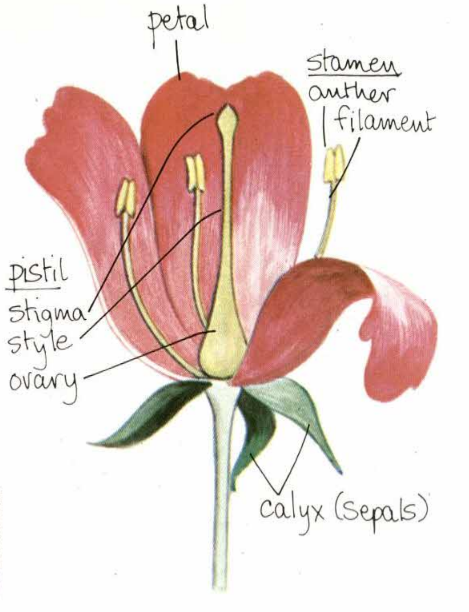
Artificial flowers are not new; the beauty of real flowers has always been a source of fascination and attempts to copy them over the years have been ingenious and varied. All sorts of different materials have been used, including wax, shells, glass, china, wood, felt, wool and many different kinds of fabric and paper.

Artificial flowers are now most commonly made in paper—they are easy to make and have great decorative appeal, and there is still scope for those with a serious interest in flowers to achieve accurate results.

Look at a real flower

Before beginning to make flowers, it is important to know how real ones are constructed. For a cross-section of the components of a flower, showing the main parts together with their proper names, see fig.1.

Although you can make satisfactory and decorative flowers by learning some useful papercraft techniques, you may wish to go a stage further and make some that are closely copied from nature. It is then important to know exactly how a flower is formed by taking it apart and noting the exact number of petals and where they are placed, the shape of the calyx and the distribution of the stamens. Whatever kind of flower you are making, it is a good idea to incorporate some accurate botanical details—they make the flower more interesting and subtle.



Barbara Firth

1. *Cross section through a composite flower, showing the main parts.*

Tissue paper

Tissue is ideal for the beginner. It gives good results without requiring a great deal of expertise in handling, and the colours available are pretty enough to give the flowers the glow and fragility of real ones. A 'rainbow' variety is also available which gives an attractive effect to flower petals. The quality of tissue paper varies from flimsy to firm: it is worth buying the best available because it gives better, more long-lasting results. Tissue paper does have certain disadvantages, however, in comparison with the initially more difficult to handle crepe paper. It cannot be shaped in the same way, and if it becomes over-handled or crumpled it may lose its bright crispness. It also fades rather quickly when exposed to sunlight, so arrange the completed flowers in an attractive container placed well back from the window, and direct some lamplight through them in the evening. Take care not to get tissue paper wet; even a few spots of water can cause the dye to run and spoil the paper.

Flower-making equipment

The only other materials required are wire and stem covering. Florists' wire is a very fine wire used for securing the flower to the stem, and galvanized wire in various thicknesses is used for stems. Wire stems can be covered with strips of green crepe paper, but rubberized garden tape can also be used.

Only the most basic equipment is necessary—a pair of good quality sharp, pointed scissors with a blade

Add a splash of colour to dark walls with pompon paper flowers. Fill a jug with flowers on covered stems and place against a contrasting background. While making the flowers, pin individual blooms directly to a wall to prevent them getting crumpled. From a kit designed by Priscilla Lobley.

Melvin Grey

about 6cm (2½″) long, a pair of wire cutters (the sort used for electrical repairs) and a PVA glue or a paste.

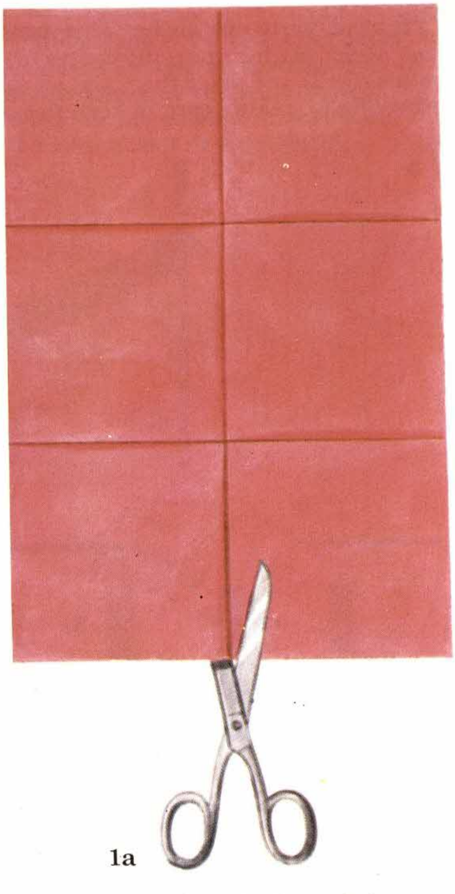
To make tissue peonies

Peonies are large, striking flowers that vary in colour from yellow, white and magenta to all shades of pink and red. The dark red varieties are the most familiar, but there are delicate two-shaded flowers in tones of white and gold, pink and cream and pale and deep pink that look particularly subtle made up in tissue paper.

You will need:
For 2 flowers you will need 2 sheets of tissue paper, each in a different shade, such as magenta and lemon or pink and cream.
25cm-35cm (10″-15″) of 1.25mm (18 Gauge) galvanized wire.
Florists' wire or green plastic-covered wire. Green crepe paper.
PVA glue or paste

☐ Cut off the required number of galvanized wire lengths for stems and straighten them out.

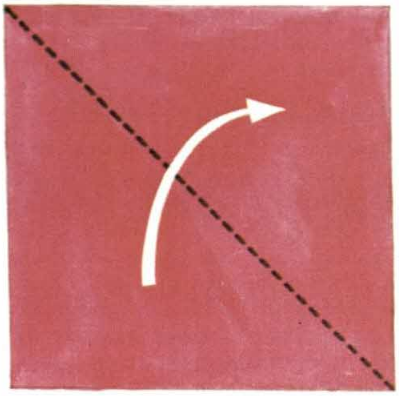
☐ Each sheet of tissue paper measures about 50cm x 74cm (20″x30″). Divide each sheet into 6 equal squares by folding the paper in half and then into 3 (fig.1a). For each flower you will need 3 squares of one shade for the centre petals and 3 squares of the other colour for the outer petals.



1a

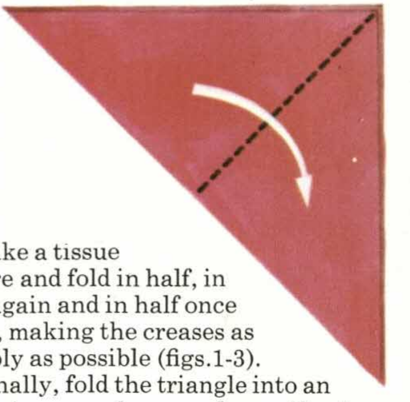
1a. *Dividing a whole sheet of tissue paper into six equal squares.*

1

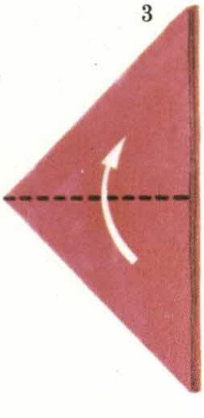


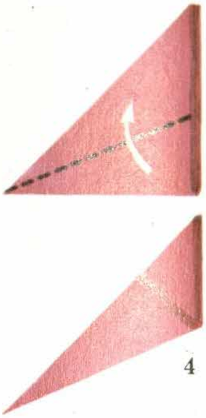
Barbara Firth

2



3





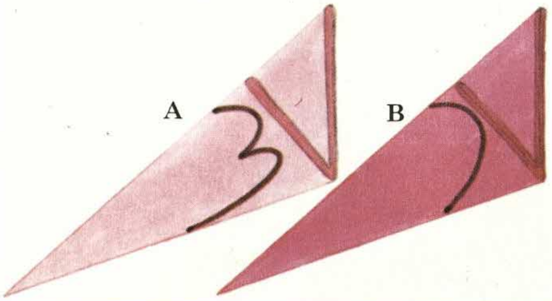
4

☐ Take a tissue square and fold in half, in half again and in half once more, making the creases as sharply as possible (figs.1-3).

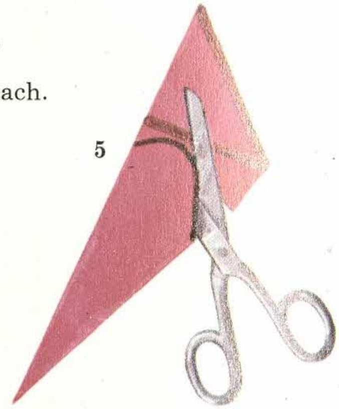
☐ Finally, fold the triangle into an irregular cone shape as shown (fig.4).

Final flower head in subtle shades.

☐ The next step makes the shape of the petals, so take care to make the cut exactly as shown (fig.5). Cutting line A indicates the shape of the inside petals, cutting line B the outside petals. Cut 3 of each.

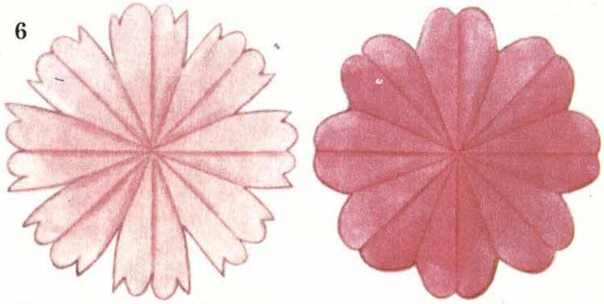


5

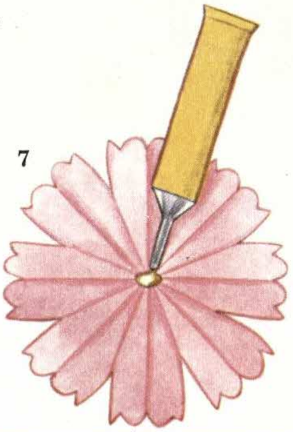


☐ Spread out the petals but do not flatten them (fig.6). Dab a spot of glue on to the centre of each of the petals (fig.7) and place them one on top of each other (fig.8), taking care to keep the creases in.

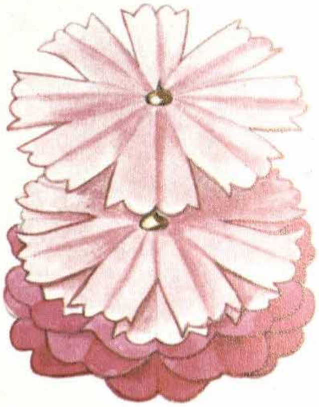
6



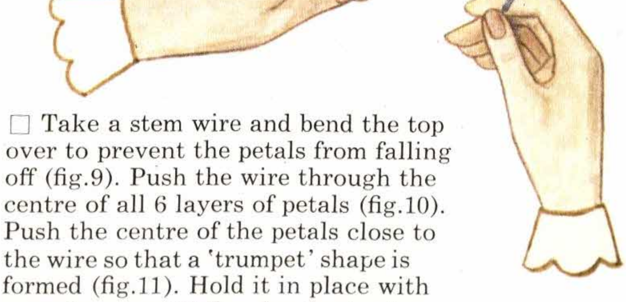
7



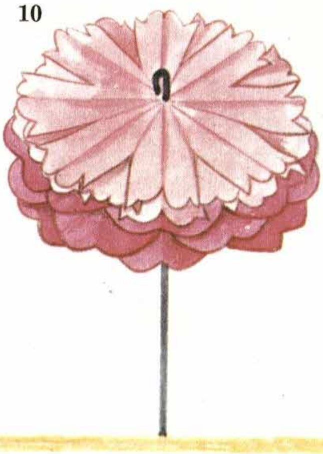
8



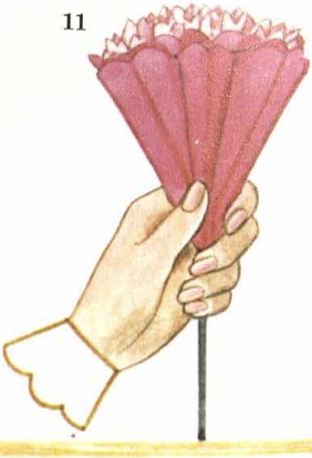
9



10

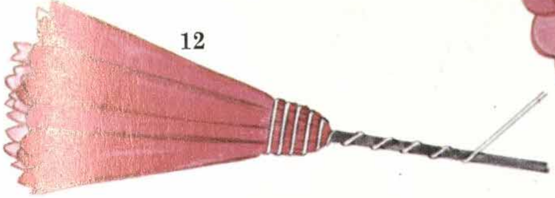


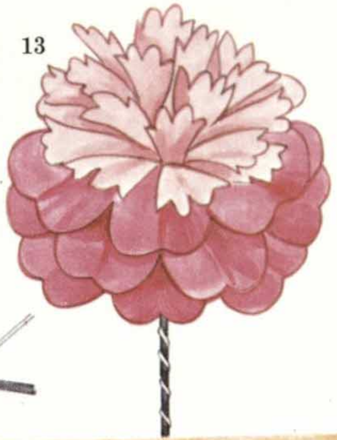
11



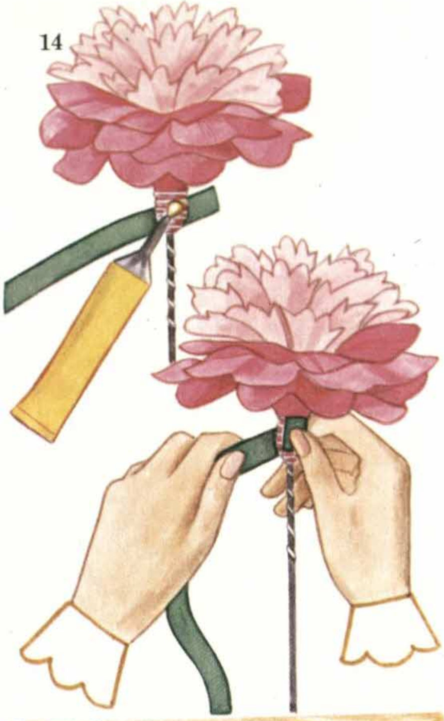
☐ Take a stem wire and bend the top over to prevent the petals from falling off (fig.9). Push the wire through the centre of all 6 layers of petals (fig.10). Push the centre of the petals close to the wire so that a 'trumpet' shape is formed (fig.11). Hold it in place with your finger until the glue begins to hold.

☐ Secure base of flower by binding tightly with Florists' or green plastic-covered wire (fig.12). Shape the flower by gently separating each of the layers of outer petals and turning them downwards, and by separating the inner petals and leaving them standing vertically (fig.13).

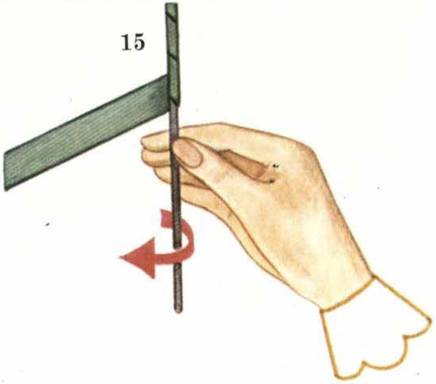

12

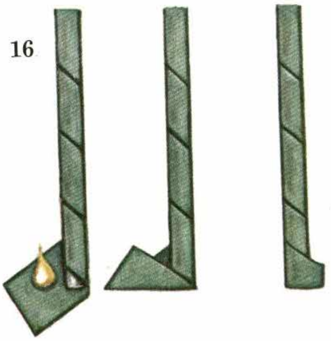

13

☐ Cover the stem wire by cutting a strip of green crepe paper about 2.5cm (1") wide and wrapping it very tightly round the base of the flower. A dab of glue on the end of the paper may help to hold it in position (fig.14).


14

☐ Rotate the wire, and wrap paper strip in a bandaging movement down to the bottom of the wire (fig.15). Break off the paper and secure the end with a spot of glue (fig.16).


15


16

Melvin Grey

Delicate tissue paper peonies designed by Priscilla Lobley.

Slab pottery picture tiles

Clay 3

As well as being patted or sliced into a square block, clay can also be rolled out flat, rather like pastry. Clay sheets rolled out in this way are called slabs, and potters use them to build slab pots and dishes, to make sculptures and geometrical constructions.

The slab, because it is so easy to make, is an excellent form for the beginner to work with. Once rolled out to an even thickness, the clay can be cut into tiles with a sharp knife or scalpel, and other slabs of varying thickness can be trimmed and pressed on to the clay surface to give a relief effect. Like the block, the slab can be painted, impressed with objects or modelled upon.

Making a clay slab

Using an ordinary wooden rolling pin and a flat surface such as a wooden table top, covered with hessian or canvas, begin by flattening a ball of clay (fig.1) and rolling out so that it makes a rough oval (fig.2).

The clay can finally be rolled so that it is an even thickness all over by placing it between two flat strips of wood, each as thick as the required depth of the slab, and then rolling it with the ends of the rolling pin resting on the wooden strips (fig.3).

Two cheap wooden rulers glued together, for example, give a 6mm (¼″) strip which is a useful thickness for tiles and similar shapes.

The resulting slab is now completely even, and the same thickness as the strips. Ease away the hessian (fig.4) as shown.

Relief modelling on a tile

The landscape tile shown here is a simple relief project that can be made in either natural or self-hardening clay. Follow these techniques to build up your own landscape, whether it is real or imagined.

To make a relief tile

You will need:

⅜kg (¾lb) clay
Poster paints for decorating
Clear varnish, if required
Sharp knife; wooden ruler; rolling pin; 2 sticks about 6mm (¼″) thick for rolling out clay; polythene sheeting.

☐ Roll out the clay evenly to a thickness of 6mm (¼″) to accommodate your tile shape. Measure and mark out the tile on the rolled-out clay, using a torn-off corner of newspaper to give the right angles.

☐ To cut the tile lay the ruler along the edges of the tile and, using this and the newspaper as a guide, trim away the sides of the tile with the sharp knife (fig.5). To do this, slide the knife through the clay from one corner to half way along one edge of the clay then remove it. Then slide it again from the opposite corner. If you slice straight along the edge you will stretch the clay out of shape. Keep the trimmed off pieces to build up the picture.

☐ Cut out a series of curving shapes to represent mountain and valley formations.

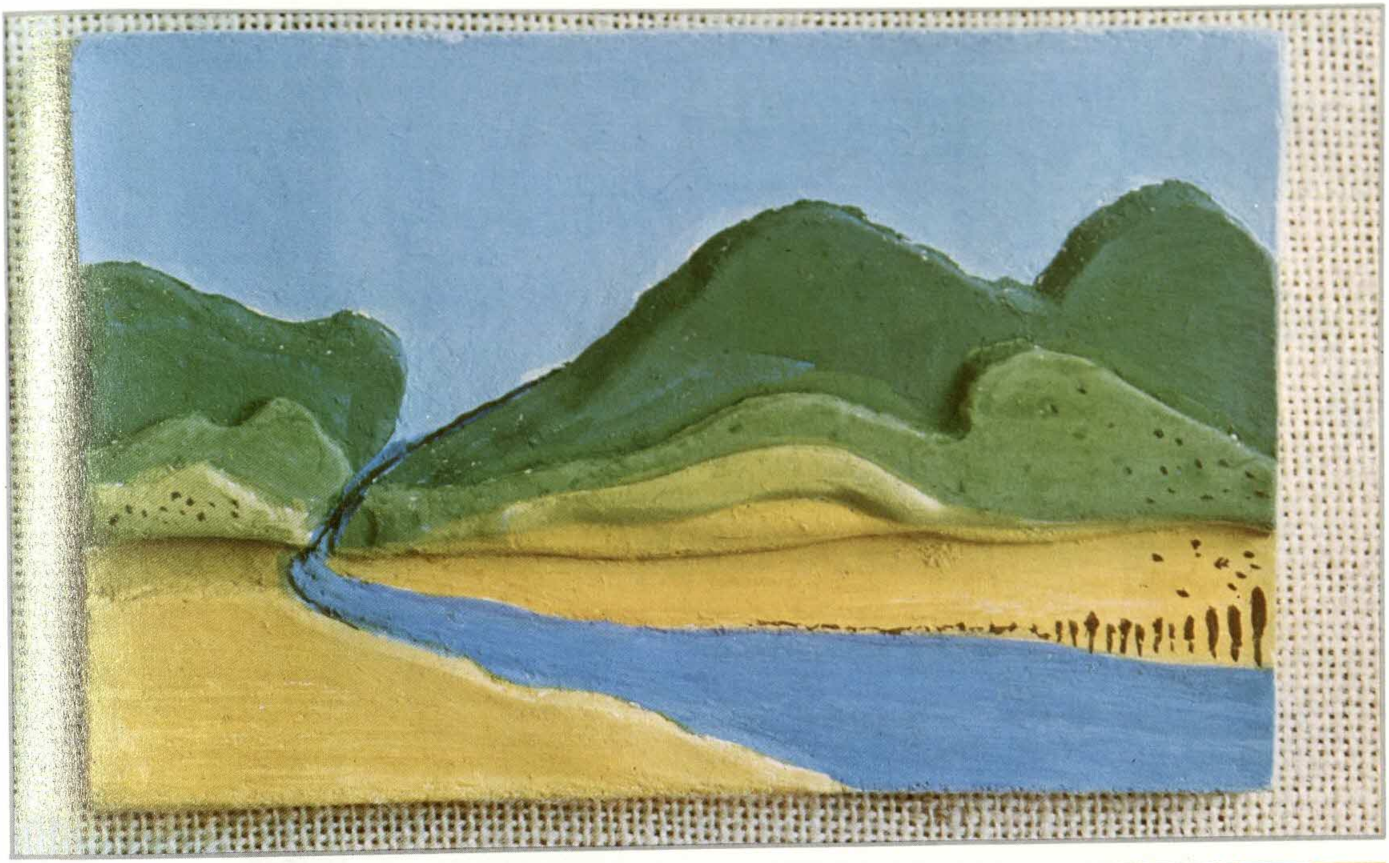
☐ Build up the scene gradually, starting with the background masses and positioning more shapes on top of them so that the foreground is in the highest relief. Stick each land mass into place by teasing the back of it with an old toothbrush dipped in water. Tease the clay area on to which it is to be fixed in the same way and press the relief slab firmly into position with the fingertips.

☐ When the landscape is complete, place it on a sheet of newspaper, cover with a sheet of polythene and leave it to dry out slowly and thoroughly.

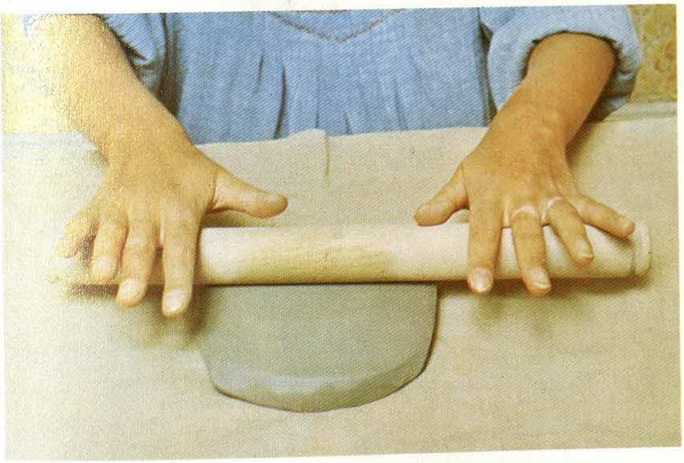
☐ When the tile is quite dry, paint it with poster colours. It is worth remembering that, unless you are a proficient painter, more striking effects are achieved with a few simple colours. As a general rule, paint the foreground high-reliefs in paler shades, toning down to dark colours in the distance. If desired, the completed tile can finally be painted with clear varnish or polyurethane lacquer to give it a glossy finish.

Right: landscape tile that makes an ideal first modelling project. Designed by Val Barry.

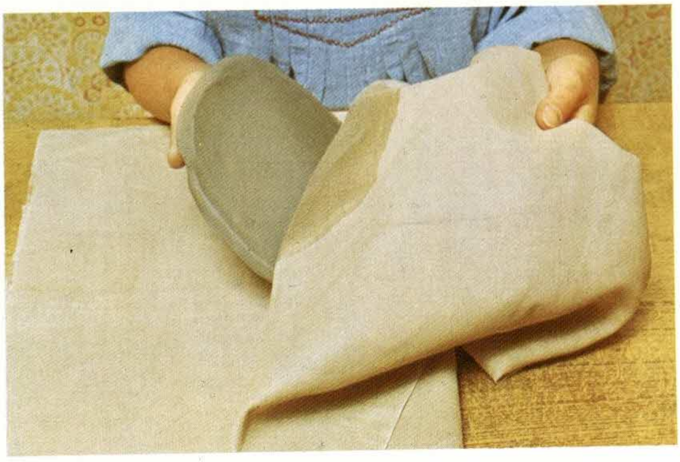
1. *Begin by flattening a square block of clay, using a wooden rolling pin.*



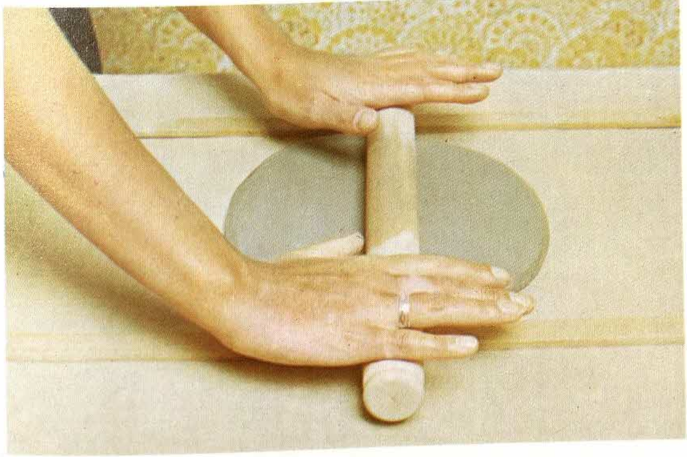
Melvin Grey



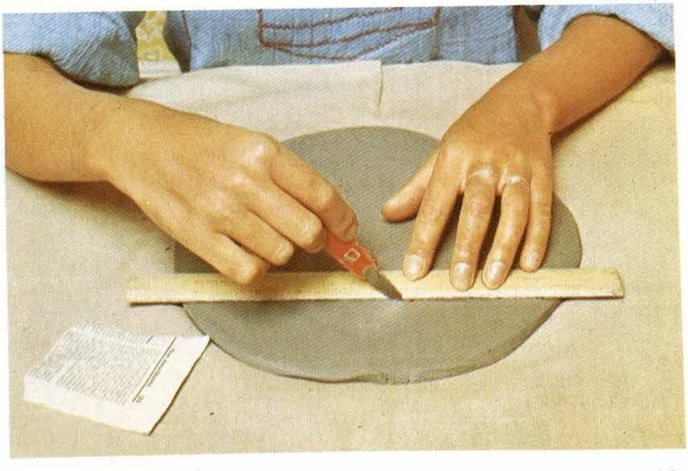
2. *First rolling—to flatten the clay into a rough oval.*



4. *Easing the hessian away from the clay for next stage.*



3. *Rolling in second direction to an even thickness, using two flat sticks as a guide.*



5. *Measuring out and cutting clay tile, using ruler as guide and a scrap of newspaper to give accurate right angles.*

Nelson Hargreaves

Coque d'Or

To make the face tile

The relief modelled picture is one way in which the basic tile can be decorated. As another idea, try your own version of the stylized face picture shown here, or try making an abstract panel.
Coloured stains in the form of special coloured powders for staining clay or colouring glazes have been used. As the pigment is expensive, initial projects are best kept small—about 20cm x 30cm (8″x12″)—as in the picture here. Choose 3 or 4 clay stains, remembering that fewer colours look more effective than a confusing variety, when combined with the texture of the clay.

Clay stained with coloured powders.

You will need:
1kg (2lb) clay
Coloured stains (coloured powders for staining clay or colouring glazes)
Flat wooden board or table; wooden rolling pin; 2 sticks about 6mm (¼″) thick for rolling out clay; steel ruler; sharp knife; tracing paper; polythene sheeting; clear varnish, if required
Nails, screws and hairpins, or other small objects for texturing clay
Thin layer of sponge or foam, large enough to cover the picture
Heavy book, large enough to cover the picture

☐ Select one pale shade for the tile base, and mix about 4 teaspoons of powder with enough water to dissolve it completely. Work this mixture into a 700gm (1½lb) ball of clay until the colour is evenly spread.

☐ For the applied decorations prepare small quantities of clay, about the same size as a pingpong ball, in the same way. Keep the different coloured balls of clay separate, and make sure that the clay stays moist by covering it with sheets of polythene.

☐ Trace off face shape given here and draw to scale (Design Know-how 4, page 112), keeping a margin of at least 5cm (2″) all around the picture.

☐ Roll the base clay out to an even 6mm (¼″) thickness. Patches of contrasting colour in the base clay are obtained by placing blobs of different colour on the tile, and rolling them in at the same time. It is best not to try to control where these areas merge but to let them find their own shape and position.

☐ Place the traced picture on the tile, and hold the corners in place with four small lumps of clay. Using a pencil, trace the design quickly on to the tile.

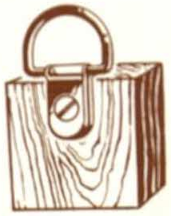
☐ Discard the paper and use a steel ruler and sharp knife to trim waste clay away from the picture.

☐ To apply the colour make clay beads by pinching off tiny pieces of clay in the different colours, and rolling them with the fingertips in the palm of your hand. It is easiest to build up the lines that form the picture first and then to fill in the areas of colour, so begin by pressing the beads in along the lines, and build up the solid areas gradually.

☐ Texture can be introduced after the beads have been applied with a pencil end, a matchstick, nail head or any other suitable shape.

☐ When the picture is finished, cover it with the foam and a heavy book, which will stop the clay warping as it dries out. When the picture is completely dry, finish it off with a coat of varnish.

☐ To hang the picture tile, screw a hook to a small square of wood and glue the wood to the tile with impact adhesive (fig.6).

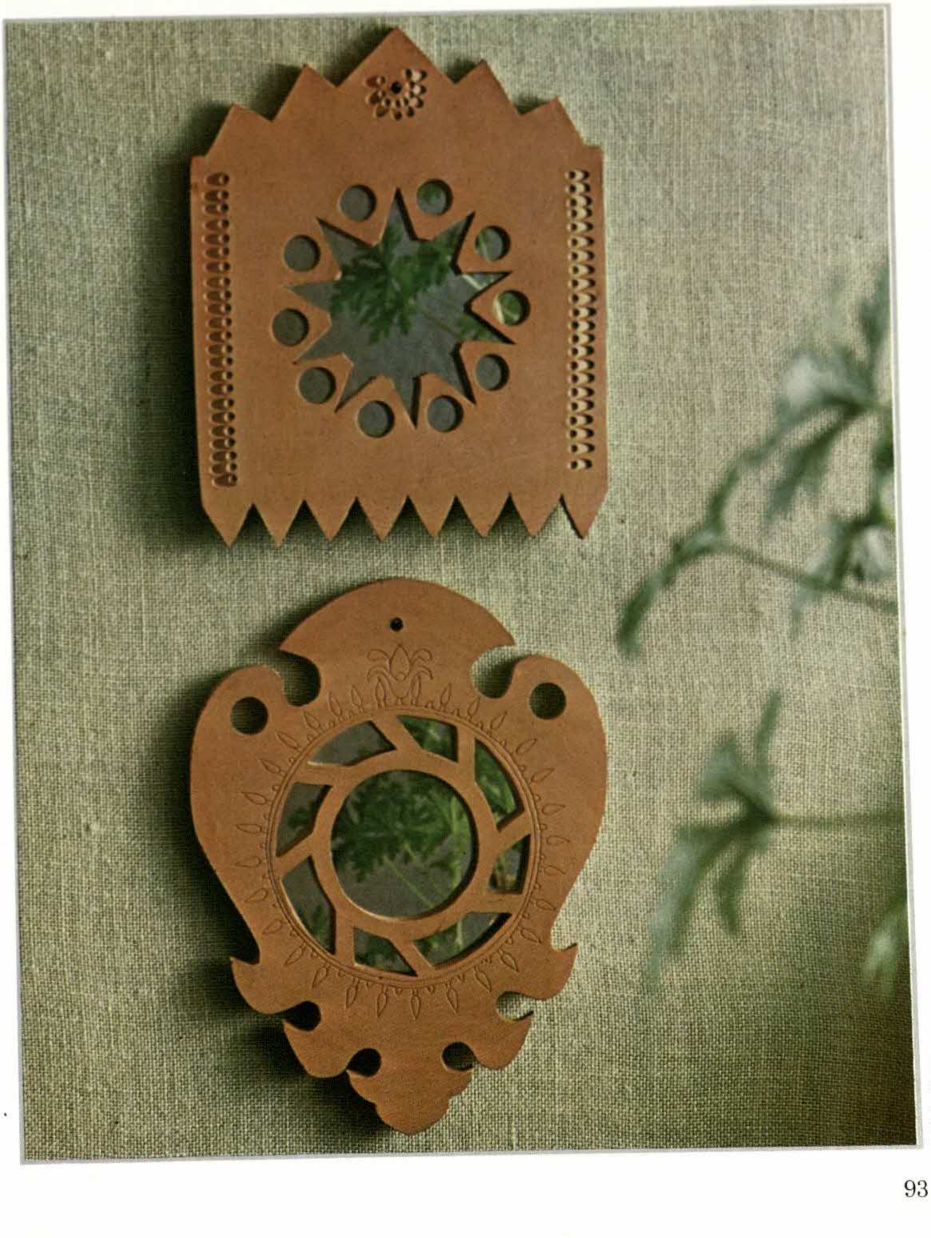


6. *Attach the hook with a screw to a piece of wood about 2.5cm (1″) square, 6mm (¼″) thick.*

Trevor Lawrence

The face picture is built up from tiny balls of different coloured clays pressed on to the surface of the tile. The resulting technique is intricate and delicate. Designed by Zuzanna Kleczkowski.
Two mirrors in soft, terracotta coloured clay are another example of decorative slab work. The clay is sliced into attractive shapes, and a central portion is cut out so that the slab can be backed with mirror. Impressed and incised patterns complete the effect. Designed by The Birchwood Pottery.

Chris Lewis



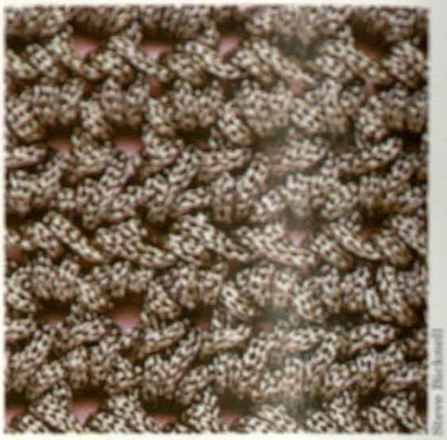
Melvin Grey

Starting with simple stitches

Yarn – crochet 2

This chapter introduces two simple stitches—double crochet and half treble—which you can use to make up these pretty cushions and rag rug. Use heavy rayon, raffia or ribbon for effective cushions and oddments of cotton fabric for the rug.

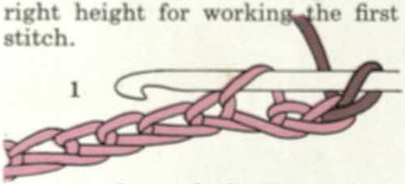
Abbreviations
(for other abbreviations, see Crochet 1, page 38)
dc double crochet
htr half treble


Steve Bicknell

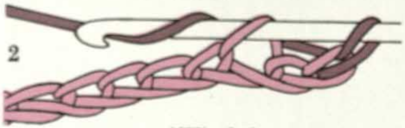
This close-up of a fabric worked in half trebles shows in detail the texture of the stitch. Yarn used: Atlas Novacord.

To work a double crochet

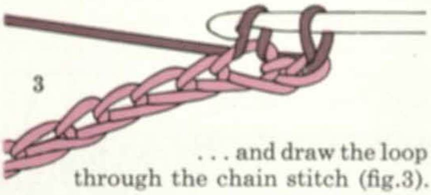
Start by making the number of chain stitches you need, adding one extra chain stitch—this acts as a turning chain, which is needed at the beginning of every row of double crochet to bring the hook up to the right height for working the first stitch.

1


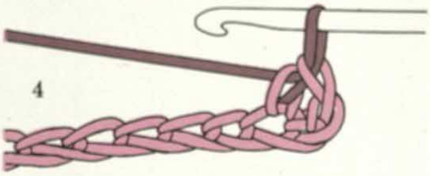
1st row. Insert the hook from front to back into the third chain stitch from the hook (fig.1).

2


*Wind the yarn round the hook (fig.2) . . .

3


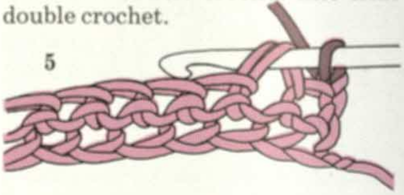
. . . and draw the loop through the chain stitch (fig.3).

4


Wind the yarn round the hook and draw through both loops on the hook* (fig.4).

One double crochet has been made, plus first missed 2 chain stitches which count as first double crochet, leaving one loop on hook. Insert hook into next chain stitch and repeat from * to * into each chain stitch to end.

On next and every following row, turn the work so that the yarn is again in position at the beginning of the row, make one chain stitch to count as first double crochet, miss first double crochet of previous row, work one double crochet into next double crochet.

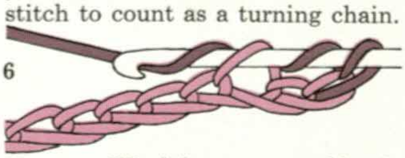
5


When working into a previous row, unless otherwise stated, insert hook under top 2 loops of double crochet (fig.5).

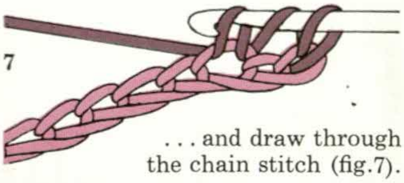
Continue working double crochet into each double crochet to end, working the last double crochet under the turning chain of the previous row.

To work a half treble

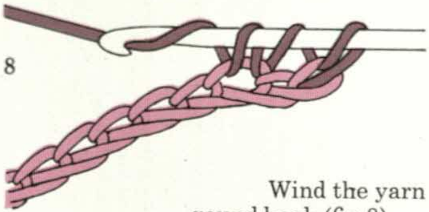
Make the number of chain stitches you need, then add one extra chain stitch to count as a turning chain.

6


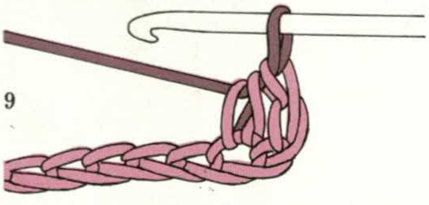
1st row. Wind the yarn round hook, insert hook from front to back into third chain stitch from hook, *wind the yarn round hook (fig.6) . . .

7


. . . and draw through the chain stitch (fig.7).

8


Wind the yarn round hook (fig.8) . . .

9


. . . and draw through all 3 loops on hook* (fig.9).

One half treble has been made plus first missed 2 chain stitches which count as first half treble, leaving one loop on hook. Wind the yarn round the hook, insert the hook into next chain stitch and repeat from * to * into each chain stitch to end.

On next and every following row, turn the work so that the yarn is again in position at the beginning of the row, make 2 chain stitches to count as first half treble, miss first half treble of previous row, work one half treble into each half treble to end, inserting hook under top 2 loops (fig.5) and working the last half treble under the turning chain in the previous row.

Barbara Firth

Mini cushions

For cushion about 23cm (9") square worked in half trebles (you could also use trebles and double crochet).

You will need:

100gm (4oz) of tubular rayon macramé cord, raffia, or very narrow ribbon.

One No.7.00 ISR (US size K) crochet hook

23cm (9") square cushion pad made from calico and stuffed

Using No.7.00 ISR (US size K) hook make enough ch to make 23cm (9"), about 22ch, which includes one extra ch to count as turning ch.

1st row. Into third ch from hook work 1htr, then 1htr into each ch to end. Turn. If you had 22ch to start with you should now have 21htr.

2nd row. 2ch to count as first htr, miss first htr, 1htr into each htr to end, working the last htr under the turning ch of the previous row. Rep second row until work measures 46cm (18") from beg. Fasten off.

To make up

Fold work in half WS tog and join 2 side edges with a ss (see Crochet chapter 1, page 37). Insert cushion pad. Join rem edge.

100 Idées de Marie Claire/ Mirasol

Lots of mini cushions make any chair comfortable. They are made in several yarns including Atlas Novacord.

Rag rug

This rug, measuring 2.6m x 1.3m (8'8"x 4'4") is another example of using materials other than crochet wools. If you have a lot of scrap cotton fabric in a ragbag you can tear it up into strips about 2cm (¾") wide. Wind up the strips into balls, separating the colours. Work two or three rows with one colour then change to another to build up a pleasing pattern.

Because the rug is worked in strips it is easy to handle while working.

If you don't feel like tackling a rug, use slightly thinner strips of fabric—say 1.5cm (½")—to make country-style table mats.

You will need:

For rug 1.3m (4'4") wide, lengths of cotton fabric in 4 colours. The total amount of material will depend on the length of rug required and the way which stripes of colours are arranged, 5.5m (6yd) of 90cm (36") wide fabric will work out at about 76cm (30") in length.

Camera Press

This practical rag rug uses strips of colourful cotton material.

One No.7.00 ISR (US size K) crochet hook

Button thread

1st strip. Using No.7.00 ISR (US size K) hook and any colour, make enough ch to make 33cm (13") width, about 27ch should be right, which includes one ch for turning.

1st row. Into third ch from hook work 1dc, then 1dc into each ch to end. Turn.

If you had 27ch to start with you should now have 26dc.

2nd row. 1ch to count as first dc, miss first dc, 1dc into each dc to end, working the last dc under the turning ch of the previous row. Turn.

Rep second row for required length, changing colours as required and working over the ends each time a new strip is joined in, to secure them.

2nd strip. Make enough ch (about 19 should be right including 1ch for turning) to make 23cm (9") width.

3rd strip. Make enough ch (about 35 should be right including 1ch for turning) to make 43cm (17") width.

4th strip. Work as given for first strip to make 33cm (13") width.

To make up

Sew strips together with button thread.

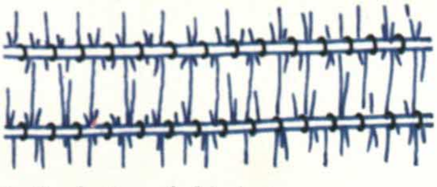
Shirred top and skirt

Shirring

Shirring is both decorative and practical. Based on an elasticated yarn, it holds in fullness and is self adjusting to many sizes—very useful for clothes for growing children. Shirring yarn, which is widely available, is sold in spools and has a fine elastic core around which a cotton or rayon thread is wound.

The yarn is wound on the bobbin of a machine and lies on the underside of the work while stitching is worked from the right side (fig.1).

Modern sewing machines will have instructions for using shirring yarns which you should follow. If yours is an old machine you will have to experiment to find the best way of using it. You may find it best to wind the shirring yarn tightly on to the bobbin by hand. Loosen the bobbin tension slightly. The upper tension should be sufficiently slack to allow the elastic yarn to go through the stitch loop without being drawn up into the fabric. Stitch, with right side of garment uppermost, using a slightly longer stitch length than for straight sewing. Work rows about 12mm to 24mm (½" to 1") apart. At the end of a row, pull the threads through to the wrong side and knot each thread securely to avoid the threads slipping back.



1. *Back view of shirring.*

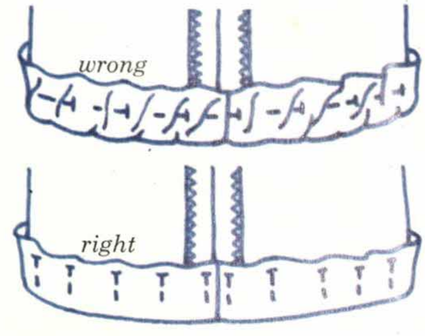
Camera Press

The shirred top and skirt are ideal for informal evening wear.

If the garment is too large after shirring, draw up the elastic thread to take away more fullness.

Preparing a hem

Here are some basic rules which should be followed whenever you make a hem. Mark the hem line, then trim the hem allowance to an even width all round. Pin up the hem (fig.2). Always pin at right angles to the hem. Never slant the pins or place them parallel to the hem as this can result in a shift in the layers of fabric, giving a nasty twist in the finished hem.



2. *Pinning up a hem.*

Tack the hem about 12mm (½") from the lower edge, using long tacking stitches. Give the hem a light press, shrinking in any fullness around the raw edge.

Always press with the hem lying flat on the ironing board and the garment supported over the back of a chair.

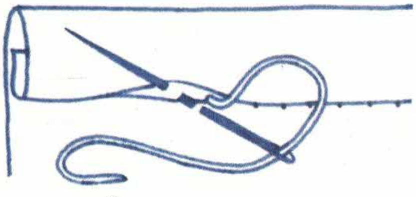
Do not press too hard over the tacking stitches as they might leave impressions in the cloth and always press the hem from the wrong side.

Take care not to press right over the hem edge as this will leave an impression in the fabric.

Slip stitch

Slip stitch gives an invisible finish. Here a fold edge is being sewn to a flat piece (fig.3). Take only one or two threads through the flat surface and a good deep stitch through the fold. Don't pull the stitches tight as this will show through to the right side.

3

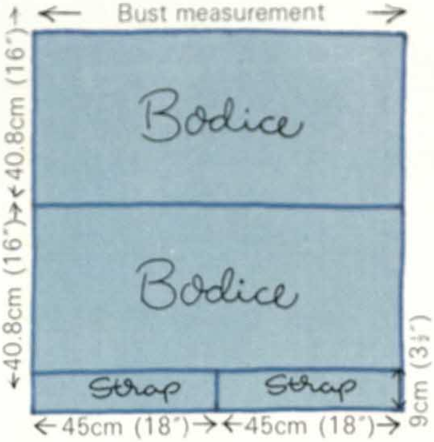


Making the top and skirt

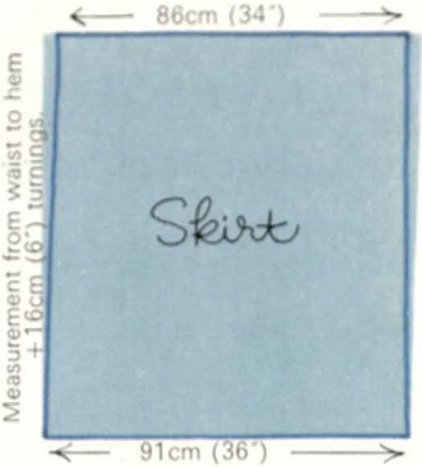
Back view of shirred top.

This shirred outfit is an ideal project for the beginner as shirring will accommodate any small discrepancies in the making up and virtually no fitting is required. The shirred top and skirt can be worn together or as separates—the simple top goes equally well with jeans or shorts and the skirt looks great with a T-shirt.

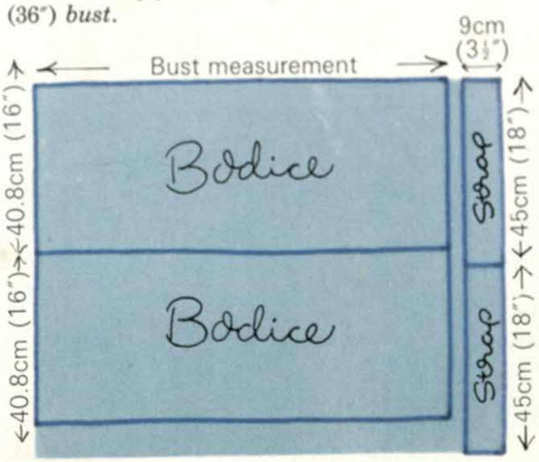
Use fine fabrics such as fine cottons, tricel, lurex or soft jersey to avoid a bulky garment.



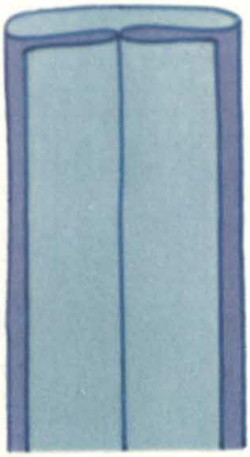
4. *Layout for 90cm (36") wide fabric. Suitable only for sizes up to 90cm (36") bust.*



7. *Shaping the skirt.*



5. *Layout for 115cm (45") wide fabric. Larger bust sizes will have to fit in straps under bodice pieces as for layout fig.4.*



6. *Making up the strap.*

Victoria Drew

Making the top

You will need:

115cm (45") wide or 90cm (36") wide fine fabric, 105cm (1yd)

Shirring yarn, matching thread

☐ Following figs. 4 and 5, cut out the fabric. For the bodice cut two rectangles of fabric 40.8cm (16") deep and each to the width of your bust measurement, so that the total width of fabric is twice your size.

For straps cut two strips of fabric each 45cm x 9cm (18"x3½").

☐ On each rectangle turn under 6mm (¼") all round and stitch close to fold.

☐ With right sides together, taking 12mm (½") seams, join the rectangles together down both 40.8cm (16") sides. Press seams open.

☐ Turn under top edge 30mm (1¼"), tack and press. Repeat on lower edge.

☐ Starting at one side seam, work a row of shirring round bodice 24mm (1") from top edge. Then work your shirring round bodice at 12mm (½") intervals to 24mm (1") from lower edge. The top and bottom rows of shirring will secure the hems.

☐ Pull thread ends to inside and knot. Try on garment. If too loose pull up shirring elastic to fit and tie again.

☐ Fold one strap in half along the length, with right sides together. Taking a 12mm (½") seam, stitch long edges. Press seam open with the seam positioned at centre of strap (fig.6). Turn to right side and press again. Make up other strap in the same way.

☐ Try on top and position straps in most comfortable position. Trim straps to correct length and neaten ends. Stitch firmly to the top along the first line of shirring.

Making the skirt

You will need:

90cm (36") wide fine fabric, twice your length from waist to hem plus 16cm (6") for turnings

Shirring yarn, matching thread

☐ Cut two pieces of fabric to your length from waist to hem plus 8cm (3"). Taper each piece to 86cm (34") at waist edge (fig.7).

☐ Taking 24mm (1") seams, stitch side seams and neaten seam allowances.

☐ Turn in waist edge 6mm (¼") and machine stitch close to fold. Turn in again 18mm (¾"), tack and press.

☐ Starting at one side seam, work a row of shirring round skirt 12mm (½") down from waist edge. This will secure the top hem.

☐ Continue working rows of shirring 12mm (½") apart for 12cm (5"). Knot the ends then try on skirt. Some figures may find 18cm (7") more flattering or, for a very thin figure, 20cm (8") may be more suitable. So work the required number of rows, pull threads through to wrong side and knot. Tighten shirring yarn if necessary.

☐ Pin up hem to correct length. For a machine stitched hem, trim hem allowance to 12mm (½"). Turn in raw edge for 6mm (¼"). Tack hem and machine stitch close to fold.

For a hand-sewn hem, trim seam allowance to 36mm (1½"). Turn in raw edge 12mm (½"), tack and press, then slip stitch hem in place.

Improvised printing blocks

Colour — printing 2

There are many different ways of printing and perhaps one of the simplest and most effective is printing from found objects—things that give a ready-made design that can be found around the house or in the garden.

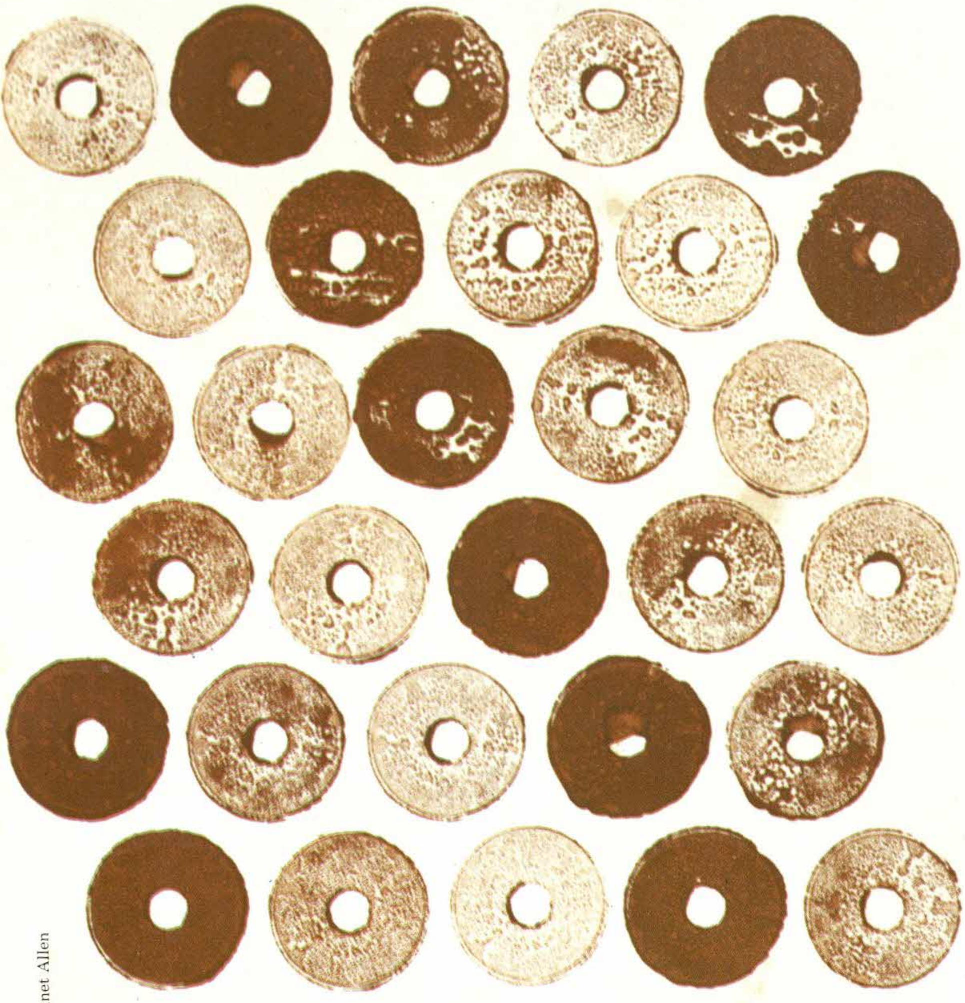
There are many things which will print just as they are, needing no preparation. If the object, such as a leaf, is intricate and beautiful in itself, one single print may be best. If it is less interesting on its own then an endless variety of patterns can be made by repeating the printed impression. The arrangement of these impressions may be random or ordered into lines, crossing lines or checks.

The examples shown here have been printed with poster paint, printing water colours, and oil-bound printing ink.

Water solvent paints

Poster paint has the disadvantage of drying up while you are printing and also tends to go into blobs, but this can add its own effective character to the print. It is best to use poster paint (or powder paint) diluted with very little water and applied with a stiff hog-hair brush.

Printing water colours do not dry so quickly and give a more faithful impression of the printing object. They may also be applied with a stiff brush, having first been diluted with a little water.



Janet Allen

1. *A cotton reel stamped repeatedly on paper makes a fascinating all-over pattern.*

Applying the colour. To a certain extent the thing with which you are printing will dictate the way in which the colour is applied. When printing with a hard, rigid object it is often best to spread the printing water colour on a flat sponge with a knife. This then acts as a stamping pad. Poster paints should not be used in this way as they dry up too quickly.

Oil-bound printing inks

To record the greatest amount of detail use oil-bound printing ink which is best applied with a lino roller, available from most art shops. You will need a shiny, flat surface on which to roll out the ink, such as a piece of glass, mirror or plastic laminated board.

Applying the colour. Squeeze some ink on the glass in a line as long as the width of your roller. Roll this out in different directions until you have it evenly distributed. Don't spread it further than the area which the roller covers in a single revolution. It is wasteful to cover a larger area.

If you want to mix up a colour for printing, blend the inks together with a palette knife at the side of the glass and roll out the new colour. It is unsatisfactory to try to mix the colours by simply rolling them together.

If you buy fabric printing oil-bound inks you can use them on both paper and cloth. Printing water colours may also be used on both materials.

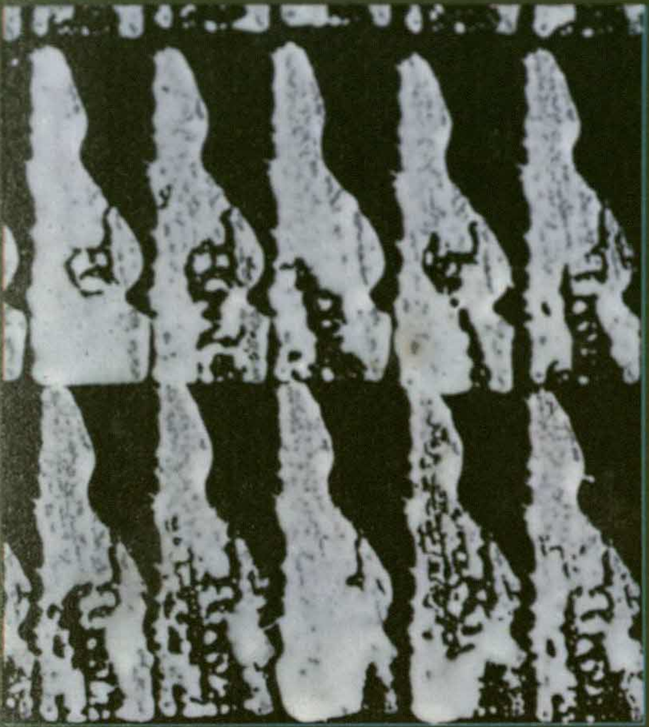
Preparing to print

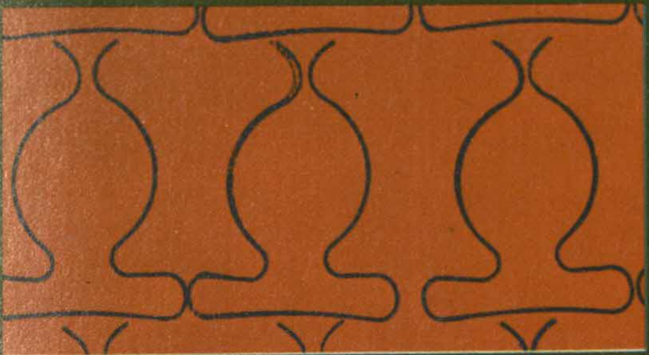
Before you start printing have ready some newsprint for test prints, the paper or cloth you plan to print on (which has been cut to the size required) and rags for cleaning up and wiping your hands. If you are using oil-bound inks you will need some white spirit for cleaning up afterwards. Be sure you have ample space in which to put the wet prints. You could rig up a temporary line with bulldog clips or clothes pegs from which to hang the prints.

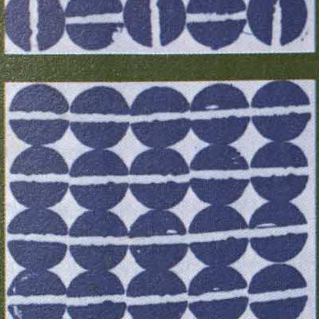
It is a good idea to experiment with the amount of ink deposited on the paper. Fig.1 shows a repeat pattern using printing water colour on the end of a cotton spool. Colour was applied to the printing surface at every third print

The shapes of familiar objects can be seen in amazingly new and original ways when they are used as objects for printing. Try and guess the items used to print the patterns opposite:

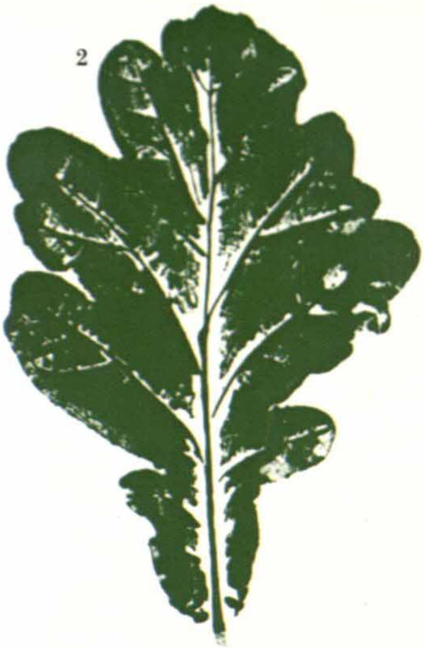
off-cut of wooden moulding, paper doily, broom closet clip, heads of screws, cotton reel.



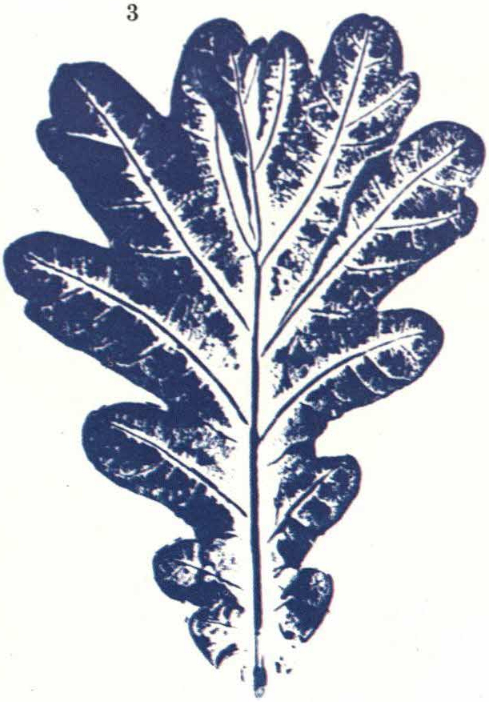




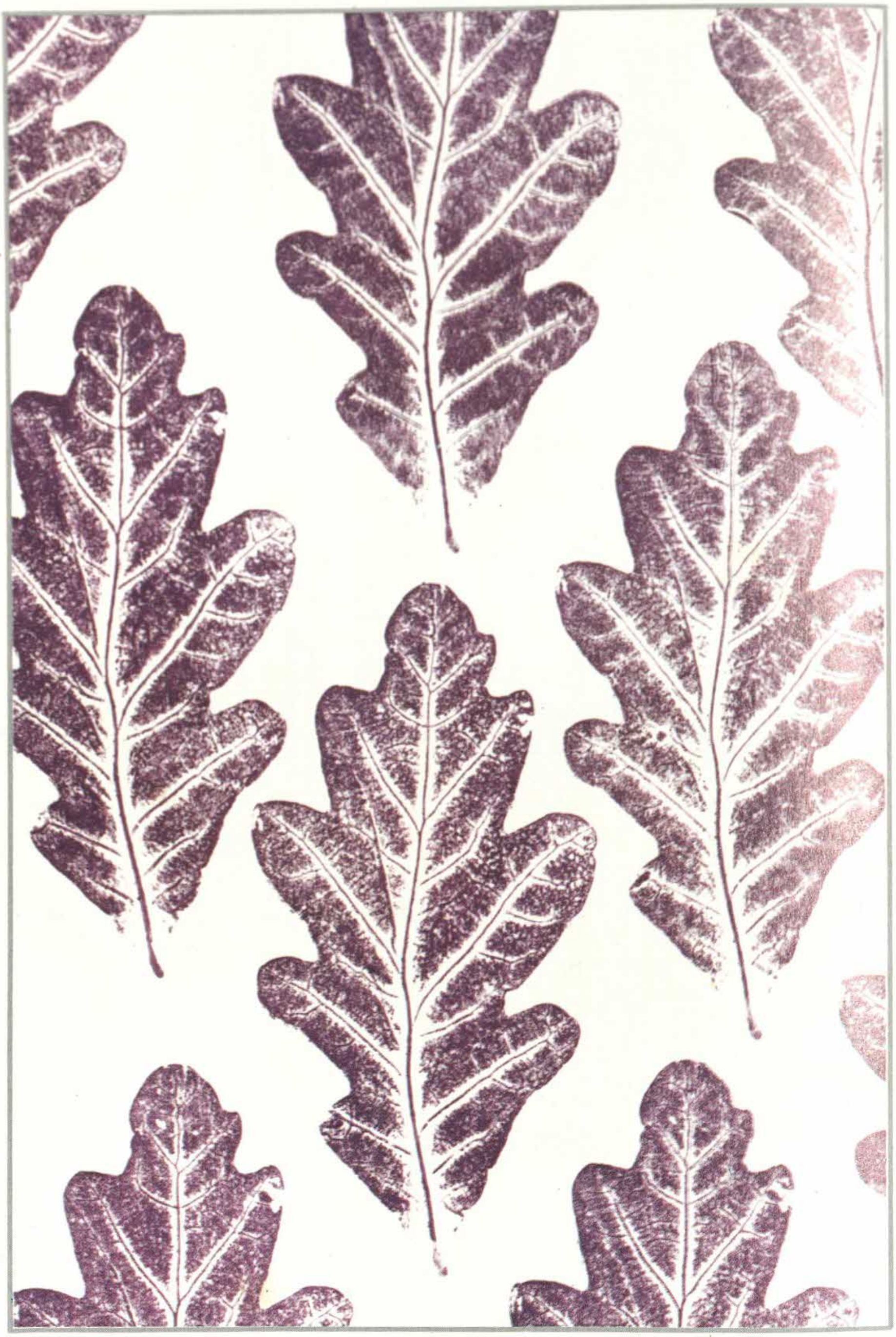
2



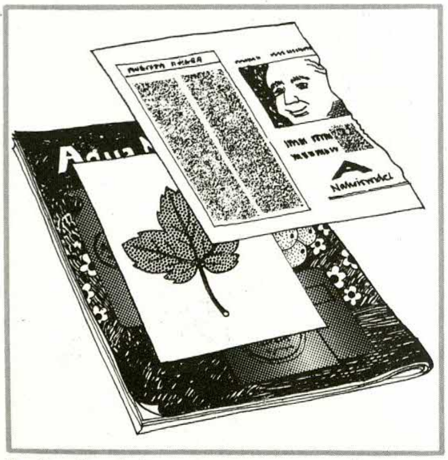
3



4



2, 3, 4. *These images of oak leaves look more like an artist's interpretation than prints of the real thing. Different types of colour give each print a special character. All designs by Janet Allen.*



5. *Leaf prints are very easy to do.*

thus producing the variations in tone and texture. Don't feel you must strive for a perfect impression every time; with this method of printing this is not possible and the mottled, irregular textures that result generate their own interest.

Effects with different paints

Figs.2,3,4 show the different qualities of each type of paint or ink.

Fig.2 is a leaf printed with poster paint. Brush paint on to the back or more prominently veined side of the leaf. Lay the paper to be printed on a table with the painted leaf on top of it, paint side down, and place a piece of newspaper over the top (fig.5). Press down carefully on the newspaper, making sure you cover all of the leaf. Pressure can also be applied with a clean roller.

Gently peel off the newspaper and the leaf from your print and hang it up to dry.

In fig.3 the leaf is printed in the same way as fig.2 but with printing watercolour, therefore there is more definition than with the poster paint.

Fig.4 shows a leaf printed with oil-bound printing ink, applied to the leaf with a roller. Detail is even clearer than with printing watercolour.

Steve Bicknell

By printing and folding paper a pretty box can be produced to make gifts even more appealing.

To make the box

Decorated paper, besides making distinctive gift wrappings, can be used for shelf paper or to line the walls and back of the inside of a cupboard or bookshelf.

If you like to make gifts of home-made sweets or candy, or fruit or vegetables from your garden, present them in a gift box also of your own making, printed with your own design.

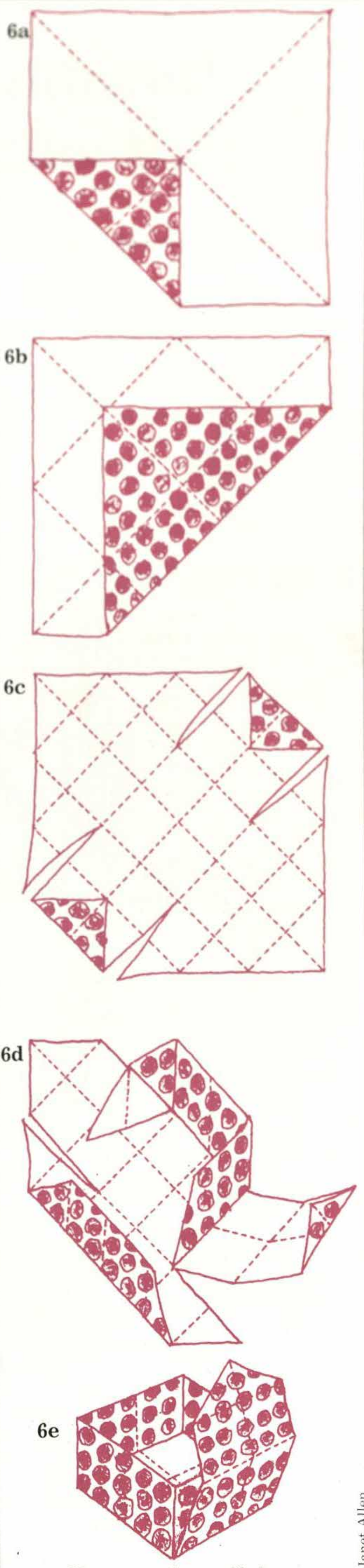
The box shown here was made from paper printed with a cotton spool.

☐ To make the box cut a 36cm (14″) square of paper. Fold the diagonals, open out and then fold the corners into the centre (fig.6a). Open out. You now have a square folded diagonally within the paper square.

☐ Now fold each corner to the far side of the inner square (fig.6b). Finally, fold each corner to the near side of the inner square (fig.6c).

☐ On one corner, make cuts two squares deep on either side of the centre fold (fig.6c). Do the same on the corner opposite to this.

☐ Fold the two sides without cuts inwards along existing creases (fig.6d). Fold over the ends of these sides again. Fold the remaining two corners along existing creases and slot the ends under the ends of the previous two sides (fig.6e). This completes the box.



How to make a gift box.

Janet Allen

Versatile shelf units

Wood — carpentry 2

Perhaps the most enjoyable aspect of 'do-it-yourself' carpentry is the sheer satisfaction you get from creating something. So don't worry about the cracks and gaps and the slips of the saw—they form part of the interest and attraction of handmade articles and can usually be dealt with effectively.

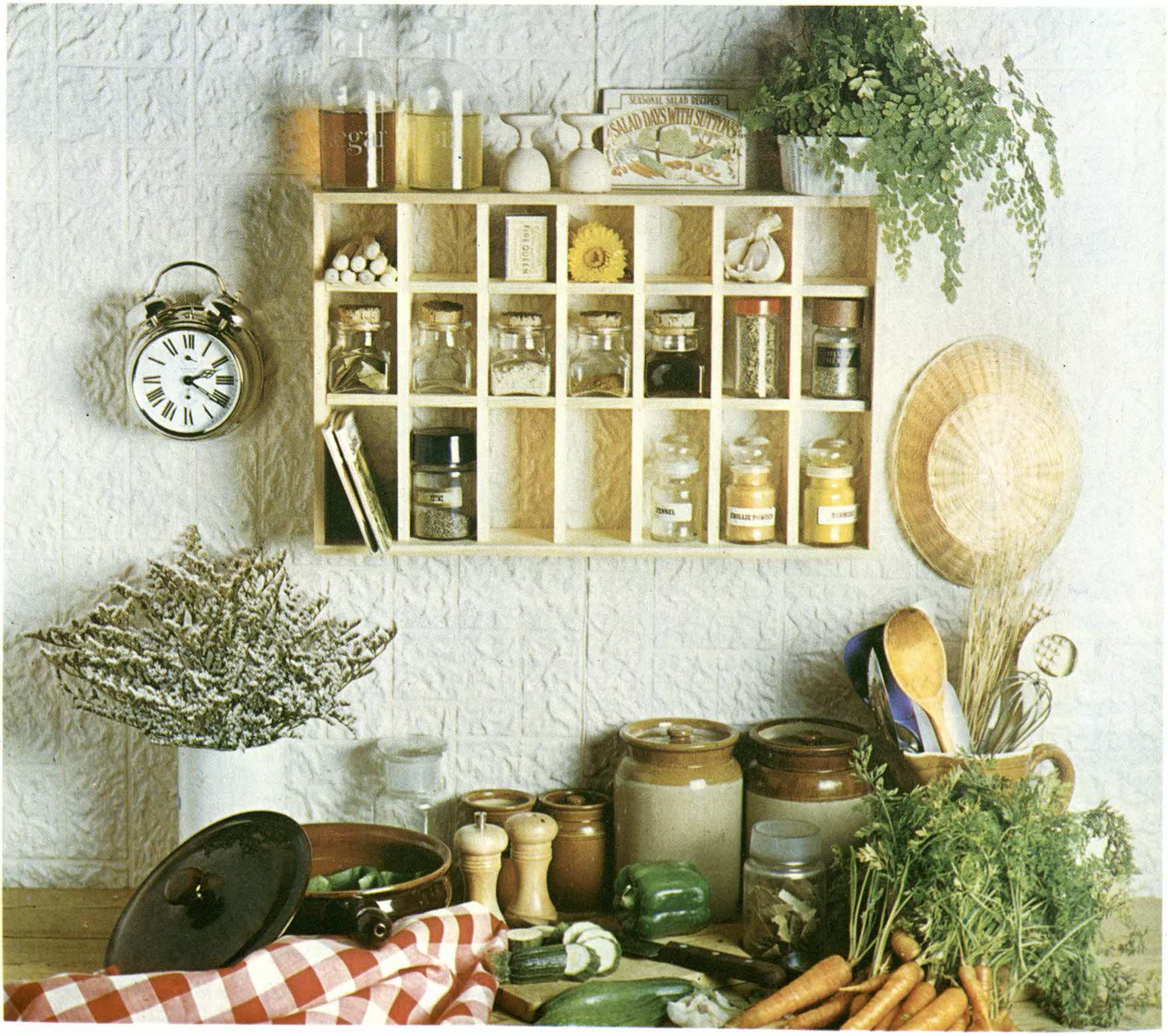
Even after years of practice and using accurate machinery there will still be imperfections. Covering up the mistakes is as important to carpentry as sawing along a straight line. That is why there are skirting boards to cover up the untidy joins between the floor boards and the walls, and wood filler to patch up the bumps and bruises where the hammer missed its target.

In other words, don't worry about minor mistakes. There is usually some ingenious way you can cover them up. Anyway, it would be difficult to imagine a beginner sawing perfectly straight or hammering a nail without missing. A little practice will tell you which mistakes can be salvaged and also how to deal with them.

This project is almost as easy to make as the pot stand in Carpentry chapter 1. The same basic principle of joining the pieces is used, but in this case the 'grid' is completed with a surround which is simply nailed to the other pieces.

This storage unit can, of course, be made smaller or larger than the one described in the directions. And it can be used equally well as a bathroom cabinet, a desk tidy or as a kitchen spice rack.

If you are going to change the dimensions, it is advisable to plan it carefully by making full scale drawings be-



The storage unit as a purpose-built spice rack, designed by Alf Martensson.

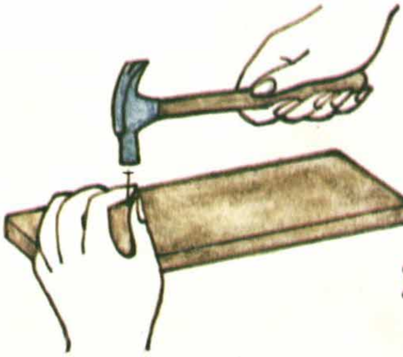
Chris Lewis

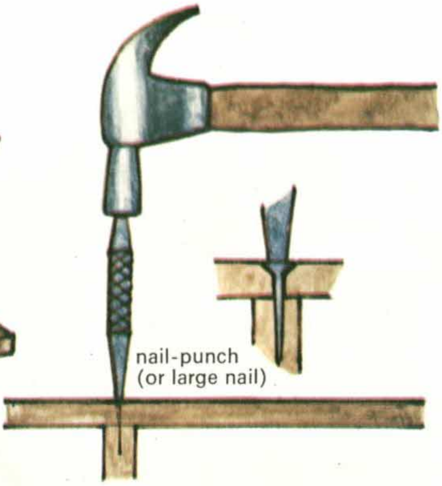
fore starting to saw. Always work from the drawings.

Whereas the pot stand called for enthusiasm and perhaps a little curiosity in beginning, this time perserverance and, as always, a little patience are useful. There are really only one or two steps, which must be repeated over and over again. But it will offer plenty of sawing practice. It is reassuring to remember that should some saw cuts be a little off and the holes a little too large, a small cover strip nailed to the face side will hide the gaps. Unfortunately it's more difficult to correct errors on the surrounding pieces. The corner joints, which in this case are the simplest possible, may be difficult to get just right. But this is a learning process and the important thing is that, after a few hours work, you have a useful and attractive spice rack and the satisfaction of knowing that you made it yourself.

Using a hammer

Hammer sizes are determined by the weight of the head. Try to use whichever hammer is available. But if buying one get one that is fairly light and comfortable. Most of the projects involve light nailing—i.e. using panel pins with small heads that can be 'set' into the wood so that they don't show. To hammer a nail use two or three light taps with the hammer while holding the nail. Then use more force, with the fingers out of the way. If the wood surface will be exposed the nail should be driven almost flush with the surface. Don't make dents in the surface by continuing with the hammer if you want to 'hide the nails' below the surface. For this use a nail punch, or cheat a little and use a larger nail to sink the smaller one.





To make the spice rack

You will need:

A piece of softwood 12mm x 75mm (½"x 3"), 3m (10') long, for grid interior

A piece of softwood 12mm x 100mm (½"x4"), 2m (6'6") long, for surround

Panel pins (nails) 19mm (¾"), 3 dozen

12mm x 19mm (½"x¾") beading or softwood strips, 2m (6'6") long (optional)

Fine glasspaper

When buying wood insist on selecting pieces which are straight and free from knots and splits. Very often, if wood is not properly dried or if it hasn't been stored in the correct upright position, it will tend to warp. You can normally spot this but it's useful to sight down the piece of wood to check that it's fairly straight.

Remember the 12mm x 75mm (½"x3") or x 100mm (4") dimension is for wood as it is sawn from a large log. The planed size is slightly smaller since a few millimetres are taken off in the planing process. So when planning the sawing remember to measure the actual thickness carefully.

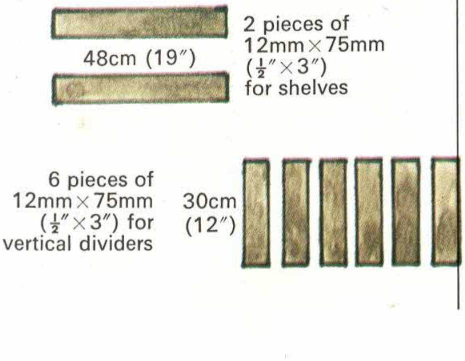
Tools:

Saw
Carpenter's square
Chisel 10mm (⅜")
Pencil
Hammer
Steel rule

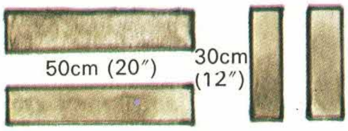
These tools, with the exception of the hammer, were introduced in Carpentry chapter 1. They are all basic tools and should form part of any tool kit. But it should be emphasized that if one of these is not available it is not absolutely necessary to buy it. Try to improvise. For example, instead of a steel rule an ordinary ruler could be used; and it is possible to substitute a square-cornered piece of cardboard or even a book for a carpenter's square. All that is needed is an accurate 90° angle. Besides, there will be many times when you have misplaced or forgotten a tool. There is, however, no substitute for the saw.

☐ Cut the lengths required. First mark a line about 25mm (1") from the end with a carpenters' square and cut off to start with a 'square' end.

Measure the lengths, mark with carpenters' square, and saw along side of line.


48cm (19″)
2 pieces of 12mm×75mm (½″×3″) for shelves
6 pieces of 12mm×75mm (½″×3″) for vertical dividers
30cm (12″)

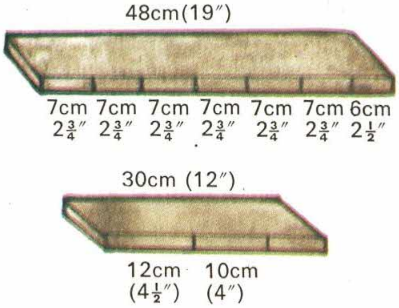
☐ Sand all the pieces using a sanding block. Glass paper comes in various grades from very coarse for rough work to very fine for finishing touches. Sand along the grain, otherwise scratches will show when the piece is finished.



4 pieces of 12mm×100mm (½″×4″) for surround 2 pieces 50cm(20″) long: 2 pieces 30cm(12″) long

☐ Mark the two 12mm x 75mm (½"x 3"), 48cm (19") long pieces as shown.

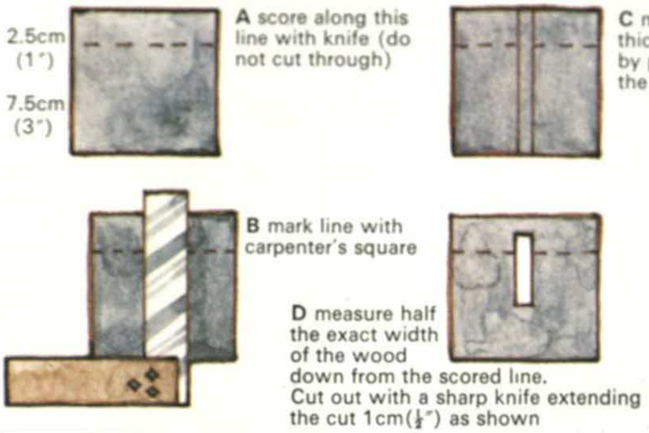
☐ Mark the six 12mm x 75mm (½"x3"), 30cm (12") long pieces as shown.



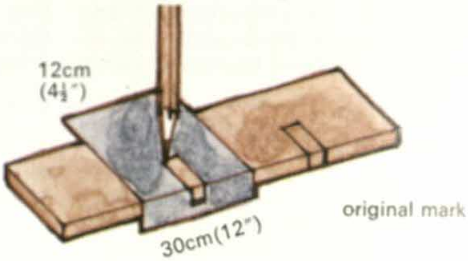
Ken Wheatley

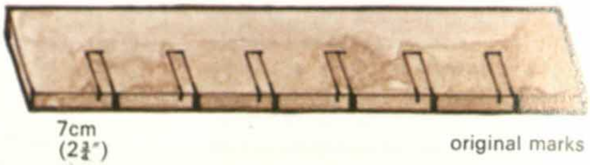
☐ When cutting out notches, instead of going through the tedious process of drawing all the lines halfway across each piece (see Carpentry chapter 1), make a cardboard template as shown.

☐ Place template along marks and mark the notches using a sharp pencil. Mark as shown.

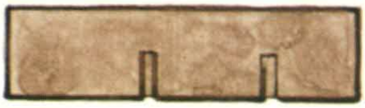

2.5cm (1")
7.5cm (3")
A score along this line with knife (do not cut through)
B mark line with carpenter's square
C mark exact thickness of wood by placing one of the pieces on edge
D measure half the exact width of the wood down from the scored line.
Cut out with a sharp knife extending the cut 1cm(½") as shown

☐ Check that the lines stop at exactly half the width and that the thickness is exactly that of the pieces of wood. Repeat for all six 30cm (12") pieces and the two 48cm (19") pieces.

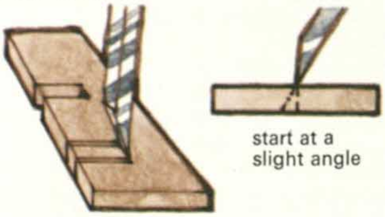




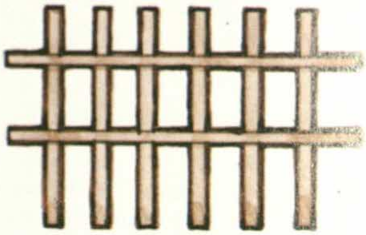
☐ Sawing on the inside of the line, cut all the pieces as shown.



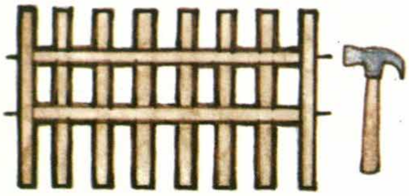
☐ Using a chisel remove the wood pieces. Place chisel along line and, by pushing gently down, the pieces should come out easily. Square off the cut with the chisel.

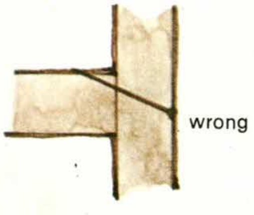

start at a slight angle

☐ After having smoothed all the sawn edges with glass paper, assemble the pieces.

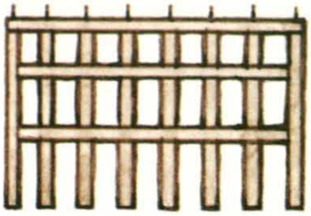


☐ Place the 12mm x 100mm (½"x4"), 30cm (12") long pieces on the sides, with one edge flush with the back of the interlocking pieces. Sighting from the front, start nailing by tapping lightly with the hammer. The nails must be positioned so that when driven all the way in they will not stick out on the sides. Use two nails for each shelf.



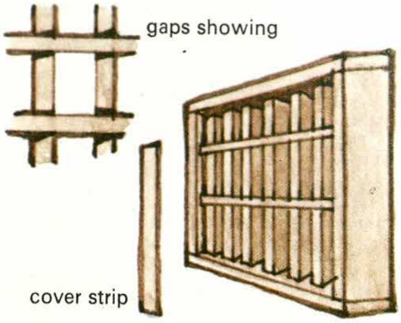


☐ Now place one of the last two pieces of 12mm x 100mm (½"x4"), 50cm (20") long, on top and nail along each vertical section.



Do the same with bottom piece.
This is a good time to take a little survey and check whether there are any gaps or marks which can be fixed or covered over. You may find that the four corners do not fit perfectly. Unless this is particularly bothersome it is best to leave them and to make sure that you measure more carefully next time. If it's very bad, you can remove the larger piece and cut a bit off if it's too long. If it's too short the only remedy is to make a new piece.

Another possible place where errors can show noticeably is at the junctions of the grid pieces. If the sawcuts were not perfect (which they aren't usually) the only remedy is to cover them up. Strips of wood 12mm x 19mm (½"x¾"), 30cm (12") long, can be nailed carefully along the front of each of the vertical dividers. Since the strips are about 19mm (¾") wide they will cover the divider plus the gaps on either side. If there are no bothersome gaps then, of course, the strips are not necessary.



The spice rack can either be left without any finish at all or an application of wax or polyurethane wood seal (matt finish) will protect the wood.

If you have any stick-on letters, labels or stencils, these can be used to label each compartment. After applying the labels cover them with a thin coat of clear matt polyurethane so that the letters don't come off when you clean the shelves.

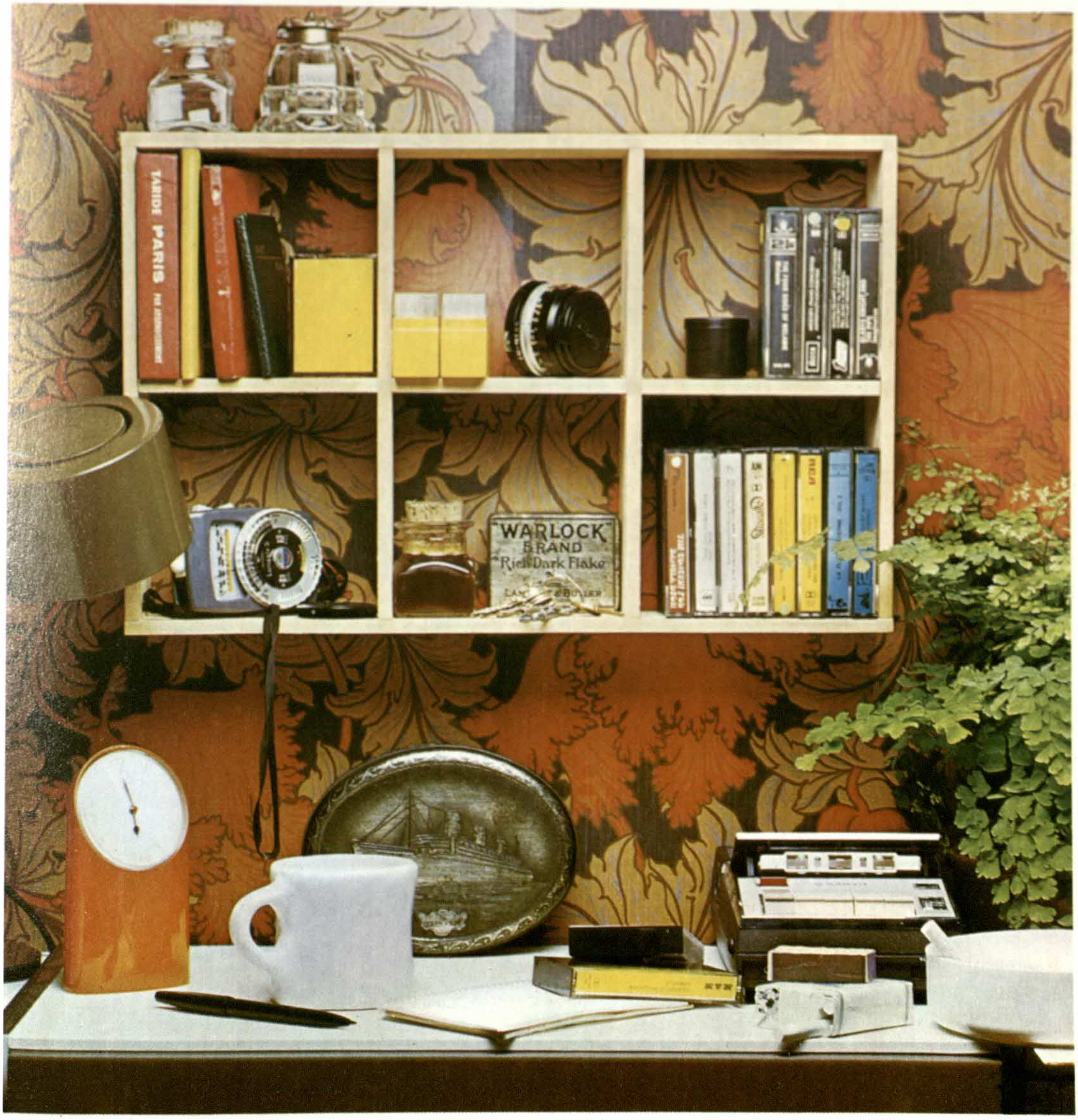
Cassette storage unit

Another similar project, shown in the picture, can be built using the same surround dimensions but with fewer internal grid pieces. It is easy to plan this by drawing the pieces and marking the dimensions clearly so that they are easy to follow.

You can add a thin plywood or hardboard backing piece. Your timber merchant will probably cut this accurately if you give the exact dimensions of the overall size of the box. This can be used to glue paper tiles to, either inside or outside. Plan the size of the grid for the particular tile or picture you are planning to use. Then simply nail the backing piece to the back of the assembled unit.

These ideas can be extended to cover a wide range of shelves and storage units depending on how ambitious you are. It would be easy to imagine a whole wall covered with these units, perhaps painted a bright red for the kitchen or white for the living-room. Then not only are the contents displayed but the shelf as well.

The rack can be placed on an existing shelf against a wall or you can fix brackets to the wall on which to rest it.



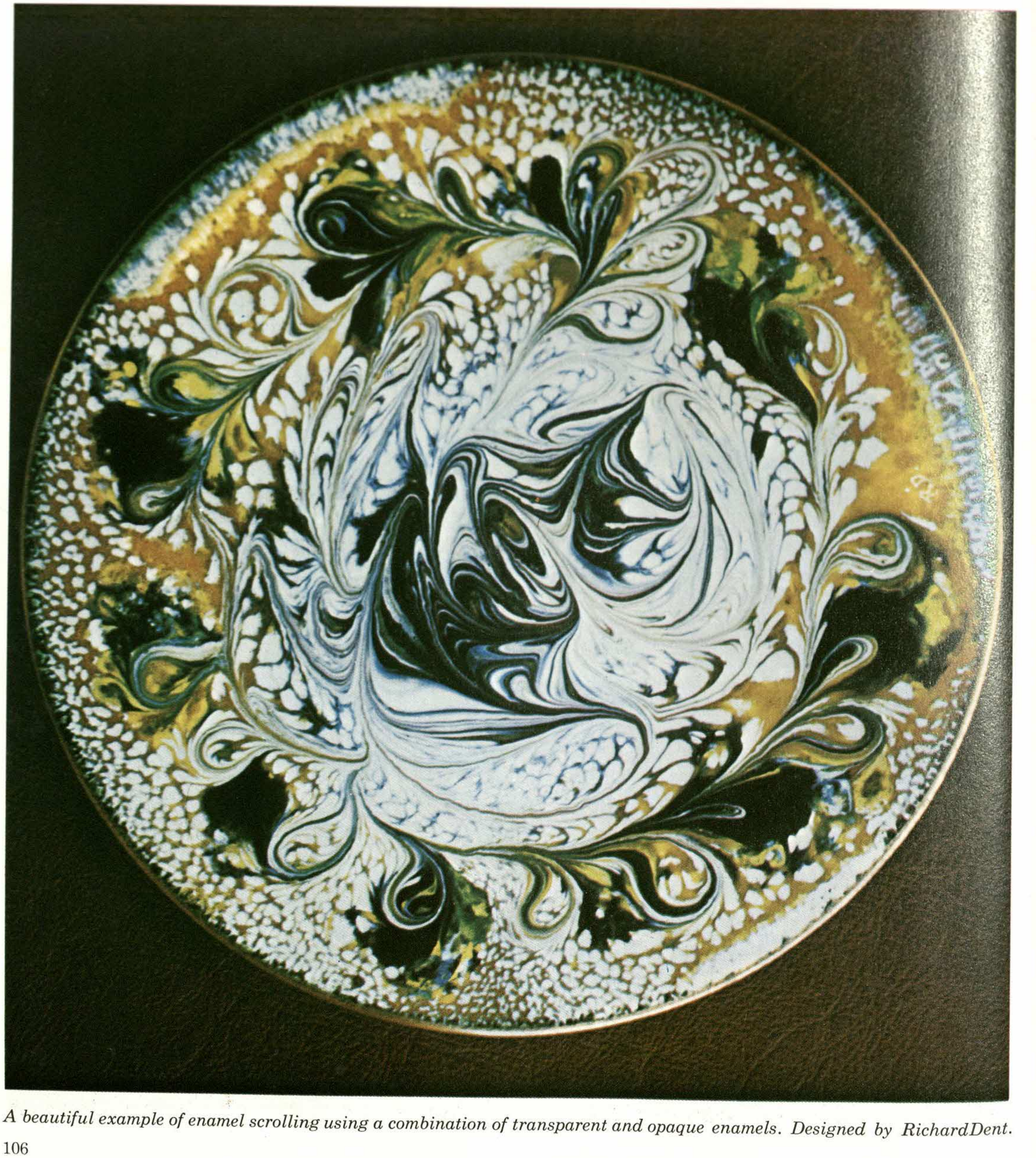
The dimensions of the storage unit can be altered to make it suitable for holding cassettes and books. The addition of a backing board is optional.

Chris Lewis

The art of enamelling

Enamelling is a simple technique for making unique and practical decorative surfaces. Enamelled finishes are colourful and hardwearing and can be used extensively in the home.

Enamelling is an ancient craft dating back to the fifth century BC, when the Greeks used it with gold inlays. It is fundamentally coloured glass, usually ground to a powder. This powder is spread on to a clean metal surface and



A beautiful example of enamel scrolling using a combination of transparent and opaque enamels. Designed by RichardDent.

fired in a kiln at a temperature of about 750°C (1380°F). The powdered glass melts and fuses on the metal creating a hard, smooth surface. The brilliance of the colours used in enamelling gives it its distinctive appearance, making it suitable for jewelry, small bowls, or ashtrays.

About enamels

Ready-made enamel powders of good quality save much time and effort in tedious grinding and are available in many good colours and varying quantities. It is not wise to mix different colours as you will probably get a speckled effect.

Once you have gained some experience you might want to grind your own enamel. Enamel in lump form—which has to be ground before use—has a longer shelf life than the powdered variety which tends to get mixed with dust and deteriorate. However, if you buy small quantities of ready-made powder which you then store in containers with tight-fitting lids you shouldn't have any difficulties.

Generally enamel powders melt at a temperature of around 750°C (1380°F) but there are some with a lower melting point which are sold as soft enamels. If a higher temperature is required they are termed hard enamels.

Types of enamel

Opaque enamels normally have a high gloss, smoothly textured finish, but different textures—such as a coarser, low gloss surface—can be obtained by leaving the piece in the kiln for a shorter period of time. This process is called underfiring.

Transparent enamels melt at a slightly higher temperature than the opaque enamels and are similar to coloured glass in appearance. Transparent enamels must be fired on a clear, colourless enamel undercoat—called a flux—otherwise their colour will be too concentrated. This is a slightly more involved technique than that of using the opaque enamels.

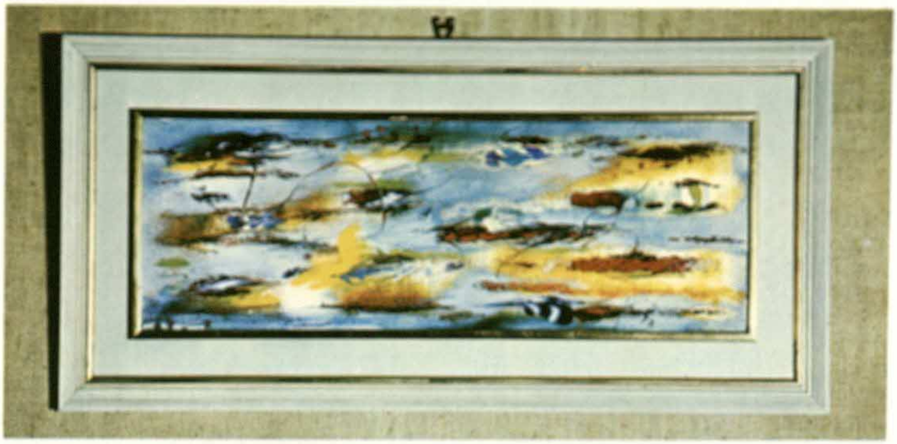
Transparent enamels cannot be underfired to vary their texture.

Different types of flux can be used to give different effects to the transparent colours fired on them.

Self-cracking enamel. This is a special variety of enamel powder that cracks or crazes like old porcelain. It is fired over an undercoat of whatever enamel you choose. Its textured surface looks old and interesting.

Metal blanks

The metal blanks are the bases used for firing the enamel on. Gold and silver provide the most reflective surface to use for transparent enamels. These are expensive so you might prefer copper or gilding metal.



An impressionist wall panel fired in a large kiln. Designed by Richard Dent.

Copper is good to begin with as it fuses well with the different powders and it is fairly soft so that you can cut and shape your own blanks.

Stockists of enamelling powders usually carry a wide range of metal blanks that are suitable to begin with. They are available in various shapes so that you can easily fire small test pieces before you embark on more ambitious projects.

A mica sheet blank can be used instead of a metal blank but the techniques involved are difficult and best left until you are familiar with the materials. The use of mica gives great depth to transparent work.

Kilns

The largest single item will be the kiln. Think carefully about what sort of work you want to do and what size kiln you will require.

The smallest kiln is suitable for pieces of jewelry but if you want to do larger pieces such as bowls and panels you will need a kiln with a larger muffle—ie the firing chamber. It is difficult to make more than one piece at a time, regardless of the size of the kiln, because of the amount of time and handling involved.

These poppies illustrate what can be made with more advanced enamelling techniques. Designed by Richard Dent.

A kiln takes a while to warm up to the required temperature—the larger the muffle the longer it will take to reach the firing temperature.

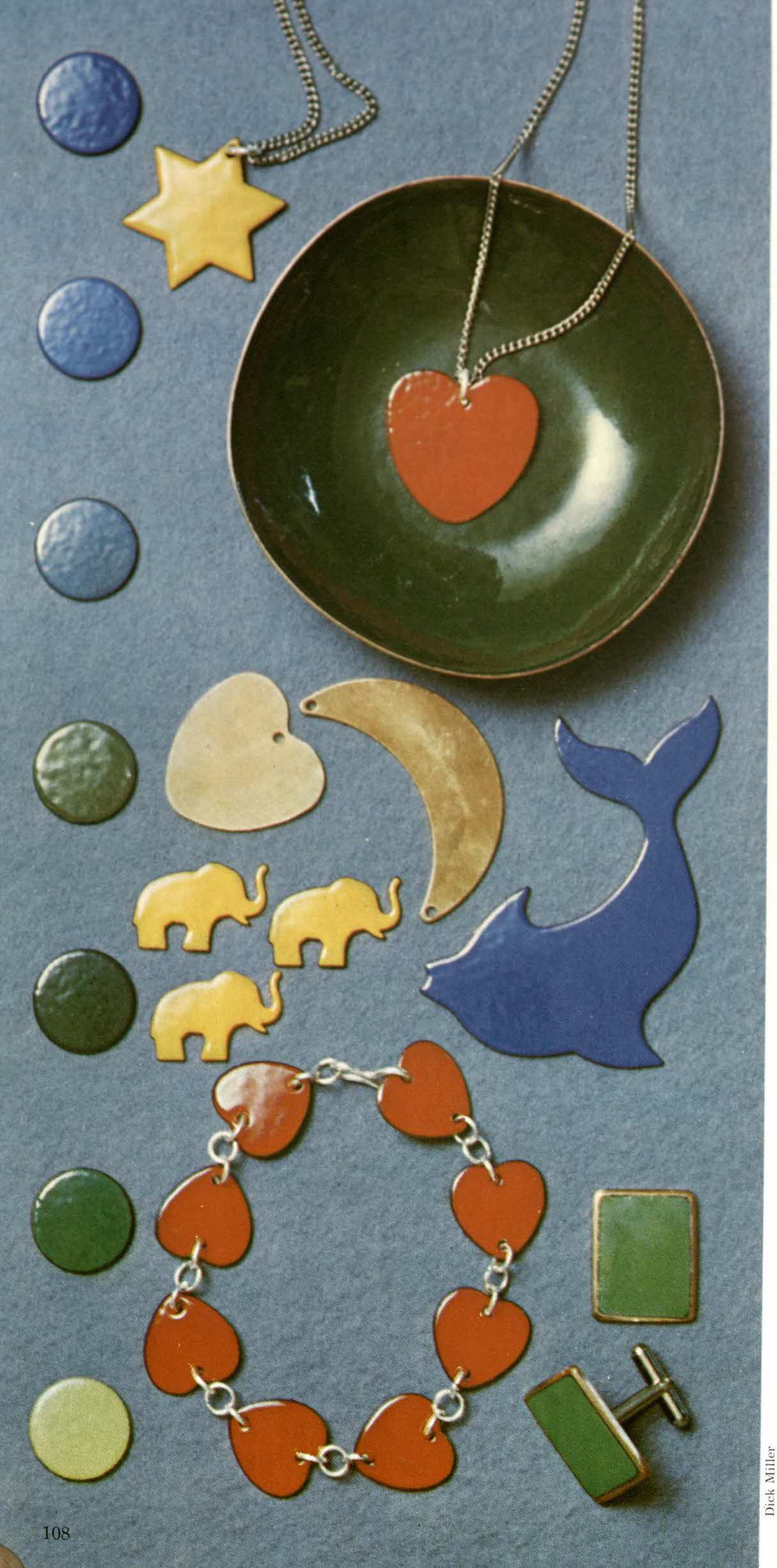
Some kilns are equipped with heat regulators. This is useful if you are firing gold or silver, which have relatively low melting points, but if you are using copper or gilding metal you will learn after a few test pieces and some practice to recognize the bright orange of the firing chamber which indicates the correct temperature.

Technique

Blow torch. Small pieces can also be fired with a blow torch or a bunsen burner so if you have either of these you can try this method. Remember that the enamels must only get the heat from the flame and not be touched by the flame itself. A piece of metal held over the flame, with the enamelled piece resting on it, will distribute the heat evenly. You will not be able to make large pieces with this method but you can make small pieces and combine them to form a larger piece by mounting them on a base.

This beautiful pendant is typical of the high standard of enamelling achieved during the Art Nouveau period.

Rodney Todd-White and Son



Basic tools

Tools are largely a matter of choice and you can add to this list as you gain experience. However, there are some tools that you cannot do without.

Asbestos glove—although not always essential—particularly with modern kilns—it does protect your hands from the heat when opening and closing the kiln door or lid.

Long-handled, 2-pronged fork for lifting pieces of work in and out of the kiln. You could improvise with an old toasting fork.

Sieve for sifting the enamel powders on to the metal blank. It can be made of metal or plastic and should be quite small—a coffee sieve will do.

Emery or glasspaper to remove the firescale which forms on the uncovered metal surface during firing. The firescale is difficult to remove so ideally you should paint this surface with anti-scale liquid. This is optional but makes cleaning much easier.

Wire wool pads or abrasive sponges are also useful for cleaning and shining the metal.

Brass tongs or long-handled tweezers to grip the metal once it has been cleaned. You must not touch the metal with your fingers before firing as this will leave traces of grease on it.

Stainless steel wire mesh stand (made for enamelling) to place the pieces on in the firing chamber.

Palette knife for lifting the metal pieces on to the wire mesh—you could use a kitchen spatula.

The working area

The working area does not have to be large but it is essential to have the kiln on a heat resistant surface, preferably an asbestos mat, and the surrounding area should be fairly uncluttered. Place another asbestos mat next to the kiln on which to put the hot pieces. Cover the surface on which you work with sheets of paper. It makes it easier to collect any spilt powders and to clean up afterwards.

Do not work too close to the kiln as the heat it generates can make you uncomfortable.

Simple enamelling

Before you actually make anything it is useful to fire a few test pieces to become familiar with the equipment and the materials. Make a record of firing times and results and also the colour. The colour of the fired enamel is not always the same as the colour of the powder. This record will be useful as a reference when you want special ef-

Dick Miller

The small round enamels are test pieces for colour. The metal blanks used were made of copper and can be bought in varying sizes and shapes.

fects and also to know the exact shade of a colour if you want to use it with another colour.

The enamelled surfaces are so beautiful in themselves that initially you can experiment with a few colours only on pre-shaped copper blanks and attach findings to them to make brooches and earrings.

You will need:

Enamel powders of the opaque colour variety

Pre-shaped copper blanks, available from craft stores

Emery paper

Anti-scale liquid (optional)

The kiln and basic tools described earlier

☐ Plug in the kiln so that it can warm to the required temperature—about 750°C (1380°F).

☐ Prepare the piece of copper by rubbing it down with emery paper.

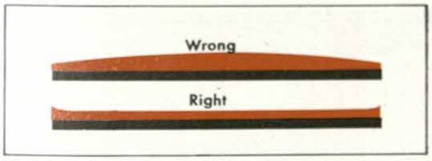
The blank should be completely free of grease so do not touch it with your fingers once you have rubbed it down. Then, holding it with the tweezers, rinse and dry it without letting it touch your fingers.

☐ Apply the anti-scale liquid, if you have it, to the underside of the metal blank and leave it to dry.

☐ Using the tweezers, turn the blank face up and place it on a sheet of clean paper.

☐ Select a colour and sieve it on to the blank.

☐ The powder must be evenly spread with slightly more powder around the edge. Do not use too much powder—just enough to hide the metal from sight with no lumps or mounds anywhere on the surface.

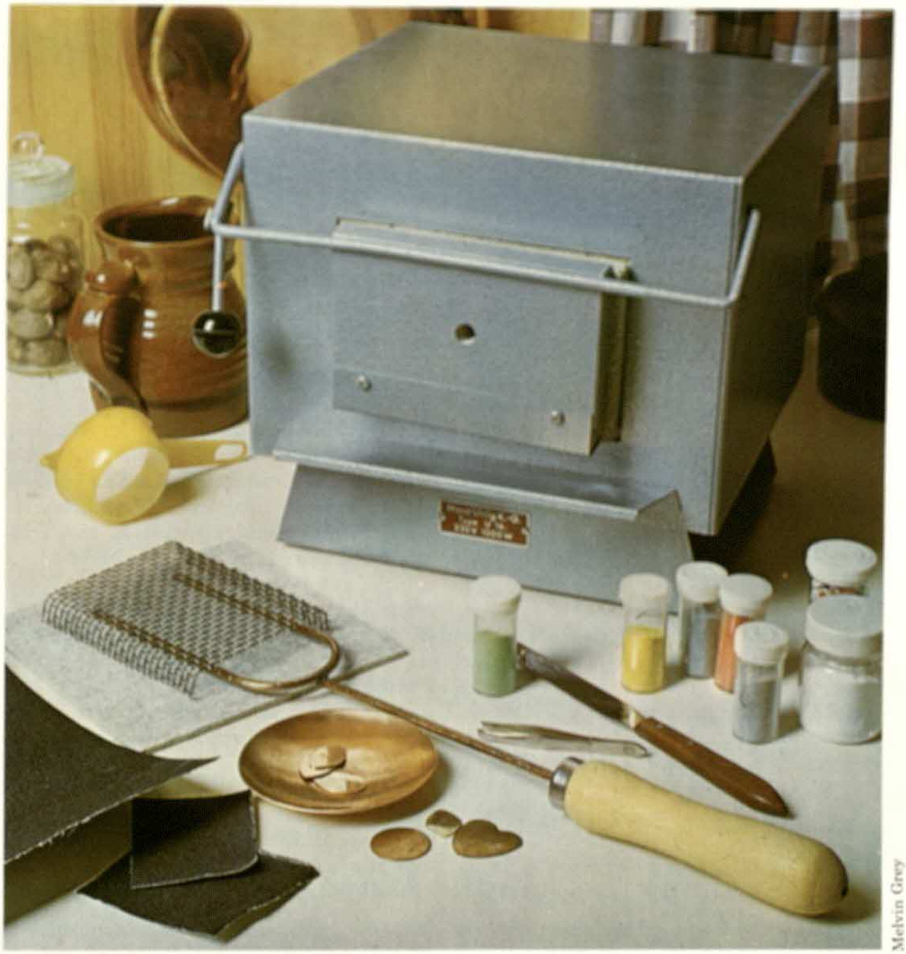


The top illustration shows the metal blank covered with enamel powder but piled deeper towards the centre. This is not the correct way to cover it.
Below is the correct way to cover the metal blank. The enamel must be slightly thicker along the edge of the metal than in the centre.

☐ Insert the palette knife or spatula carefully underneath the powdered blank. You might find it easier to do this if you keep the blank in position with the tweezers. Lift the blank on to the wire mesh stand.

The powder left on the paper can be returned to its container if it is completely free from any dust or grit.

☐ The kiln should now be a glowing orange colour which means it is ready for the firing. Wear the asbestos glove if you feel safer with it and open the kiln door. Using the fork, lift the wire mesh stand and place it in the firing chamber as far back as possible. Close the kiln door.



The materials you will need to do enamelling can be set up and used in a kitchen or on any working surface. You will need a sieve, wire mesh stand, 2-pronged fork, palette knife, tweezers, enamel powders, metal blanks, emery paper and a kiln.

Melvin Grey

The copper blank covered with powdered enamel is placed on the wire mesh stand and then lifted into the kiln.

☐ The enamel powder on the blank will become darker and then begin to melt. Once it looks wet it is fired.

Have the fork ready and as soon as the surface appears wet remove the wire mesh stand from the kiln. Put it on an asbestos mat and close the kiln door.

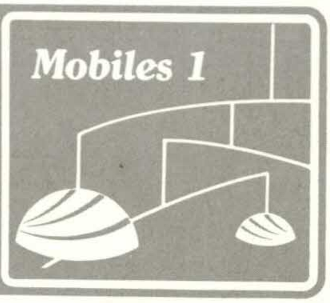
☐ The enamelled piece will change colour as it cools down. If the colour is not even once it is cool, you can sieve some more powder on to it—slightly thicker around the edges—and fire it a second time. First remove firescale and apply more anti-scale liquid. Then apply the second layer of enamel.

☐ Once the piece has cooled down completely, clean the back with a piece of emery paper. You can glue jewellers' findings to the back to make brooches and earrings from the pieces.

There are more complicated techniques in enamelling for more intricate work but it is best to acquire some expertise before progressing to more ambitious things.

Remember that successful enamelling depends very much on the enamel powders and metal bases being clean.

Mobiles to make yourself



The restful movement of mobiles is probably the reason for their popularity in a busy and fast-moving world. Their gentle, slow movements suggest the swimming, floating and flying motions of birds and fish, and mobiles are often made in these shapes. But they need not be restricted by any particular shape or material, neither need they be relegated to the nursery.

The secret of a mobile lies in its delicate balance. The slightest breath of air is enough to set it in motion. This balance is partly achieved by using the correct weight of wire for the material of the mobile. Use the thinnest wire possible which will support the figures without distorting the wire too much.

Supports

If your mobile is made of very light, evocative materials like straw, feathers, paper, leaves or wood shavings, use a fine grade of steel wire—about 1mm (gauge 18-19). Don't use fuse wire; this is too fragile for any but the most delicate of figures and the thinner fuse wire is usually rolled round a card and will never lose its kinks. For heavier mobiles, such as those made from wood, plastic or metal, use brass, copper or galvanised wire—about 1.5mm (gauge 15-17).

Wire is usually chosen for the supports as it neither intrudes on the vision nor detracts from the mobile itself, but you can also use other materials. For example, twigs show off pine cones well. Any sympathetic material can be used as long as you can get the balance of the mobile right.

Thin nylon thread is ideal for suspending the figures. It is strong yet almost invisible. A heavy nylon thread may restrict the movement of lighter figures. Ordinary sewing thread can be used for very light mobiles but it may be too flimsy for others. All parts of the mobile should be able to move freely without touching each other and this is easily done by following the principles set out below.

Basic method

There are two basic shapes: the long, narrow type, used here, and the wide, double sort. Each type is started in the same way, beginning at the bottom.

☐ Cut a piece of wire about 20cm (8″) long. Using jewelry pliers, bend each end inwards or outwards to form tiny loops. Be sure to bend all loops in the same direction (fig.1).

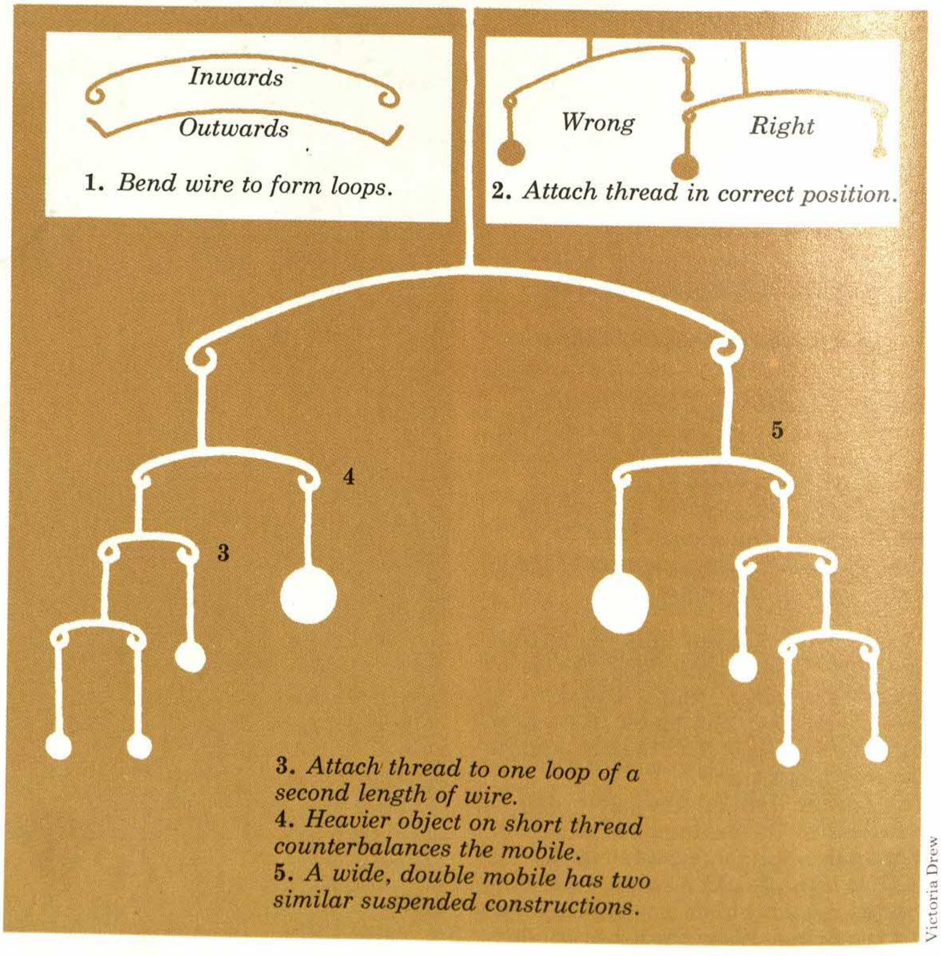
☐ Tie the thread from a figure to each loop of the wire.

☐ Attach a length of thread to the wire, near the centre, and move the position of this thread to find the correct balance (fig.2).

☐ Attach the thread holding the wire to one loop of another length of wire (a little longer than the first one) and attach a figure to the other loop (fig.3). Continue in this way until you have finished the mobile. The topmost wire should therefore be quite a bit longer than the bottom one. The figure hanging from the topmost wire should be on either a very long thread or a very

Steve Bicknell

Origami or paper cut-out birds make charming and colourful mobiles. The slightest breath of air will set them flying in slow, restful movements. Designed by Anthony Wilson.



1. *Bend wire to form loops.*

2. *Attach thread in correct position.*

3. *Attach thread to one loop of a second length of wire.*
4. *Heavier object on short thread counterbalances the mobile.*
5. *A wide, double mobile has two similar suspended constructions.*

Victoria Drew

short one, to be out of the way of the other figures; if it is on a short thread it needs to be heavy enough to counterbalance the whole structure on the other loop (fig.4).

☐ Now adjust the balance finally on all the wires and glue the centre threads with clear adhesive.

For the wide, double shape, suspend two similar constructions from each loop of the topmost wire (fig.5).

Bird mobile

You will need:

4 origami or paper cut-out birds in various sizes and colours
A clear adhesive like UHU
1.5m (54″) of wire, 1.5mm (gauge 15-17)
Cotton thread

☐ With a pin, pierce a tiny hole through the centre of each bird body. Tie a knot in a length of cotton and thread through the hole from beneath the bird. Cut the wire into lengths and attach the birds as shown in the basic instructions, starting with the shortest piece of wire at the bottom and following the arrangement in the photograph.

Liquid resin mobile

You will need:

Tin of liquid resin such as Dip-It
3m (3yd) very thin wire
2m (72″) of wire, 1.5mm (gauge 15-17)
Clear adhesive like UHU
Cotton or nylon thread

☐ Bend the very thin wire into any shapes you like and dip each structure into resin solution.

Remove excess resin on edge of tin.

☐ Attach thread to the twisted end of each shape or to a convenient bend and hang them up to dry.

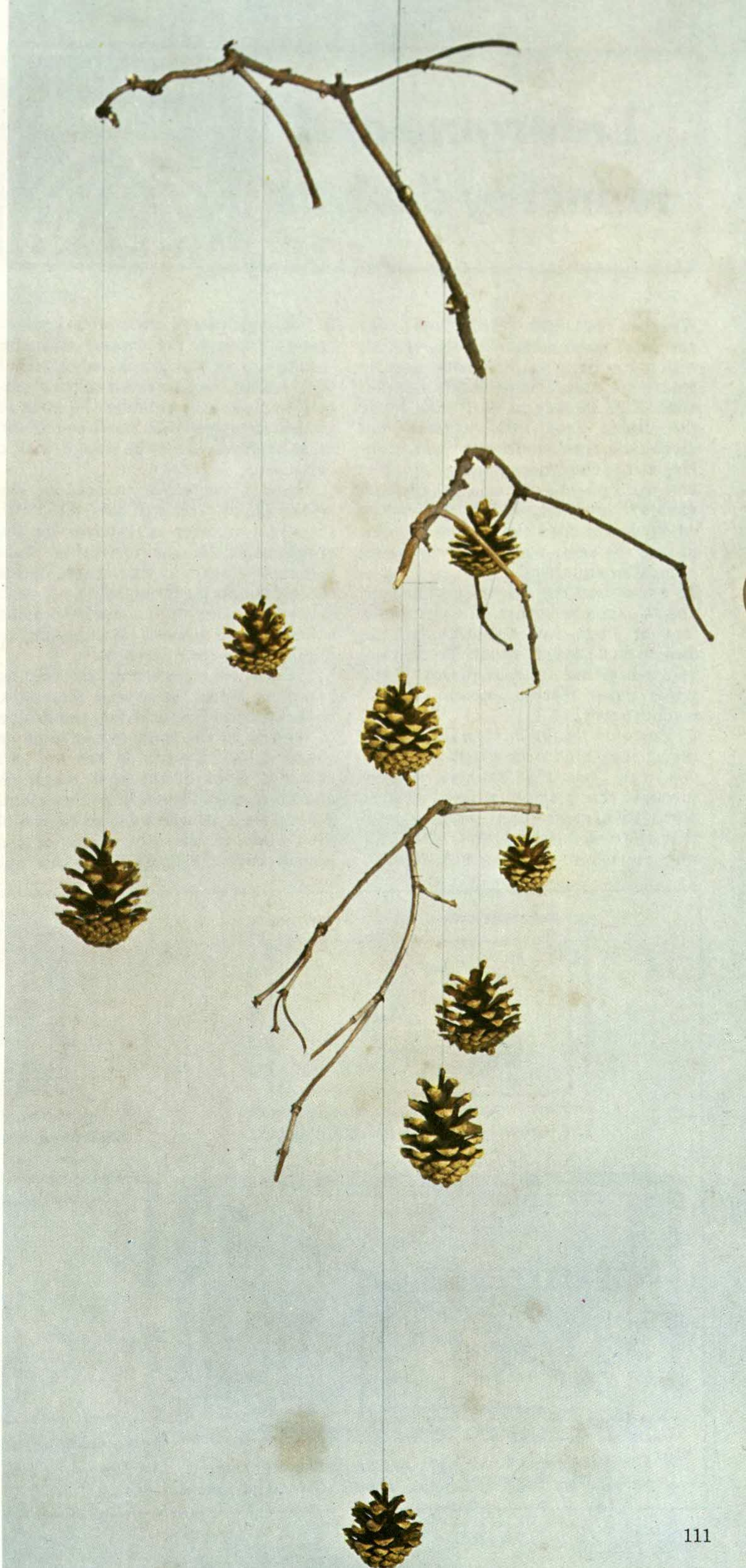
☐ Cut the heavier wire into lengths and attach shapes to the supporting wires, as shown in the basic instructions given opposite.

Pine cone mobile

You will need:

8 pine cones of various sizes
3 twigs about 48cm (19″), 30cm (12″) and 25cm (10″) long
Clear adhesive like UHU
Cotton thread

☐ Tie a length of thread to the tip of each pine cone and glue it in place. Follow the basic instructions for making a mobile but use twigs instead of wire. Choose twigs as thin as possible so that the structure will not look too heavy but make sure that they are strong enough to support the pine cones without snapping.



Natural materials make very original and effective objects for mobiles. Combine pine cones and twigs for decoration that will cost you nothing. Designed by Anthony Wilson.

Enlarging and reducing designs

Design know-how 4

Whether you are using your own design or some pattern or illustration which you like, you will often need to enlarge or reduce it to fit the size you need. This is easy to do if you divide the design into little squares and divide the area where you want it enlarged into the same number of squares: you will find you can easily copy each square individually and so build up the whole design. You can reduce a design in just the same way, but copying on to smaller squares.

To avoid marking the original design, and to save the bother of drawing out lots of little squares, transfer the design on to graph paper. To do this, you can either trace it direct, if the graph paper is thin enough, or use tracing paper.

☐ Trace the design on to tracing paper (fig.1). Lay this over graph paper. If you can see the squares clearly through the tracing paper, stick it down with clear tape, being careful that the tracing paper lies flat. This way, you can re-use the graph paper. If, however, you cannot see the squares clearly through the tracing, transfer the design to the graph paper either with carbon paper (dressmaker's carbon is fine) or by shading the back of the tracing paper with a soft pencil and drawing firmly over the design with a ballpoint.

☐ Draw a rectangle to enclose the design (fig.2). This will be divided into a certain number of squares by the graph paper. If you are using plain paper you must, at this stage, divide the rectangle up by marking off each side and joining up the marks to make a lot of small squares. It is helpful to number these for reference.

☐ Next draw, preferably on tracing paper as before, a second rectangle, to the size you want the finished design to be and in the same proportions as the first one. Do this by tracing two adjacent sides of the first rectangle and the diagonal from where they meet. Extend them as much as you need and then draw in the other sides of the second rectangle (fig.3). Divide this into the same number of squares as th smaller one. A backing sheet of grap paper will make this process easier.

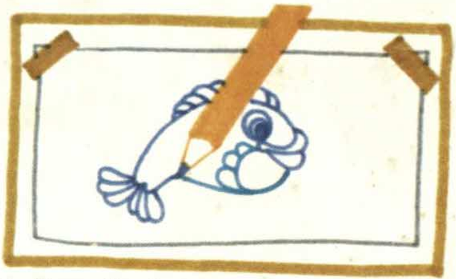
☐ Carefully copy the design square b square. If you have to copy a flowing curved line across several squares mark the points at which it crosses th squares and then join them up in on flowing movement (fig.4).

☐ How you use the enlarged desig depends on the materials with whic you are working. If you are doing embroidery you can transfer the desig on to your fabric by using a transfe pencil. Dot the design outline with th transfer pencil, on the back of th tracing, and iron it on to the fabric with a warm iron. You can trace the enlarged design on to your fabric using dressmaker's carbon paper but the impression this leaves may well smudge and rub off.

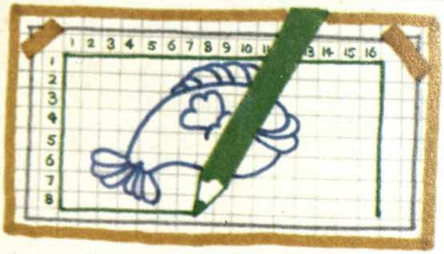
Another method is to trace the design on to tracing paper and pin this in position on the fabric. Outline the design, using a running stitch and one strand of cotton, in the colour of the finished embroidery. Then tear off the paper.

☐ If you are transferring a design on to a wall, you will have to do it direct. Chalk the second rectangle and grid on to the wall, using a spirit level to give horizontal lines and a plumb line to give vertical ones. For a large design, you will need two people to mark the lines.

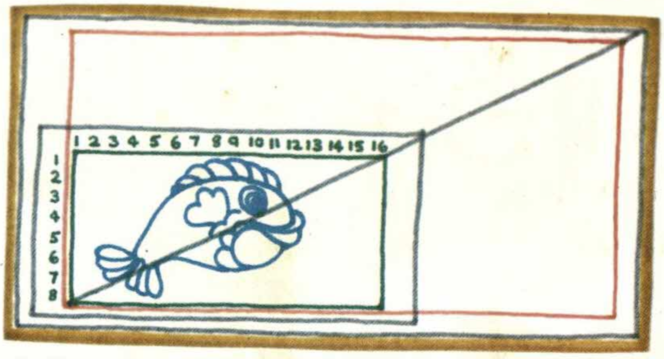
Whatever use you are going to make of the design, the basic method remains the same.



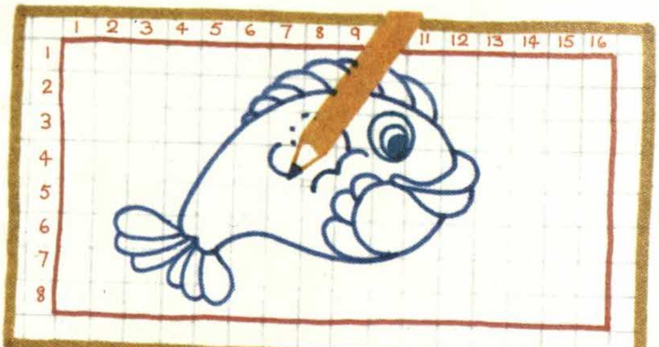
1. *Draw the design on to tracing paper.*



2. *Lay the tracing paper over graph paper, draw a rectangle to enclose the design and number the squares in it.*



3. *Draw the second rectangle by tracing two sides and a diagonal from the first (shown in red). Extend as needed.*



4. *Transfer the design square by square till it is complete.*

Victoria Drew

INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION FOR WOMEN.
Deptt. of Extension
LIBRARY
CALCUTTA-27

606 Cobalt Tint